MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 25

Willehalm

Wolfram von Eschenbach

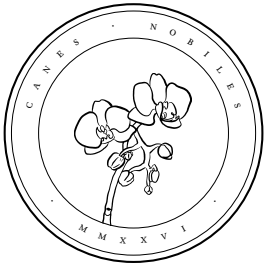
Willehalm

Part Two: Books VI–IX, with Titurel and the Songs

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

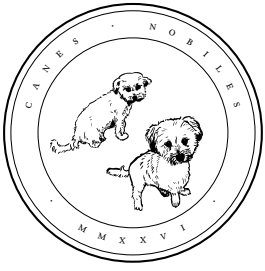


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 25 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Wolfram von Eschenbach,
herausgegeben von Karl Lachmann, fünfte Ausgabe (Berlin:
Georg Reimer, 1891): Willehalm, Books VI–IX; Titurel; and the Songs

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses of Willehalm are cited as Lachmann cites them, by his thirty-verse sections and the line within each, Titurel by his stanza numbers, and the Songs by his page and line, in the outer margin. The four books of Willehalm are Lachmann's and its paragraphs his indented breaks; the reading sections and their heads are this press's, the Songs headed by their first lines.

CONTENTS

WILLEHALM

BOOK VI

I · Rennewart at the Feast 11
II · Rennewart at Table 20
III · Love and Misery 28
IV · The Cook Burned 37
V · Gyburc Questions Rennewart 45
VI · The Armor of Synagun 55
VII · The Margrave's Plea 64
VIII · The French Take the Cross 72
IX · Gyburc's Plea for the Heathens 81
X · The Host Marches 89

BOOK VII

XI · The Forgotten Pole 97
XII · The Fainthearted Turn Back 106
XIII · Rennewart at Pitit Punt 115
XIV · The Five Companies 123
XV · The Castellan of Cler 132
XVI · Terramer's Council 141
XVII · Tybalt and the Ten Sons 150
XVIII · The Sixth to Ninth Companies 160

WILLEHALM

(continued)

BOOK VII

(continued)

XIX · Terramer's Lament 169
XX · Terramer Arms 177

BOOK VIII

XXI · The First Clash 189
XXII · Synagun's Charge 198
XXIII · Gyburc's Brothers 207
XXIV · Poydjus's Wealth 217
XXV · Aropatin and Heimrich 226
XXVI · Josweiz and Poydwiz 235
XXVII · Marlanz Comes 244
XXVIII · The Horn-Skinned Men 253
XXIX · Terramer's Company 260

BOOK IX

XXX · Heimrich in the Press 269
XXXI · Cernubile and Cliboris 278
XXXII · The Captives Freed 286
XXXIII · The Death of Halzebier 296
XXXIV · Purrel's Armor 306
XXXV · Rennewart's Pole Breaks 315
XXXVI · The Heathens Give Way 324
XXXVII · The Flight 333
XXXVIII · Terramer Wounded 342
XXXIX · The Spoils 351
XL · The Margrave's Lament 360
XLI · Bernart's Rebuke 369

WILLEHALM
(continued)

BOOK IX
(continued)

XLII · The Captives 379
XLIII · Matribleiz Sent Home 386

TITUREL

I · Titurel Gives Up the Grail 397
II · Schoysiane and the Birth of Sigune 401
III · Sigune's Childhood 406
IV · Schionatulander 410
V · The Children Speak of Love 416
VI · Gahmuret Departs 423
VII · Gahmuret Questions Schionatulander 431
VIII · Sigune's Lament 437
IX · The Hound Gardeviaz 445
X · The Hound Escapes 450
XI · Sigune's Condition 455

LIEDER

I · Den morgenblic 463
II · Sîne klâwen 465
III · Ein wîp mac wol erlouben mir 469
IV · Der helden minne 471
V · Von der zinnen 472
VI · Ursprinc bluomen 475
VII · Ez ist nu tac 478
VIII · Guot wîp, ich bite dich minne 481

WOLFRAM VON ESCHENBACH

Willehalm

BOOK VI

Rennewart at the Feast

I

The margrave, who left Orange at Gyburc's counsel to seek help, has brought the princes back and is freed from his vow to eat only bread. Rennewart enters with his pole and leans it on a vault, skin shining through dust and sweat like a dewy rose splitting its husk, as young Parzival once shone. Heimrich asks who he is. Gyburc says King Loys gave him to the margrave, that his face is like her kin's, and that her heart foretells joy or grief from him. The margrave sends him to serve her.

Mac sölh gelübde ein ende hân, 269,1
May such vow an end have,

diu des âbents wart getân,
which of-the evening was made,

dô der marcrâve schiet
when the margrave parted

von Oransche, als im geriet
from Orange, as him counseled

Gyburc diu in selbe bat 269,5
Gyburc who him herself bade

nâch helfe rîten ûz der stat
after help ride out-of the town

in der Franzoyser lant,
into the Frenchmen's land,

ob in dâ des rîches hant,
whether him there the realm's hand,

vater, bruodr und mâge
father, brothers and kinsmen

sus wolten lân in wâge, 269,10
thus would leave in balance,

daz er genâde wurb an sie?
that he grace should-strive-for from them?

ir helf er vant, nu sint si hie.
their help he found, now are they here.

sîn dan scheiden unde ir komn
his thence parting and their coming

mugt ir wol bêdiu hân vernomn.
may you well both have heard.

er mac nu ezzen mêr dan brôt:
he may now eat more than bread:

Gyburc ist vîentlîcher nôt
Gyburc is from-hostile distress

erlôst, wan daz se et jâmer twanc.
released, except that her just misery constrained.

der marcgrâve az unde tranc
the margrave ate and drank

vil gerne swaz man für in truoc.
very gladly whatever one before him bore.

Rennewart, sîn friunt, der knappe kluoc,
Rennewart, his friend, the squire fine,

für die geste gienc durh sînen prîs:
before the guests went for his prize:

er truoc sîn ungefüegez rîs
he bore his monstrous branch

in der hende als einen trunzûn.
in the hand as a truncheon.

den Burgunjoys, den Bertûn,
the Burgundian, the Breton,

den Flæminc und den Engeloys,
the Fleming and the Englishman,

den Brâbant und den Franzoys
the Brabanter and the Frenchman

nam wunder waz er wolde tuon.
took wonder what he would do.

în gienc des rîchsten mannes suon,
in went the richest man's son,

des houbet krône bî der zît
whose head crown at the time

truoc: daz was gar âne strît.
bore: that was wholly without dispute.

Mitten durch den palas 270,1
Midst through the palace

manec marmelsûl gesetzet was
many-a marble-pillar set was

under hôhe pfîlære:
under high pillars:

Rennewart die stangen swære
Rennewart the pole heavy

wider ein gewelbe leinde. 270,5
against a vault leaned.

si nam wunder waz er meinde,
them took wonder what he meant,

dô er sô wiltlîchen sach.
when he so wildly looked.

eteslîche vorhten ungemach
some feared discomfort

âne schult von im erlîden:
without guilt from him to-suffer:

daz kund er wol vermîden, 270,10
that could he well avoid,

er wurde ê drûf gereizet.
unless-he were first thereto provoked.

dâ sîn vel was besweizet
where his skin was sweated

und der stoup was drûf gevallen,
and the dust was thereon fallen,

do er vor den andern allen
when he before the others all

270,15 kom als im sîn manheit riet,
came as him his manhood counseled,

etswâ ein sweizic zaher schiet
somewhere a sweaty tear parted

den stoup von sînem clâren vel,
the dust from his bright skin,

Rennewarts des knappen snel.
of-Rennewart the squire quick.

sîn blic gelîchen schîn begêt,
his gleam like shine performs,

270,20 als touwic spitzic rôse stêt
as dewy pointed rose stands

und sich ir rûher balc her dan
and itself its rough husk away thence

klûbt: ein teil ist des noch dran.
splits: a part is of-it still on.

wirt er vor roste immer vrî,
(if)-becomes he of rust ever free,

der heide glanz wont im ouch bî.
of-the heath radiance dwells to-him also by.

270,25 der starke, niht der swache,
the strong-one, not the weak-one,

truoc ougen als ein trache
bore eyes as a dragon

vorm houbte, grôz, lûter, lieht.
before-the head, great, clear, bright.

gedanc nâch prîse erliez in nieht,
thought after prize released him not,

sît er von Munleûn ûf die vart
since he from Munleun onto the journey

schiet, im wuohs sîn junger bart.
parted, to-him grew his young beard.

Ern hete der jâr doch niht sô vil, 271,1
He had of-the years yet not so many,

diu reichent gein des bartes zil:
which reach toward the beard's goal:

Alyzen kus het in gequelt.
Alyze's kiss had him tormented.

man het im wol die gran gezelt:
one had to-him well the hairs counted:

diene drungenn munt niht sêre. 271,5
they pressed-the mouth not sorely.

man kôs der muoter êre
one saw of-the mother honor

an im, diu sölhe vruht gebar.
in him, who such fruit bore.

al sîn antlütze gar
all his countenance wholly

ze wunsche stuont und al die lide.
to wish stood and all the limbs.

sîn clârheit warp der wîbe vride: 271,10
his brightness won of-the women peace:

ir necheiniu haz gein im truoc.
of-them none hatred toward him bore.

ich sag iu lobs von im genuoc,
I tell to-you of-praise of him enough,

genæhet er baz dem prîse
(if)-nears he better to-the prize

und bin ich dannoch sô wîse.
and (if)-am I still so wise.

eins dinges mir geloubet: 271,15
of-one thing me believe:

er was des unberoubet,
he was of-that unrobbed,

sîn blic durh rost gap sölhiu mâl
his gleam through rust gave such marks

als dô den jungen Parzivâl
as when the young Parzival

vant mit sîner varwe glanz
found with his color's radiance

271,20 der grâve Karnahkarnanz
the count Karnahkarnanz

an venje in dem walde.
in prostration in the forest.

jeht Rennewart al balde
declare to-Rennewart all quickly

als guoter schœne, als guoter kraft,
as good beauty, as good strength,

und der tumpheit geselleschaft.
and of-the foolishness company.

271,25 ir neweder was nâch arde erzogn:
of-them neither was after nature reared:

des was ir edelkeit betrogn.
of-that was their nobility deceived.

zer künegîn sprach dô Heimrîch
to-the queen spoke then Heimrich

'wer ist sô starc, sô manlîch
'who is so strong, so manly

dâ her în für uns gegangen
there hither in before us gone

mit einer sô grôzen stangen?'
with a so great pole?'

272,1 Gyburc, die man bî güete ie vant,
Gyburc, whom one by goodness ever found,

sprach 'hêrre, ez ist ein sarjant,
spoke 'lord, it is a sergeant,

dem sîner kurzen jâre lebn
to-whom of-his short years' life

ze rehte, ich wæne, ist niht gegebn.
by right, I think, is not given.

mich dunct, man sold in halden baz.
me seems, one should him hold better.

sîn snelheit diu ist niht ze laz:
his quickness it is not too slack:

er kom ze fuoz vor den die ritn,
he came on foot before those who rode,

und wolde gerne hân gestritn
and would gladly have fought

an den selben stunden,
at the same hours,

heter vînde funden.
had-he enemies found.

hêr, mir jah der markîs,
lord, to-me declared the marquis,

in gæbe im der künec Lôys.
him should-give to-him the king Loys.

ern ist niht ungehiure:
he is not monstrous:

sît Karl der lampriure
since Charles the emperor

und der hôhe Baligân erstarp,
and the high Baligan died,

in ir deweders rîche erwarp
in of-them either's realm won

nie muoter sît sô clâre fruht.
never mother since so bright fruit.

er hât ouch kiuschlîche zuht:
he has also chaste courtesy:

man mag in ziehn als eine maget:
one may him rear as a maiden:

er leistet gern swaz man im saget.
he performs gladly whatever one to-him says.

mîn herze giht etswes ûf in,
my heart declares something on him,

dar umbe ich dicke siufzic bin
there for I often sighing am

sît hiute morgen daz i'n sach:
since this morning that I-him saw:

mir sol freude odr ungemach
to-me shall joy or discomfort

vil schier von sîner kumft geschehen.
very soon from his coming happen.

ich muoz im antlützes jehen
I must to-him of-countenance declare

als eteslîch mîn geslähte hât.
as some my lineage has.

mîn herze mich des niht erlât,
my heart me of-that not releases,

ichn sî im holt, ichn weiz durch waz:
unless-I be to-him devoted, I-not know for what:

sô treit er lîhte gein mir haz.'
so bears he perhaps toward me hatred.'

Rennewart der junge sarjant
Rennewart the young sergeant

gienc dâ er sînen hêrren vant.
went where he his lord found.

dem marcrâven dô schiere kuont
to-the margrave then soon known

wart daz sîn vriunt vor im dâ stuont:
became that his friend before him there stood:

dem bôt er minneclîchen gruoz.
to-him offered he lovely greeting.

er sprach 'gein dir ich werben muoz:
he spoke 'toward thee I strive must:

genc ze hove für die wirtîn
go to court before the hostess

unt für in der sô blanken schîn
and before him who so white shine

dort hât: si sint beidiu dienstes wert.
there has: they are both of-service worthy.

nu sih wie leblîch er gert: 273,10
now see how lively he desires:

ern ist mir niht unmære:
he is to-me not indifferent:

der selbe mûzære
the same molted-hawk

erflüge den kranech wol, würf i'n dar:
would-overtake the crane well, should-throw I-him thither:

ern ist niht zäglîch gevar.
he is not cowardly colored.

'hêrre,' sprach dô Rennewart, 273,15
'lord,' spoke then Rennewart,

'im blîbt mîn dienst ungespart,
'to-him remains my service unspared,

und al den dies geruochent,
and to-all who of-it deign,

diez güetlîche versuochent.'
who-it kindly try.'

dô gienc der ellens rîche
then went the of-valor rich-one

für die wirtîn zühteclîche. 273,20
before the hostess courteously.

Rennewart at Table

II

Heimrich seats Rennewart at the table's end beside the queen, and the two look as alike as two prints of one seal. He eats and drinks hugely until the wine overcomes his courtesy. When squires drag at his pole, he drives them from the palace with a swing that strikes fire from a marble pillar. The queen sends the princes to their quarters, and the margrave rides through the host to see every man provided for.

Heimrîch rief an den wirt
Heimrich called on the host

'waz op dîn gast nu niht verbirt,
'what if thy guest now not forgoes,

ern erbiete uns sînen zorn?
unless-he offer us his wrath?

den hân wir âne schult erkorn.'
him have we without guilt chosen.'

273,25 'ich lîde für dich swaz dir tuot
'I suffer for thee whatever to-thee does

sîn unbescheidenlîcher muot,'
his unreasonable spirit,'

sprach dô des landes hêrre.
spoke then the land's lord.

'er was mit mir der êrre
'he was with me the earlier-one

hiute morgen dâ her în.
this morning there hither in.

er kan wol friunt und vîent sîn.'
he can well friend and foe be.'

Diu tavel was kurz unde breit: 274,1
The table was short and broad:

Heimrîch durh gesellekeit
Heimrich for companionship

bat Rennewarten sitzen dort
bade Rennewart sit there

ûf den teppich an der tavelen ort,
on the carpet at the table's end,

bî der künegîn nâhen. 274,5
by the queen near.

daz enkund ir niht versmâhen.
that could to-her not displease.

Rennwart saz mit zühten dar.
Rennwart sat with courtesy thither.

Heimrîch nam sîner lider war.
Heimrich took of-his limbs heed.

der knappe wart von schame rôt,
the squire became from shame red,

daz manz im dâ sô wol erbôt. 274,10
that one-it to-him there so well offered.

die künegîn des niht verdrôz,
the queen of-that not irked,

daz tischlachen gein sîner schôz
the tablecloth toward his lap

si güetlîch bôt; dar zuo er sweic,
she kindly offered; there to he kept-silent,

wan daz er mit zühten neic.
except that he with courtesy bowed.

swie diu künegîn ob im saz, 274,15
however the queen above him sat,

sîn houbet was vil hœher baz:
his head was very higher further:

daz muost von sîner grœze sîn.
that must from his greatness be.

sîn und ir, ir bêder schîn
his and hers, of-them both shine

sich kunde alsus vermæren,
itself could thus make-known,

274,20 als op si bêde wæren
as if they both were

ûf ein insigel gedrucket
on one seal pressed

und gâhs her abe gezucket:
and hastily hither off drawn:

daz underschiet niht wan sîn gran.
that distinguished nothing but his beard-hair.

mir wær noh liep, wærn die her dan:
to-me were still dear, were those away thence:

274,25 man ersæhe den man wol für daz wîp:
one would-see the man well for the woman:

so gelîche was ir bêder lîp.
so alike was of-them both body.

mit môraz, mit wîn, mit clârete
with mulberry-wine, with wine, with claret

durh des alden Heimrîches bete
for the old Heimrich's request

wart sîn gephlegen aldâ ze stunt,
was of-him taken-care there at-the hour,

baz danne im dâ vor ie wart kunt.
better than to-him there before ever became known.

275,1 Er verschoup alsô der wangen want
He stuffed so the cheeks' wall

mit spîse dier vor im dâ vant,
with food which-he before him there found,

dazz drîn niht dorfte snîen.
that-it therein not needed snow.

ez enheten zehen bîen
it had ten bees

ûz den näpfen niht sô vil gesogn,
out-of the bowls not so much sucked,

mich enhabe diu âventiure betrogn.
unless-me have the adventure deceived.

si bêde wênic âzen,
they both little ate,

diez im dâ heten lâzen
who-it to-him there had let

ûf der tavelen gestanden.
on the table stood.

si wârn mit sorgen banden
they were with cares' bands

verstricket. merket wie dem sî:
entangled. mark how it be:

ir gebærden was doch freude bî.
to-their bearing was yet joy by.

vil knappen kom gegangen:
many squires came walking:

die wolten sîne stangen
they would his pole

dan habn gerucket odr getragn:
thence have pushed or carried:

sô müese ein swacher öwenzwagn
so must a weak ox-wagon

drunder sêre krachen.
there-under sorely crack.

Rennewart begunde lachen
Rennewart began to-laugh

und sprach hin zin 'ir spottet mîn.
and spoke toward to-them 'you mock me.

wan lât ir sölhez schimpfen sîn,
why-not let you such sporting be,

daz ir mit der stangen tuot:
which you with the pole do:

odr ich erzürne etslîches muot.
or I anger some-one's spirit.

ir welt se habn als iweren totn.
you will it have as your godchild.

des swer ich bî dem zwelften botn
by-that swear I by the twelfth apostle

275,25 der wonet in Galicîâ
who dwells in Galicia

(Jâcob heizent si den dâ),
(Jacob call they him there),

welt ir niht mîden sölhez spil,
(if)-will you not avoid such game,

es wirt etslîchem gar ze vil.
it becomes to-some wholly too much.

jâ zert ich dirre spîse
indeed would-consume I of-this food

mêr danne ein kleiniu zîse,
more than a little siskin,

276,1 möht ich vor iwerem schimphe.
might I for your sport.

nu hüet iuch vor unglimphe.'
now guard yourselves from misconduct.'

Rennewarte was zer spîse gâch.
to-Rennewart was to-the food haste.

dane dorfte niemen nîgen nâch,
there needed no-one bow after,

276,5 daz er von der tavelen sente.
that he from the table sent.

sinôpel mit pigmente,
sinopel with spice,

clâret und dar zuo môraz,
claret and there to mulberry-wine,

die starken wîne gevieln im baz
the strong wines pleased him better

danne in der küchen daz wazer.
than in the kitchen the water.

die spîse ungesmæhet azer: 276,10
the food undisdained ate-he:

ouch lêrt in ungewonheit,
also taught him unaccustomedness,

daz starke trinken überstreit
that strong drink overcame

sîn kiusche zuht und lêrt in zorn,
his chaste courtesy and taught him wrath,

den edeln hôhen wol geborn.
the noble high well born-one.

vil knappen der jungen 276,15
many squires of-the young

sich mit der stangen drungen,
themselves with the pole pressed,

unz si se nider valten
until they it down felled

und den palas erschalten.
and the palace made-resound.

Rennewart spranc von der tavelen dar.
Rennewart sprang from the table thither.

die knappen entwichen im sô gar, 276,20
the squires gave-way to-him so wholly,

daz er ir wênic bî im vant.
that he of-them few by him found.

er nam die stangn mit einer hant.
he took the pole with one hand.

ein knappe was entwichen
a squire was given-way

und al flühtic geslichen
and all fleeing crept

hindr ein sûl von marmel blâ;
behind a pillar of marble blue;

den selben sah er iedoch dâ:
the same saw he yet there:

er tet nâch im ein sölhen swanc,
he did after him a such swing,

daz dez fiwer ûz der siule spranc
that the fire out-of the pillar sprang

hôhe ûf gein dem dache.
high up toward the roof.

jener flôh von dem gemache.
that-one fled from the chamber.

Alsus beleip der palas
Thus remained the palace

daz dâ wênic knappen inne was.
that there few squires within was.

von in zer tür ûz was gedranc:
by them to-the door out was throng:

ieslîcher für den andern spranc.
each before the other sprang.

tischlachen wurden geslagn
tablecloths were struck

zesamene und niht hin dan getragn:
together and not away thence carried:

si vluhen, die des phlâgen,
they fled, who of-that took-care,

sine torstenz niht gewâgen
they dared-it not venture

hin ûf ze Rennewarte,
away up to Rennewart,

gein sîme unsüezem zarte. 277,10
toward his unsweet caress.

ûf stuonden die dâ hêten gâz.
up stood those-who there had eaten.

diu künegîn niht lenger saz:
the queen not longer sat:

si bat die fürstn an ir gemach
she bade the princes to their comfort

varn. zin allen si dô sprach
fare. to-them all she then spoke

'heizt iwer gesinde hie ûf nemn 277,15
'bid your household here up take

al des si künne gezemn
all of-what them can befit

von trinken und von spîse.'
of drink and of food.'

dô sprach Heimrîch der wîse
then spoke Heimrich the wise

'ez ist âne laster genomn
'it is without reproach taken

dem sîne wägne niht sint komn. 277,20
to-him his wagons not are come.

swes ir gert, man gîts iu vil.
whatever you desire, one gives-it to-you much.

iu allen ich daz râten wil.'
to-you all I that counsel will.'

die fürsten fuorn zir ringen.
the princes went to-their rings.

der marcrâf hiez im bringen
the margrave bade to-him bring

277,25 ein ors und reit mit in her nidr.
a horse and rode with them hither down.

sus reit er für unde widr,
thus rode he forward and back,

hie ûf wisen, dort ûf velt.
here on meadows, there on field.

was unberâten kein gezelt,
was unprovided any tent,

er hiez den liuten drunder tragn
he bade to-the people thereunder carry

daz si keinen zadel dorften klagn.
that they no want needed lament.

Love and Misery

III

The margrave summons the princes to mass and council at dawn. Gyburc puts Heimrich, her husband's father, to bed, and she and the margrave lie together, her love repaying the losses of Alischanz better than the grail and Secundille's realm could. The poet reflects that misery is our beginning and our end, and that joy and sorrow belong together. Rennewart chases the squires who torment him all day, then sleeps in the kitchen with his pole for a pillow.

278,1 Der marcgrâve begunde biten,
The margrave began to-bid,

dô er hin ab was geriten,
when he away down was ridden,

al die werden ime her,
all the worthy-ones to-him hither,

daz si pflægen rîlîcher zer
that they should-practice rich consumption

und ir gemach hetn al den tac. 278,5
and their comfort should-have all the day.

'sô man den morgen kiesen mac,
'when one the morning see may,

hœrt messe in der kappellen mîn:
hear mass in the chapel mine:

dâ wil ich in iwerem râte sîn.'
there will I in your counsel be.'

daz lobten unde leisten sie.
that promised and performed they.

fürsten, grâven, dise unt die, 278,10
princes, counts, these and those,

und swen man für den barûn sach,
and whomever one for the baron saw,

und al die den man rotte jach,
and all those to-whom one of-troop declared,

die wârn ze velde gar gevarn.
they were to field wholly gone.

Gyburc dort inne wil bewarn
Gyburc there within will guard

ir liebsten vater Heimrîch. 278,15
her dearest father Heimrich.

manec juncvrouwe minneclîch
many-a young-lady lovely

vor sînem bette stuonden,
before his bed stood,

die werden dienest kuonden,
who worthy service knew,

in einer kemenâten,
in a chamber,

diez mit guotem willen tâten. 278,20
who-it with good will did.

Heimrîch sich leite dran:
Heimrich himself laid thereon:

Gyburc für den grîsen man
Gyburc before the gray man

nider ûf den teppich saz.
down on the carpet sat.

juncfrouwen entschuohtenn umbe daz,
young-ladies unshod-him for that,

278,25 daz Gyburc im erstriche
that Gyburc for-him should-stroke

sîniu bein ê sim entwiche.
his legs before she-him should-leave.

wand er die naht gewâpent reit,
for he the night armed rode,

diu müede und klagende arbeit
the weariness and lamenting toil

in schiere slâfen lêrten,
him soon to-sleep taught,

ê daz si von im kêrten.
before that they from him turned.

279,1 Des landes hêrre (ich mein den wirt)
The land's lord (I mean the host)

kom wider ûf, der niht verbirt
came back up, who not forgoes

ern neme ouch die gesellekeit
unless-he take also the companionship

dâ von er liep unde leit
there from he joy and sorrow

279,5 ê dicke het enpfangen.
before often had received.

an ein bette wart gegangen,
to a bed was gone,

dâ er und diu künginne
where he and the queen

pflâgen sölher minne,
practiced such love,

daz vergolten wart ze bêder sît
that repaid was on both sides

daz in ûf Alyschanz der strît 279,10
what to-them on Alyschanz the battle

hete getân an mâgen:
had done in kinsmen:

sô geltic si lâgen.
so repaying they lay.

dô der milte Anfortas
when the generous Anfortas

in Orgelûsen dienste was,
in Orgeluse's service was,

ê daz er von freuden schiet, 279,15
before that he from joys parted,

und der grâl im sîn volc beriet,
and the grail to-him his people provided,

dô diu künegîn Secundille
when the queen Secundille

(daz riet ir herzen wille)
(that counseled her heart's will)

mit minne an in ernante
with love on him ventured

und im Kundrîen sante 279,20
and to-him Kundrie sent

mit einem alsô tiwerem krâm,
with a so costly ware,

den er von ir durch minne nam
which he from her for love took

und in fürbaz gap durch minne,
and it further gave for love,

aller krôn gewinne
all crowns' gain

279,25 und al Secundillen rîche
and all Secundille's realm

diene möhten sicherlîche
they might surely

mit des grâles stiur niht widerwegn
with the grail's aid not outweigh

der grôzen flust der muose pflegn
the great loss which must bear

ûf Alischanz der markîs.
on Alischanz the marquis.

an sînem arm ein swankel rîs
on his arm a swaying branch

280,1 ûz der süezen minne'rblüete.
out-of the sweet love-blossomed.

Gyburc mit kiuscher güete
Gyburc with chaste goodness

sô nâhe an sîne brust sich want,
so near to his breast herself wound,

daz im nu gelten wart bekant:
that to-him now repayment became known:

280,5 allez daz er ie verlôs,
all that he ever lost,

dâ für er si ze gelte kôs.
there for he her as payment chose.

ir minne im sölhe helfe tuot,
her love to-him such help does,

daz des marcgrâven trûric muot
that the margrave's mournful spirit

wart mit vreuden undersnitn.
was with joys intercut.

280,10 diu sorge im was sô verre entritn,
the care from-him was so far ridden-away,

si möhte erreichen niht ein sper.
it might reach not a spear.

Gyburc was sîner freuden wer.
Gyburc was of-his joys warrant.

nâch trûrn sol freude etswenne komn.
after mourning shall joy sometime come.

sô hât diu freude an sich genomn
so has the joy on itself taken

einen vil bekanten site, 280,15
a very known custom,

der man und wîben volget mite:
which men and women follows with:

wan jâmr ist unser urhap,
for misery is our beginning,

mit jâmer kom wir in daz grap.
with misery come we into the grave.

ine weiz wie jenez leben ergêt:
I-not know how that life goes:

alsus diss lebens orden stêt. 280,20
thus this life's order stands.

diz mær bî freuden selten ist.
this tale by joys seldom is.

ich müeste haben guoten list,
I must have good cunning,

swenne ich freude drinne funde,
whenever I joy therein should-find,

swie wol ich nu guotes gunde
however well I now of-good should-grant

den die mir niht hânt getân 280,25
to-those who to-me not have done

und mir niht tuont: die sint erlân
and to-me not do: they are released

von mir kumberlîcher tât.
by me from-afflicting deed.

ein wîser man gap mir den rât,
a wise man gave to-me the counsel,

daz ich pflæge, swenne ich möhte,
that I should-practice, whenever I might,

sölher güet diu mir getöhte
such goodness which me should-avail

281,1 ûzerhalp der valschen wîse:
outside the false manner:

des möht ich komen ze prîse.
of-that might I come to prize.

Dar an ouch niemen sol verzagen,
There in also no-one shall despair,

er enmüeze freude und angest tragen.
unless-he must joy and fear bear.

281,5 swer zaller zît mit freuden vert,
whoever at-all time with joy goes,

dem wart nie gemach beschert.
to-him became never comfort allotted.

jâ sol diu manlîch arbeit
indeed shall the manly toil

werben liep unde leit.
win joy and sorrow.

die zwêne geselleclîche site
the two companionable customs

281,10 ouch der wâren wîpheit volgent mite,
also the true womanhood follow with,

sît daz man freude ie trûrens jach
since that one joy ever of-mourning declared

zeinem esterîche und zeime dach,
as-a floor and as-a roof,

nebn, hinden, für, zen wenden.
beside, behind, before, at-the walls.

grôz trûrn sol niemen schenden:
great mourning shall no-one disgrace:

wan hât si's iemen noch erwert, 281,15
for (if)-has her-it anyone still warded-off,

bî sîner freude ez nâhe vert.
by his joy it near goes.

der marcrâf kurzwîle pflac.
the margrave pastime practiced.

al sîn her ouch schône lac,
all his host also fairly lay,

sô daz si heten guot gemach.
so that they had good comfort.

wan Rennewarten man noch sach 281,20
except Rennewart one still saw

mit arbeiten ringen.
with toils wrestle.

dicke loufen, sêre springen,
often running, sorely leaping,

vil knappen daz niht liezen:
many squires that not left:

dine kunde niht verdriezen,
them could not vex,

etlîcher sîn mit würfen pflac. 281,25
some of-him with throws took-care.

der jaget er mangen al den tac.
of-them hunted he many-a-one all the day.

sus het er schimpflîchen strît
thus had he sporting battle

unz hin nâch der vesper zît.
until away after the vesper's time.

er entet ir keinem drumbe wê,
he did of-them to-none for-it woe,

als er ze Munlêûn hêt ê
as he at Munleun had before

geschimphet ungefuoge. 282,1
sported unseemly.

in müeten hie genuoge,
him troubled here many,

die niht bekanten sînen zorn:
who not knew his wrath:

der wart ouch gar von im verborn.
it was also wholly by him forborne.

282,5 Do begunde nâhen ouch diu naht.
Then began to-near also the night.

der edel mit der hôhen slaht
the noble-one with the high lineage

huop sich flühtic von in dan.
lifted himself fleeing from them thence.

sîne stangen truoc der junge man:
his pole bore the young man:

im was ze bergen vor in gâch.
to-him was to hide before them haste.

282,10 si hardierten vaste hinden nâch.
they assailed firmly behind after.

bî einer wîl si des verdrôz.
after a while them of-that wearied.

dô twanc in diu müede grôz,
then constrained him the weariness great,

sîn edelkeit des geruochte
his nobility of-that deigned

daz er die küchen suochte:
that he the kitchen sought:

282,15 dâ leit er sich slâfen în.
there laid he himself to-sleep in.

sîn lindez wanküsselîn
his soft cheek-cushion

daz was sîn hertiu stange.
that was his hard pole.

ern ruowt dâ niht ze lange.
he rested there not too long.

The Cook Burned

IV

Rennewart, the poet tells, was stolen from his nurse as a child and bought by merchants, who taught him French and silence and brought him to King Loys. He and Alyze loved, but refusing baptism he was sent to the kitchen, and he hates his kin for not ransoming him, though they never knew of him. The kitchen-master singes his beard with a brand, and Rennewart binds him and throws him under a kettle onto the fire. The other cooks listen through the wall as he laments.

sîner swester sun Poydjus
his sister's son Poydjus

was selten doch gelegen sus, 282,20
was seldom yet lain thus,

der künec von Vrîende
the king of Vriende

(dar zuo diente ouch sîner hende
(there to served also his hand

Griffân Trîande und Kaukasas):
Griffan Triande and Kaukasas):

ich wæne, im baz gebettet was
I think, to-him better bedded was

swenne er slâfen wolte, 282,25
whenever he sleep would,

des œheim hie dolte
whose uncle here suffered

des er gar erlâzen wære,
of-what he wholly released were,

swer doch diu rehten mære
whoever yet the right tidings

wiste, wie sîn hôher art
knew, how his high nature

von ammen brust verstolen wart
from nurse's breast stolen was

283,1 ûz rîcheit brâht in armuot.
out-of wealth brought into poverty.

diu sælde künsteclîchen tuot.
the fortune skillfully does.

Daz kindel kouften koufman,
The little-child bought merchants,

und hetenz unz ez sich versan.
and had-it until it itself came-to-wits.

283,5 nâch horde stuont in al ir sin:
after hoard stood to-them all their mind:

si dûhte, ir grœzlîch gewin
them seemed, their great gain

læge an sîme geslehte.
should-lie in his lineage.

si nanten im vil rehte
they named to-him very rightly

niun rîche dâ sîn vater truoc
nine realms where his father bore

283,10 krône, und sageten im genuoc
crown, and told him enough

daz al die hœhsten Sarrazîn
that all the highest Saracens

ze sîme gebote müesen sîn,
at his command must be,

norden, sûden, ôsten, wester;
north, south, east, west;

und daz zwuo sîner swester
and that two of-his sisters

283,15 trüegen krône und wærn alsô gevar
should-bear crown and were so colored

daz sin prîs an schœne hêten gar.
that they-the prize in beauty had wholly.

si sagtn im mêr besunder
they told him more separately

von rîcheit wâriu wunder,
of wealth true wonders,

zehener sîner bruoder lant,
ten his brothers' land,

und wie si selbe wærn genant. 283,20
and how they themselves were named.

die koufman wâren kurtoys,
the merchants were courteous,

si lêrtenz kint franzoys:
they taught-the child French:

eins dinges si gedâhten,
of-one thing they thought,

daz sin ze gebe brâhten
that they-him as gift brought

dem der rœmscher krône pflac. 283,25
to-him who of-Roman crown took-care.

sölh clârheit an dem kinde lac:
such brightness in the child lay:

man muos im des mit wârheit jehen,
one must to-him of-that with truth declare,

schœner antliz wart nie gesehen
fairer countenance was never seen

sît des tages daz Anfortas
since the day that Anfortas

von der vrâge genesen was.
by the question recovered was.

Die koufman lêrtenz kint verdagen, 284,1
The merchants taught-the child to-keep-silent,

ez ensolte niemen rehte sagen,
it should no-one rightly tell,

ez wære man oder wîp,
it were man or woman,

wolt ez behalten sînen lîp,
would it keep its life,

in welhem lande ez wære genomn.
in which land it were taken.

si wærn ir koufes wider komn,
they were of-their purchase back come,

die von Samargône:
those of Samargone:

dô hiez sîn phlegen schône
then bade of-him take-care fairly

von Rôme der künec Lôys.
of Rome the king Loys.

daz kint an schœne hête prîs.
the child in beauty had prize.

nu was ouch Alyz diu magt
now was also Alyz the maiden

schœn, als ich iu hân gesagt.
fair, as I to-you have told.

dô mann ir zeime gespilen gap,
when one-him to-her as-a playmate gave,

ir zweier liebe urhap
of-them two love's beginning

volwuohs: die brâhtens an den tôt
grew-full: they brought-it to the death

und liten nâch ein ander nôt.
and suffered after one another distress.

der künec wolt in hân getouft:
the king would him have baptized:

er was von Tenabrî verkouft:
he was from Tenabri sold:

des wert er sich sêre.
of-that defended he himself sorely.

dô muos er von der êre 284,20
then must he from the honor

Alyzen gesellekeit
of-Alyze's companionship

varn: daz was ir beider leit.
fare: that was of-them both sorrow.

Alyz was triwen rîche,
Alyz was of-faithfulness rich,

dar ûf ir tougenlîche
there on to-her secretly

daz kint al sîns geslähtes jach, 284,25
the child all his lineage declared,

dô man se geselleclîche sach.
when one them companionably saw.

dâ muose er sich dô scheiden von,
there must he himself then part from,

sîner hôhen art in swache won,
of-his high nature into poor dwelling,

niht wan durh toufes twingen
nothing but for baptism's compelling

mit smæhen werken ringen.
with contemptible works wrestle.

Der knappe sînem vater haz 285,1
The squire to-his father hatred

und sînen mâgen umbe daz
and to-his kinsmen for that

truoc, daz sin dâ niht lôsten:
bore, that they-him there not released:

in dûht daz si verbôsten
him seemed that they worsened

ir triwe. sîn haz unrehte giht: 285,5
their faithfulness. his hatred wrongly declares:

wand sine wisten sîn dâ niht.
for they knew of-him there not.

wær kein sîn bote an si komn,
were any his messenger to them come,

wolt iemen hort hân genomn,
would anyone hoard have taken,

sölher gâbe wær nâh im gepflegn,
of-such gift would-have after him practiced,

285,10 Franzoyser möhten golt noch wegn.
Frenchmen might gold still weigh.

sîner hôhen mâge vil verlôs
of-his high kinsmen many lost

den lîp durh smæhe die er kôs.
the life through contempt which he chose.

sîn hant vaht sige der kristenheit:
his hand fought victory for-the Christendom:

sus rach er smæhlîchez leit
thus avenged he contemptible sorrow

285,15 des er vor Alyzen pflac:
of-which he before Alyze bore:

ir minne an prîse im gap bejac.
her love in prize to-him gave gain.

sîn dinc sol immer sus niht varn:
his thing shall ever thus not fare:

Alyzen minne in sol bewarn.
Alyze's love him shall guard.

swaz man ie smæhe an im gesach,
whatever one ever of-contempt in him saw,

285,20 Alyzen minn die von im brach
Alyze's love it from him broke

dar nâch in kurzen zîten
there after in short times

in tôtlîchen strîten.
in deadly battles.

den kochen was daz vor gesagt,
to-the cooks was that before said,

daz wære bereit, sô ez tagt,
that were ready, when it dawns,

vil spîse, swer die wolte, 285,25
much food, whoever it would,

und daz ieslîch fürste solte
and that each prince should

enbîzen ûf dem palas.
eat on the palace.

durh daz vil manic kezzel was
for that very many-a kettle was

über starkiu fiwer gehangen.
over strong fires hung.

dâ wart ein dinc begangen,
there was a thing committed,

deis dem küchenmeister was ze vil. 286,1
that-it to-the kitchen-master was too much.

der warp als i'u nu sagen wil.
he strove as I-to-you now tell will.

Er nam ein glüendigen brant,
He took a glowing brand,

und gienc vil rehte gein der want
and went very right toward the wall

da er Rennewarten slâfen sach. 286,5
where he Rennewart sleep saw.

von alsô smælîchem gemach
from so contemptible comfort

dorft in niemen scheiden dan.
needed him no-one part thence.

der koch besanct im sîne gran,
the cook singed to-him his beard-hair,

und verbrant ins mundes ouch ein teil.
and burned to-him-of-the mouth also a part.

286,10 sîn lôsheit warp im unheil.
his wantonness won him misfortune.

dem er sus stôrte sînen slâf,
he-whom he thus disturbed his sleep,

der bant im, sam er wær ein schâf,
he bound him, as he were a sheep,

elliu vieriu an ein bant,
all four to a band,

unde warf in al zehant
and threw him all at-once

286,15 undr einen kezzl in grôzen rôst:
under a kettle into great grill:

sus wart er lebens dâ erlôst.
thus was he of-life there released.

ern hiez ûf in niht salzes holn,
he bade on him not of-salt fetch,

er rach übr in brend unde koln.
he raked over him brands and coals.

hêr Vogelweid von brâten sanc:
lord Vogelweide of roast sang:

286,20 dirre brâte was dick unde lanc:
this roast was thick and long:

ez hete sîn frouwe dran genuoc,
it had his lady there-on enough,

der er sô holdez herze ie truoc.
to-whom he so devoted heart ever bore.

Rennewart al eine dort beleip:
Rennewart all alone there remained:

grôz angest d'andern von im treip.
great fear the-others from him drove.

286,25 si vorhtn, diu zeche gienge an sie:
they feared, the bill should-go to them:

dort vlôh ein koch, der ander hie.
there fled a cook, the other here.

si luogeten durch die want dar în,
they peered through the wall there in,

und hôrten wie die grane sîn
and heard how the beard-hairs his

Rennewart der junge klagete,
Rennewart the young lamented,

und waz er al klagende sagete.
and what he all lamenting said.

Gyburc Questions Rennewart

V

Rennewart laments his singed beard, which grew from his beloved's kiss, and names the ten crowned sons of Terramer, his brothers, who leave him in shame. The margrave sends Gyburc to soften his wrath. She takes him to a chamber and offers him clothes, which he refuses, keeping his pole. She asks his birth, and he begs her not to ask. She wraps him in her mantle and asks his god, and when he names Tervigant, Mahumet, and Apollo, her heart tells her he is of her own lineage.

Er sprach 'nu wând ich armer man 287,1
He spoke 'now thought I poor man

daz ich von banden wær verlân,
that I from bonds were released,

dô mich des rœmschen künges hant
when me the Roman king's hand

dem gap, der vor ûz ist bekant
to-him gave, who before out is known

zer hôhsten esklîrîe, 287,5
at-the highest eskelier-rank,

und der für wâr der vrîe
and who for true the free-one

ist aller valschlîchen tât.
is of-all false deed.

daz man mich niht geniezen lât
that one me not profit lets

der grôzen triwe als ich im sage!
of-the great faithfulness as I to-him tell!

287,10 bekant er mich, daz wær sîn klage.
knew he me, that would-be his lament.

mîne grane, die mir sint an gezunt,
my beard-hairs, which to-me are on kindled,

gesæt ir minne ûf mînen munt,
sown her love onto my mouth,

diu mir stiure ûf dise vart
who to-me aid onto this journey

mit kusse gap. den selben bart
with kiss gave. the same beard

287,15 hât ûz mîme kinne
has out-of my chin

noh mêr gezogn ir minne,
still more drawn her love,

dan mîner kurzen zîte jâr,
than of-my short time years,

oder dan der smæhlîche vâr
or than the contemptible peril

des mich ir vater wente.
to-which me her father accustomed.

287,20 ich getrûwe ir wol, si sente
I trust her well, she yearned

um mich, ze swelher zît si sach
for me, at whichever time she saw

daz der künc sîn zuht an mir zebrach,
that the king his courtesy on me broke,

und ich spehte die gelegenheit
and I spied the manner

der rîterlîchen arbeit
of-the knightly toil

in turneyn unde in strîten, 287,25
in tournaments and in battles,

dar ich lief ze mangen zîten,
whither I ran at many times,

wie man ein ors mit künste rite,
how one a horse with skill should-ride,

gein wîben gebâren ouch die site.
toward women behave also the manners.

swenn ich was bî werdeclîcher won,
whenever I was by worthy dwelling,

dâ sluoc man mich mit staben von.
there struck one me with staves from.

Diss landes hêrre ist geschant, 288,1
Of-this land lord is disgraced,

daz mich sîn koch sô hât verbrant.
that me his cook so has burned.

dar zuo an mir gehœnet sint
there to in me mocked are

des kreftegen Terramêres kint,
of-the mighty Terramer's children,

der zehene gewalteclîchen 288,5
of-whom ten mightily

tragent krône in wîten rîchen,
bear crown in wide realms,

die hôhe künege habnt ze man.
who high kings have as man.

diss lasters müezen phlihte hân
of-this reproach must share have

die ich mir für wâr ze bruodern weiz,
those-whom I me for true as brothers know,

288,10 Fâbors und Utreiz,
Fabors and Utreiz,

Mâlarz und Malatras,
Malarz and Malatras,

ob sölh geburt mit triwen was,
if such birth with faithfulness was,

daz uns alle ein muoter truoc.
that us all one mother bore.

nâch mir trûrens hât genuoc
after me of-mourning has enough

288,15 Glorîax und Bahsigweiz,
Gloriax and Bahsigweiz,

Carrîax und Matreiz,
Carriax and Matreiz,

Merabjax und Morgôanz.
Merabjax and Morgoanz.

sî wir reborn ûz triwe ganz,
(if)-be we born out-of faithfulness whole,

die zehn lêrt missewende
the ten teaches misdeed

288,20 mîn armeclîch ellende.
my poor exile.

mich solt der künec von Cordes
me should the king of Cordes

lân geniezen sînes hordes.
let profit of-his hoard.

dem dient Hap und Suntîn,
to-him serves Hap and Suntin,

Gorgozâne und Lumpîn,
Gorgozane and Lumpin,

288,25 Poy unde Tenabrî:
Poy and Tenabri:

nu stên ich sîner helfe vrî:
now stand I of-his help free:

Semblî und Muntespîr.
Sembli and Muntespir.

daz im sîn edelen eskelîr
that to-him his noble eskeliers

an mir niht sagent sîn missevarn!
in me not tell his misfaring!

ich pin doch Terramêres parn.'
I am yet Terramer's child.'

Durch die want sin hôrten alsus klagn. 289,1
Through the wall they-him heard thus lament.

do begundez alsô sêre tagn,
then began-it so sorely to-dawn,

daz de sunne durch die wolken brach.
that the sun through the clouds broke.

fürsten riten ûf. dô daz geschach,
princes rode up. when that happened,

dô sanc man messe got unt in. 289,5
then sang one mass to-God and to-them.

der marcrâve sante hin,
the margrave sent away,

ob daz ezzen dannoch wære bereit.
whether the eating still were ready.

die tôtlîchen arbeit
the deadly toil

fluhen die für koche wârn benant:
fled those-who as cooks were named:

dane schürte niemen fiwer noch brant. 289,10
there stirred no-one fire nor brand.

dem marcrâven man dô sagete,
to-the margrave one then told,

daz harte sêre klagete
that very sorely lamented

sîne besancten grane Rennewart.
his singed beard-hairs Rennewart.

eteslîche heten sîn hôhen art
some had of-his high nature

289,15 vernomen, unde iedoch niht gar.
heard, and yet not wholly.

er sant die küneginne dar,
he sent the queen thither,

und bat si senften sînen zorn.
and bade her soften his wrath.

'der küchenmeister ist verlorn:
'the kitchen-master is lost:

nemet mînen friunt mit fuogen dan.'
take my friend with seemliness thence.'

289,20 dô gienc si nâch dem jungen man
then went she after the young man

dar ir fuoz nie mêr getrat.
where her foot never before stepped.

vil zühteclîchen sin des bat,
very courteously she-him of-that bade,

er solte durh ir willen
he should for her will

sînen schaden stillen
his harm still

289,25 unt niht wan semftes willen phlegen
and nothing but of-gentle will take-care

und ungemüetes sich bewegen.
and of-ill-humor himself rid.

dô sprach er 'vrouwe, ir sît sô guot:
then spoke he 'lady, you are so good:

swaz râtes ir gein mir getuot,
whatever of-counsel you toward me do,

des volg ich. seht wiech bin erzogn.
that follow I. see how-I am reared.

es ist vil liute an mir betrogn.'
there is many people in me deceived.'

Diu künegîn fuorte den knappen dan. 290,1
The queen led the squire thence.

si bôt im bezzer kleider an
she offered to-him better clothes on

in einer kemenâten,
in a chamber,

dâ snîdære nâten
where tailors sewed

maneger slahte wâpenkleit. 290,5
of-many kinds arms-clothes.

dô sprach er 'vrouwe, mir ist leit
then spoke he 'lady, to-me is sorrow

daz ir sô verre giengt nâch mir.
that you so far went after me.

iweriu kleider gebet ir
your clothes give you

swem ir gebiet ân mînen haz:
to-whomever you command without my hatred:

swie arm ich sî, doch darf ir baz 290,10
however poor I be, yet needs of-them better

vil maneger under disem her.
very many-a-one among this host.

lât mir die stangen mîn ze wer.'
let me the pole mine for defense.'

die het er mit im dar getragen.
it had he with him thither carried.

Gyburc begunde sêre klagen
Gyburc began sorely to-lament

sîne grane die besancten. 290,15
his beard-hairs the singed.

ir ougn im nie gewancten:
her eyes from-him never swerved:

eteswaz se an im erblicte,
something she in him glimpsed,

dâ von ir herze erschricte.
there from her heart was-frightened.

dô sprach si 'trûtgeselle mîn,
then spoke she 'dear-companion mine,

290,20 möht ez mit dînen hulden sîn,
might it with thy goodwill be,

sô vrâgt ich wann du wærst erborn,
so would-ask I whence thou wert born,

woltst duz lâzen âne zorn.'
wouldst thou-it let without wrath.'

dô sprach er 'vrowe, geloubet mier,
then spoke he 'lady, believe me,

ich bin ein armer bätschelier,
I am a poor bachelor,

290,25 und doch vil werder liute fruht.
and yet of-very worthy people fruit.

des muoz ich jehen, hân ich zuht.
of-that must I declare, (if)-have I courtesy.

frowe, durch iwer êre,
lady, for your honor,

nu vrâget mich niht mêre:
now ask me not more:

daz füeget sich uns beiden wol:
that befits itself to-us both well:

und lât mich sîn in swacher dol.'
and let me be in poor suffering.'

291,1 Der knappe dennoch vor ir stuont.
The squire still before her stood.

der vrouwen tet ir herze kuont
to-the lady made her heart known

daz si niht erfuor wan lange sidr.
what she not learned except long afterward.

si bat in zuo zir sitzen nidr,
she bade him to her sit down,

ir mantels swanc se umb in ein teil. 291,5
of-her mantle swung she around him a part.

dô sprach er ‘vrowe, diss wære geil
then spoke he ‘lady, of-this were glad

der beste rîtr der ie gebant
the best knight who ever bound

helm ûf houbt mit sîner hant.
helm onto head with his hand.

swer mich alsus sitzen siht,
whoever me thus sit sees,

vil unfuoge er mir giht, 291,10
much impropriety he to-me ascribes,

und nimt mich drumb in sînen spot:
and takes me therefor into his mockery:

des erlât mich, vrowe, durh iweren got.’
of-that release me, lady, for your God.’

si sprach zuo dem jungen man
she spoke to the young man

‘waz gotes solt ich anders hân,
‘what of-god should I otherwise have,

wan einen den diu maget gebar, 291,15
except one whom the maiden bore,

nimst du sîner krefte iht war?’
takest thou of-his power any heed?’

dâ mit erfuor diu künegîn
there with learned the queen

ob er wære ein Sarrazîn.
whether he were a Saracen.

wie sîn geloube stüende,
how his faith should-stand,

des enhete si keine küende. 291,20
of-that had she no knowledge.

er sprach ‘mir sint drî got erkant,
he spoke ‘to-me are three gods known,

der heilige Tervigant,
the holy Tervigant,

Mahumet unde Apolle:
Mahumet and Apollo:

ir gebot ich gerne ervolle.’
their command I gladly fulfill.’

291,25 diu künegîn siufte ê daz si sprach.
the queen sighed before that she spoke.

an in si stæteclîchen sach:
at him she steadfastly looked:

ir herze spehte rehte
her heart spied rightly

daz er ûz ir geslehte
that he out-of her lineage

endelîche wære erborn,
truly were born,

swie er halt danne wære verlorn.
however he even then were lost.

The Armor of Synagun

VI

Rennewart tells Gyburc of a radiant sister, given to a man who has wronged him and left him long in distress, and says she resembles her. He promises the marquis his help. Gyburc gives him the armor of King Synagun, who captured the marquis, and tells how the armor and the marquis escaped with her. Rennewart throws down the sword as too light and keeps his pole, but once the ladies arm him he girds the sword on. Gyburc leaves him among her maidens and goes to church.

Si tet als ez ir zuht wol zam, 292,1
She did as it her courtesy well befitted,

in ir hende sîne hant si nam,
into her hand his hand she took,

si sprach 'lieber friunt vil guoter,
she spoke 'dear friend very good,

hâstu vater oder muoter,
hast-thou father or mother,

bruoder, oder swester? 292,5
brother, or sister?

wis dîner worte vester,
be of-thy words firmer,

und sage mir gar ân allez schamn
and tell me wholly without all shame

etswaz dîns geslähtes namn.'
something of-thy lineage's name.'

Rennwart sprach alsus hinz ir,
Rennwart spoke thus toward her,

'man gap etswâ ze swester mir 292,10
'one gave somewhere as sister to-me

ob aller clârheit lobes kranz,
above all brightness of-praise garland,

ein maget, diu nam der sunne ir glanz,
a maiden, who took from-the sun her radiance,

sô man si bêde des morgens sach
when one them both of-the morning saw

und diu sunne durh die wolken brach.
and the sun through the clouds broke.

diu wart gegeben einem man:
she was given to-a man:

der hât ouch an mir missetân
he has also on me misdone

(der hât sô manegen prîs bejagt),
(he has so many-a prize won),

sît bruodr an mir sint sus verzagt,
since brothers on me are thus despaired,

daz er mich liez sô lange in nôt,
that he me left so long in distress,

sît wâriu milt des niht gebôt.
since true generosity that not commanded.

dem selben unde mîme geslehte
to-the same and to-my lineage

trag ich grôzen haz mit rehte,
bear I great hatred with right,

sît si mich scheident von ir goten
since they me part from their gods

und mir noch decheinen boten
and to-me still no messenger

durh mîne nôt gesanden
for my distress sent

und ir prîs an mir geschanden.'
and their prize on me disgraced.'

Dô sprach er 'vrouwe marcrâvîn,
Then spoke he 'lady margravine,

eteslîcher mîner swester schîn
some of-my sister's shine

möht ir wol in der jugende tragn,
might you well in the youth bear,

muoz ich ez iu mit hulden sagn.
(if)-must I it to-you with goodwill say.

und wært ir rîch als si sint, 293,1
and were you rich as they are,

ir möht wol sîn des selben kint,
you might well be of-the same child,

der an mir hât entêret sich,
who on me has dishonored himself,

gein dem ouch immer mîn gerich
toward whom also ever my vengeance

sol kriegen durh mîn herzesêr. 293,5
shall war for my heart-sore.

mâge und vater sint mir ze hêr:
kinsmen and father are to-me too proud:

ûf iwer zuht mîn munt des giht,
on your courtesy my mouth of-that declares,

deste baz sult ir mich halden niht.
the better shall you me hold not.

dirre mære swîget stille.
of-this tale keep-silent still.

mîn swacheit ist ir wille. 293,10
my lowliness is their will.

bin ich von werder diet erborn,
(if)-am I of worthy people born,

die hânt ir sælde an mir verlorn.'
they have their fortune in me lost.'

Gyburc in vrâgt durch sînen prîs,
Gyburc him asked for his prize,

op von Provenze der markîs
whether of Provence the marquis

sîne helfe solte hân für wâr. 293,15
his help should have for true.

dô sprach er ‘vrouwe, âne allen vâr
then spoke he ‘lady, without all guile

gestên ich sîner werdekeit:
stand-by I his worthiness:

ich riche ouch schamlîchiu leit,
I avenge also shameful sorrows,

dâ von mich die heiden
there from me the heathens

293,20 solten lange hân gescheiden.’
should long have parted.’

si sprach ‘ich wil dir harnasch gebn,
she spoke ‘I will thee armor give,

dar inne du dîn jungez lebn
there within thou thy young life

beheltest swâ du kumst in strît.
keepest wherever thou comest into battle.

ez ist dir wol ze mâze wît
it is to-thee well to measure wide

293,25 und wol geworht mit sinnen.
and well wrought with wits.

sone mac dich niht gewinnen
so may thee not win

swaz man strîtes mac gein dir getuon.
whatever one of-battle may toward thee do.

ez truoc der künec Synaguon
it bore the king Synaguon

in dem sturme do er den markîs vienc,
in the battle when he the marquis captured,

dâ diu grôze schumphentiure ergienc,
where the great discomfiture happened,

294,1 do der künic Tybalt wart entworht.
when the king Tybalt was undone.

Willehalm der unerforht
Willehalm the unafraid

sô verre nâh jagete,
so far after hunted,

daz der küene und der verzagete,
that the bold and the despairing,

die nidern und die oberen 294,5
the low and the high

sich sêre begunden koberen:
themselves sorely began to-recover:

heiden arme unde rîche
heathens poor and rich

wurben gar genendeclîche.
strove wholly boldly.

den markîs sicherheit betwanc
the marquis surety constrained

Synagûn der ie nâch prîse ranc, 294,10
Synagun who ever after prize wrestled,

wander den getouften was entriten.
for-he from-the baptized was ridden-away.

sus wart er ân sig überstriten
thus was he without victory overcome

und gefuort in Tybaldes lant.
and led into Tybalt's land.

sîne boyn und andr sîn îsernbant
his fetters and other his iron-bands

sah ich an im ungerne. 294,15
saw I on him unwillingly.

mîn houbet ze Todjerne
my head at Todjerne

krône truoc von erbeschaft:
crown bore from inheritance:

dô het in manegen landen kraft
then had in many lands power

der milte künc Tybalt von Cler
the generous king Tybalt of Cler

294,20 (er füert noch hiute grôz her),
(he leads still today great host),

der gap mir krôn dâ ze Arâbî:
he gave to-me crown there at Arabi:

ich enweiz wer nu dâ vrouwe sî.
I know-not who now there lady be.

mîn neve, der künec Synagûn,
my nephew, the king Synagun,

Halzebieres swester sun,
Halzebier's sister's son,

294,25 sîn selbes harnasch und den man
his own armor and the man

liez er bî mir, der hât getân
left he by me, who has done

sô manegen hôhlîchen prîs.
so many-a high prize.

daz harnasch und der markîs
the armor and the marquis

sint mit mir beide entrunnen.
are with me both escaped.

sus diz harnasch wart gewunnen.'
thus this armor was won.'

295,1 Si hiez daz harnasch für in tragn.
She bade the armor before him carry.

Schoyûse was vil drûf geslagn:
Schoyuse was much thereon struck:

nu was daz harnasch sô wert,
now was the armor so worthy,

Schoyûse und ieslîch ander swert,
Schoyuse and each other sword,

der eken ez sich werte. 295,5
from-their edges it itself defended.

der huot was dicke und herte,
the hat was thick and hard,

tief gein den ahselen her ze tal
deep toward the shoulders hither to valley

mit edelen steinen über al
with noble stones over all

wol geziert an sînen orten,
well adorned at its edges,

geriemt mit edelen borten. 295,10
strapped with noble braids.

hosen und halsperc wâren blanc;
hose and hauberk were white;

daz swert lieht unde lanc,
the sword bright and long,

ze beiden sîten vil gereht:
on both sides very true:

valze und eke im wâren sleht,
groove and edges to-it were smooth,

daz gehilze starc unde wît. 295,15
the hilt strong and wide.

ze Nördeling kein dehsschît
at Nördlingen no flax-board

hât dâ niemen alsô breit.
has there anyone so broad.

mit dem swerte prîs erstreit
with the sword prize won

Synagûn der unverzagete.
Synagun the undaunted.

Rennewart ez niht behagete: 295,20
to-Rennewart it not pleased:

in dûht diu selbe klinge
him seemed the same blade

sîner grôzen kraft ze ringe.
for-his great strength too light.

er zôch ez ûz und warf ez hin:
he drew it out and threw it away:

dô sprach er 'vrouwe marcrâvin,
then spoke he 'lady margravine,

295,25 lât mich et mîne stangen tragn.
let me just my pole bear.

dar zuo wil ich iu niht versagn,
there to will I to-you not refuse,

swie wênic ich dar inne kan,
however little I there within know,

heizt mir diz harnasch legen an.'
bid to-me this armor lay on.'

juncvrouwen und daz clâre wîp
young-ladies and the bright woman

wâpnden Rennewartes lîp.
armed Rennewart's body.

296,1 Dô erz harnasch gar hêt an,
When he-the armor wholly had on,

zwên starke schuohe der junge man
two strong shoes the young man

bant über die îserkolzen.
bound over the iron-greaves.

sîn muot begunde im stolzen,
his spirit began to-him to-swell-proud,

296,5 gein prîse truoc er stæten muot.
toward prize bore he steadfast spirit.

sîn surkôt was niht ze guot:
his surcoat was not too good:

daz wart iedoch sîn wâppenroc.
that became yet his tabard.

im wart bedecket ieslîch loc
to-him was covered each lock

mit dem tiuren huote herte.
with the costly hat hard.

‘nu sî ouch mîn geverte 296,10
‘now be also my companion

diz swert: daz sol her umbe mich.
this sword: that shall hither around me.

der margrâf mac wol trœsten sich
the margrave may well comfort himself

mîn, swaz i’m gedienen mac,
of-me, whatever I-him serve may,

gefüeget er mir strîtes tac.’
(if)-arranges he for-me battle’s day.’

Gyburc diu künegîn 296,15
Gyburc the queen

bat al diu juncvrouwelîn,
bade all the little-young-ladies,

daz sin næmen in ir gesellekeit,
that they-him should-take into their companionship,

und daz sim sempften gar sîn leit.
and that they-him should-soften wholly his sorrow.

‘ich kum her wider schier zuo dir:
‘I come hither back soon to thee:

ein gên solt du erlouben mir 296,20
a going shalt thou permit me

zer kirchen âne dînen haz.’
to-the church without thy hatred.’

Rennewart zen juncvrouwen saz,
Rennewart with-the young-ladies sat,

gewâpent rehte ûf einen strît:
armed right for a battle:

si begunden kürzen im die zît.
they began to-shorten for-him the time.

The Margrave's Plea

VII

After mass the princes meet in council. The margrave tells how Terramer and Tybalt have ravaged his march, how eight of his kinsmen lie captive, and how seven princes of the realm fell. He reminds the French of the oath the realm swore him and asks their help to free Bertram, as a knight's sword-blessing commands. Heimrich rises, says he shares his son's grief, and judges that the more Terramer brings, the more pledges they will win.

296,25 diu messe was gesungen.
the mass was sung.

die alten und die jungen,
the old and the young,

fürsten, grâven, swie si wârn benant,
princes, counts, however they were named,

swer ze rottenmeister was bekant,
whoever as troop-master was known,

die wârn genomen an einen rât,
they were taken into a council,

dâ man noch die werden gerne hât.
where one still the worthy-ones gladly has.

297,1 Gyburc mit urloube dran
Gyburc with leave thereon

gienc zuo manegem werdem man.
went to many-a worthy man.

die wurben sus, nu hœret wie.
they strove thus, now hear how.

diu künegîn saz, als tâten sie.
the queen sat, as did they.

297,5 der marcrâve al eine stuont.
the margrave all alone stood.

er sprach 'ich tuon iu allen kuont,
he spoke 'I make to-you all known,

die mîne genôze hinne sîn,
who my peers in-here are,

mîn vater und die bruoder mîn,
my father and the brothers mine,

und die mir ze mâgen sîn benant,
and those-who to-me as kinsmen are named,

und die srîches hêrre hât gesant 297,10
and those-whom the-realm's lord has sent

ze wern den touf und unser ê,
to defend the baptism and our law,

ruochet alle erkennen wiez mir stê.
deign all to-know how-it to-me stand.

mîn sweher ist ûf mich geritn,
my father-in-law is onto me ridden,

den getouften wîben sint gesnitn
from-the baptized women are cut

ab die brüste, gemarteret sint ir kint, 297,15
off the breasts, martyred are their children,

die man in gar erslagen sint,
the men to-them wholly slain are,

und ûf gesetzt ze manegem zil:
and up set as many-a target:

swer dar zuo schiezen wil,
whoever there to shoot will,

den hânt die heiden deste baz.
him have the heathens the better.

alsus hât Tybalt sînen haz 297,20
thus has Tybalt his hatred

und Terramêr der starke
and Terramer the strong

volbrâht ûf mîner marke.
fulfilled on my march.

ez sint ähte mîner mâge
there are eight of-my kinsmen

gevangen, die ûf die wâge
captured, who onto the balance

297,25 mit mir riten als ir triwe gebôt:
with me rode as their faithfulness commanded:

mir lâgn ouch siben fürsten tôt
to-me lay also seven princes dead

der hœhsten vome rîche.
of-the highest from-the realm.

ich bite iuch al gelîche
I bid you all alike

daz ir mich freuden armen
that you me of-joys poor-one

iuch alle lât erbarmen.
you all let move-to-pity.

298,1 Die Franzoyser muoz ich manen,
The Frenchmen must I remind,

do ich vome rîche nam mit vanen
when I from-the realm took with banner

mîn lant dâ Tybalt sprichet nâch,
my land where Tybalt speaks after,

waz mir ze stiur von im geschach:
what to-me as aid from him happened:

298,5 dâ lobte mir des rîches hant,
there promised to-me the realm's hand,

und swuoren zwelf die wârn benant
and swore twelve who were named

in Francrîche an die hœhsten kraft,
in France at the highest power,

daz si mit guoter rîterschaft
that they with good knighthood

mich des jâres lôsten zeiner zît,
me of-the year should-release at-a time,

swenne überlüede mich der strît. 298,10
whenever should-overburden me the battle.

des hân ich siben jâr gebiten.
of-that have I seven years waited.

nu hât mich Tybalt überstriten:
now has me Tybalt overcome:

dem hân ich ouch genuoc getân.
to-him have I also enough done.

ich was sô lange ein koufman,
I was so long a merchant,

unz ich Nimes gewan, die guoten stat, 298,15
until I Nimes gained, the good town,

mit wagen. dar nâch ich bat
with wagons. there after I asked

in gevancnisse ir minne
in captivity her love

sîn wîp die küneginne.
his woman the queen.

ir güete mich gewerte
her goodness me granted

al des ich an si gerte 298,20
all of-what I of her desired

daz tet si, durh den touf noch mêr,
that did she, for the baptism still more,

mit mir danne ir überkêr,
with me thence her crossing-over,

denn durh mîne werdekeit.
than for my worthiness.

sît hât mir herzebæriu leit
since has to-me heart-felt sorrows

der künec Tybalt vil dicke brâht. 298,25
the king Tybalt very often brought.

die den hœhsten got hânt gesmâht,
those-who the highest God have disdained,

noch bî uns ime lande sint.
still by us in-the land are.

nu êrt an mir der meide kint,
now honor in me the maiden's child,

ob ich sô müeze sprechen:
if I so may speak:

helft mîne mâge rechen,
help my kinsmen avenge,

299,1 daz wir von den heiden sölhiu phant
that we from the heathens such pledges

gewinnen, diu Berhtrames bant
win, which Berhtram's bonds

ûz prîsûne sliezen.
out-of prison unlock.

mag ich nu geniezen
(if)-may I now profit

299,5 sippe und eide die mir sint gesworn,
of-kinship and oaths which to-me are sworn,

mîn vreude ist noch vil unverlorn.
my joy is still very unlost.

mîn vater, mîn bruodr, die sprechen ê:
my father, my brothers, they speak first:

dâ nâch sprechen, als ir ellen stê,
there after speak, as their valor stand,

mâge und lanthêrren mîn,
kinsmen and land-lords mine,

299,10 die tuon ir triuwe an mir schîn.
they make their faithfulness on me seen.

swenne ir gebiet daz ichz verdage,
whenever you command that I-it keep-silent,

mîn reht ist daz ich nimmer klage.
my right is that I never lament.

ein ieslîch rîters êre
a each knight's honor

gedenke, als in nu lêre,
think, as him now teach,

do er dez swert enphienc, ein segen, 299,15
when he the sword received, a blessing,

'swer rîterschaft wil rehte pflegen,
'whoever knighthood will rightly practice,

der sol witwen und weisen
he shall widows and orphans

beschirmen von ir vreisen:
protect from their terrors:

daz wirt sîn endelôs gewin.
that becomes his endless gain.

er mac sîn herze ouch kêren hin 299,20
he may his heart also turn away

ûf dienst nâch der wîbe lôn,
onto service after the women's reward,

dâ man lernet sölhen dôn,
where one learns such tune,

wie sper durch schilde krachen,
how spears through shields crack,

wie diu wîp dar umbe lachen,
how the women there for laugh,

wie vriundîn vriunts unsemftekeit 299,25
how lady-friend friend's hardship

semft. zwei lôn uns sint bereit,
softens. two rewards to-us are ready,

der himel und werder wîbe gruoz:
the heaven and worthy women's greeting:

bin ich sô frum, dâ nâch ich muoz
(if)-am I so able, there after I must

ûf Alischanz nu werben,
on Alischanz now strive,

oder ich wil drumbe ersterben.'
or I will for-it die.'

300,1 Ûf stuont der alte Heimrîch:
Up stood the old Heimrich:

sîn rede dem sune was väterlîch.
his speech to-the son was fatherly.

der sprach 'du maht wol sitzen nuo:
he spoke 'thou mayst well sit now:

mîn reht ist daz ich grîfe zuo
my right is that I grasp to

300,5 antwurte: ich bin der eltest hie.
answer: I am the eldest here.

mîne genôze, fürsten, dise unt die,
my peers, princes, these and those,

nune habtz für keine smâcheit,
now have-it for no insult,

daz ich vor iu sprich. mîns sunes leit
that I before you speak. my son's sorrow

sol er niht tragen eine:
shall he not bear alone:

300,10 ich hânz mit im gemeine.
I have-it with him in-common.

ich enlougens durch sîn kumber niht,
I deny-it for his affliction not,

mîne herze sîn ze kinde giht:
my heart of-him as child declares:

doch lât in sîn mîn lantman,
yet let him be my countryman,

des mich got wol hât erlân,
of-that me God well has spared,

ich wolt im doch sicherlîche
I would to-him yet surely

helfen, sît er dem rîche
help, since he for-the realm

sô manegen prîs hât erstriten
so many-a prize has won

und noch mit manlîchen siten
and still with manly manners

des rîches êre wirbet.
of-the realm's honor strives.

swes sælde niht verdirbet,
whose fortune not perishes,

der wert die rœmschen edelkeit
he defends the Roman nobility

mit ellenthafter arbeit.
with valorous toil.

sît Terramêr von Tenabrî
since Terramer of Tenabri

unze an Frîende uns füeret bî
until to Friende to-us leads by

swaz werder diet gesezzen was
whatever of-worthy people settled was

von Marsilje unze an Kaucasas,
from Marseille until to Caucasus,

wir vinden phandes deste mêr,
we find of-pledge the more,

er enhât deheinen künec sô hêr
he has no king so proud

mit im brâht her über mer,
with him brought hither over sea,

er müge verliesen wol sîn her.'
he may lose well his host.'

The French Take the Cross

VIII

Bernart pleads for his captive son Bertram and calls on the French to speak. The poet notes that the French princes go unnamed, since some later fled and were turned again by Rennewart at Pitit Punt. Some declare Orange freed and their duty done. Bertram of Berbester answers with Christ's five wounds, and Buove of Cumarzi rouses them. The French take the cross, and the host arms and adorns itself for battle.

Ûf stuont Bernart der flôrîs
Up stood Bernart the flowered

dô sprach 'bruoder markîs,
then spoke 'brother marquis,

mîn sun Berhtram truoc dînen vanen:
my son Berhtram bore thy banner:

der getorste wol die sîne manen,
he dared well the his-ones remind,

ich wæne er selbe ouch ellen truoc.
I think he himself also valor bore.

nu hânt si ungemach genuoc,
now have they discomfort enough,

siben ander fürsten die noch sint
seven other princes who still are

gevangen dâ bî mîme kint.
captured there by my child.

die uns ze dienst nu her sint komn,
those-who to-us for service now hither are come,

und die srîches solt hânt genomn
and those-who the-realm's pay have taken

oder sus mit fürstenlîcher kraft
or thus with princely strength

hie sint mit grôzer rîterschaft
here are with great knighthood

beidiu durchz rîche und ouch durch uns,
both through-the realm and also for us,

helde, nu helfet daz wir mînes suns
heroes, now help that we my son's

Berhtrames bant zebrechen 301,15
Berhtram's bonds break

und Vivîanzen rechen.
and Vivianz avenge.

ich trag al mîner bruoder munt:
I bear all my brothers' mouth:

der triwe ist mir sô verre kunt,
of-the faithfulness is to-me so far known,

daz unser herzen sint al ein:
that our hearts are all one:

durch daz ensprach noch ir dechein. 301,20
for that spoke still of-them none.

die geste sulen sprechen nuo
the guests shall speak now

(dâ grîfet ellenthafte zuo),
(there grasp valorously to),

die her von Francrîche
who hither from France

sint geriten krefteclîche.
are ridden mightily.

unser mâge ich niht für geste hân: 301,25
our kinsmen I not for guests have:

sô het diu sippe missetân:
so would-have the kinship misdone:

den getrûwt mîn vater unde ouch wir.
to-them trusts my father and also we.

Franzoyser, nuo sprechet ir
Frenchmen, now speak you

wes wir uns hin ziu sülen versehen,
of-what we ourselves thence to-you shall expect,

und lât uns iwer ellen spehen.'
and let us your valor spy.'

302,1 Der dis âventiur bescheiden hât,
He-who this adventure explained has,

der tuot iu kunt, durh waz man lât
he makes to-you known, for what one leaves

daz die fürsten niht sint benant,
that the princes not are named,

die der rœmisch künec dar hât gesant.
whom the Roman king thither has sent.

302,5 wan etslîch wider wanden,
for some back turned,

die ir fürstîe schanden,
who their princedom disgraced,

si enphiengns mit zepter odr mit vanen.
they received-it with scepter or with banner.

swer si des lasters noch wil manen,
whoever them of-the reproach still will remind,

da geschach iedoch ein widervart:
there happened yet a return:

302,10 die wante der junge Rennewart
them turned the young Rennewart

an der enge ze Pytît punt,
at the narrow at Pytit Punt,

fünfzehen tûsent zeiner stunt,
fifteen thousand at-one hour,

zwischen Oransche und Alyschans.
between Orange and Alyschans.

der die starken stangen dans,
who the strong pole dragged,

den habt ir tumber danne ein rint:
him hold you more-foolish than a cow:

er was doch des rîchsten mannes kint,
he was yet the richest man's child,

der bî den zîten krône truoc.
who by the times crown bore.

die rede lât sîn. hie saz genuoc
the speech let be. here sat many

fürsten die des jâhen,
princes who of-that declared,

swem daz kunde smâhen
to-whomever that could disdain

daz Oransch wær von in erlôst,
that Orange were by them released,

daz im der næme bezzern trôst:
that to-himself that-one should-take better comfort:

sine wolten ninder fürbaz varen
they would nowhere further fare

mit ir vartmüeden scharen:
with their journey-weary companies:

si wærn des âne schande,
they were of-that without disgrace,

sît die heiden vome lande
since the heathens from-the land

hinz ir schiffen wærn geritn,
toward their ships were ridden,

op si beliben ungestritn.
if they remained unfought.

'swer uns den gegenmarket tuot,
'whoever to-us the counter-market does,

die gevangen lœs wir umbe guot.'
the captives release we for goods.'

303,1 von Berbester Berhtram
of Berbester Berhtram

sprach ‘dem werden nie gezam
spoke ‘to-the worthy-one never befitted

daz ûz prîse træte:
that-he out-of prize should-step:

swer in dar umbe bæte,
whoever him there for should-bid,

303,5 dem solt er nimmer werden holt.
to-him should he never become devoted.

nu denket, helde, ir habt gedolt
now think, heroes, you have endured

in Francrîche mangen prîs:
in France many-a prize:

ob ir nu den markîs
if you now the marquis

liezet in sus grôzer nôt,
should-leave in thus great distress,

303,10 iwer keines vriundîn daz gebôt.
of-you none’s lady-friend that commanded.

iuch hazzt ouch drumbe (deist mir kunt)
you hates also for-it (that-is to-me known)

der daz swert in sînem munt
he-who the sword in his mouth

für treit ame urteillîchen tage,
forth bears at-the judgment day,

dâ mite der küene und der zage
there with the bold and the coward

303,15 bêde geschumphieret sint.
both discomfited are.

wol in dier hât für sîniu kint!
well for-them whom-he has as his children!

daz wir schowen fümf wunden
that we behold five wounds

die noch sint unverbunden!
which still are unbound!

sîn bluot er durh uns rêrte:
his blood he for us shed:

swer sich von got nu kêrte, 303,20
whoever himself from God now turned,

des ende wurde gesmæhet
his end would-become disdained

und diu sêle der helle genæhet.
and the soul to-the hell neared.

sîn verch hât uns den segen erstriten,
his life has for-us the blessing won,

der unflühteclîchen kom geriten:
who unfleeingly came ridden:

ûfem esele man in komen sach 303,25
on-the ass one him come saw

aldar da in sît ein blinde erstach:
thither where him later a blind-man stabbed:

er wærn gesehenden wol entpfarn.
he would-be-them seeing well escaped.

swers kriuces segen wil wol bewarn,
whoever-the cross's blessing will well guard,

den jâmer wier am kriuce hienc,
the misery how-he on-the cross hung,

Jêsus, do ern tôt durh uns enphienc.'
Jesus, when he-the death for us received.'

Dô sprach Buov von Cumarzî 304,1
Then spoke Buove of Cumarzi

'Franzoyse, iu was ie manheit bî:
'Frenchmen, to-you was ever manhood by:

dêswâr die liezt ir noch ze vruo.
in-truth that left you still too early.

ein ieslîch manlîch rîter tuo
a each manly knight do

304,5 als in nu lêr sîn bestiu werdekeit.'
as him now teach his best worthiness.'

Franzoyser wurden al bereit
Frenchmen became all ready

daz si sich baz bespræchen
that they themselves better should-take-counsel

und Vivîanzen ræchen
and Vivianz should-avenge

an dem grôzen ungefüegen her.
on the great monstrous host.

304,10 ieslîch getouftiu hant ze wer
each baptized hand for defense

vant fümfzehen ander hende
found fifteen other hands

verre brâht ûz ellende.
far brought out-of exile.

Franzoyser dô sus gefuoren:
Frenchmen then thus fared:

des ze Munlêûn si swuoren
what at Munleun they swore

304,15 und ze Orlens vor dem rœmschen vogt,
and at Orleans before the Roman lord,

daz enwart niht lenger für gezogt.
that became not longer before drawn.

si jâhn daz al die Sarrazîn
they declared that all the Saracens

in ir hazze müesen sîn:
in their hatred must be:

si nâmenz kriuce über al.
they took-the cross over all.

304,20 hin ûz inz her kom ouch der schal:
away out into-the host came also the clamor:

des was dâ manec rîter vrô.
of-that was there many-a knight glad.

die werden wurbenz alle sô
the worthy-ones strove-it all so

daz si des kriuces gerten;
that they of-the cross desired;

des si vil priester werten,
of-which them many priests granted,

hie den rîter, dort den sarjant. 304,25
here the knight, there the sergeant.

swaz man guoter turkopel vant,
whatever one of-good turcopoles found,

beidiu arme unde rîche
both poor and rich

nâmenz kriuce al gelîche.
took-the cross all alike.

ir herzen si gereinden,
their hearts they cleansed,

den hœhsten got si meinden.
the highest God they meant.

In der siben bruoder sunderher 305,1
In the seven brothers' separate-host

eteslîche bereiten sich ze wer,
some prepared themselves for defense,

sumelîche vant man slâfen:
some found one sleeping:

sô schouweten d'andern wâfen,
so beheld the-others weapons,

an schildn und an banieren: 305,5
on shields and on banners:

so begunden d'andern zieren
so began the-others to-adorn

ir harnasch, daz siz machten wîz:
their armor, that they-it made white:

sô kêrten d'andern al ir flîz
so turned the-others all their diligence

daz si die helme geflôrten:
that they the helms flowered:

swaz riemn und snüere gehôrten
whatever straps and cords belonged

derzuo, der wart vergezzen nieht.
thereto, of-them was forgotten nothing.

man sah dâ manegez harte lieht,
one saw there many-a-thing very bright,

zimierde unde harnasch,
crest and armor,

daz sît von bluote gar verlasch.
which later from blood wholly was-extinguished.

sich môvierten ze orse die:
themselves mounted on horse those:

sô riten die andern banken hie
so rode the others disporting here

ûf schœnen runzîden.
on fair nags.

dâ muose ouch angest lîden
there must also fear suffer

manec unverzaget küener man,
many-a undaunted bold man,

der sich rehte des versan
who himself rightly of-that bethought

daz ir strît niht mêre galt
that their battle not more paid

wan daz bereite was gezalt
except that ready was counted

dem tôde ir leben ze bêder sît.
to-the death their life on both sides.

ûf Alischanz der êrste strît,
on Alischanz the first battle,

der Pînelle gap den rê, 305,25
which to-Pinel gave the bier,

des mâg sît tâten drumbe wê
whose kinsmen later did for-it woe

ûf Alischanz getoufter diet:
on Alischanz to-the-baptized people:

Vivîanzes tôt ouch sider schiet
Vivianz's death also since parted

mangen werden heiden vome lebn:
many-a worthy heathen from-the life:

sus râch widr râche wart gegebn.
thus vengeance against vengeance was given.

Gyburc's Plea for the Heathens

IX

Gyburc rises before the council parts. She bears the hatred of both peoples. If the Christians win, she asks, let them spare God's handiwork. The first man, Elias, Enoch, Noah, Job, and the three kings were heathens, and every child is born a heathen until baptism. She tells of the fallen angels, who chose their loss, and of man, lost through counsel. God himself forgave those who killed him, and she praises the hand that made water and land and drives the planets.

Durh Gyburge al diu nôt geschach. 306,1
For Gyburc all the distress happened.

diu stuont ûf, mit zuht si sprach,
she stood up, with courtesy she spoke,

ê daz sich schiet der fürsten rât.
before that itself parted the princes' council.

'swer zuht mit triwen hinne hât,
'whoever courtesy with faithfulness in-here has,

der ruoche hœren mîniu wort. 306,5
he deign hear my words.

got weiz wol daz ich jâmers hort
God knows well that I of-misery hoard

sô vil inz herze hân geleit,
so much into-the heart have laid,

daz in der lîp unsamfte treit.'
that it the body ungently bears.'

die gein ir ûf begunden stên,
those-who toward her up began to-stand,

306,10 die bat si sitzn und ninder gên.
them bade she sit and nowhere go.

dô si gesâzen über al,
when they sat over all,

si sprach 'der tôtlîche val
she spoke 'the deadly fall

der hiest geschehen ze bêder sît,
which here-is happened on both sides,

dar umbe ich der getouften nît
there for I the baptized's hatred

306,15 trag und ouch der heiden,
bear and also the heathens',

daz bezzer got in beiden
that amend God in both

an mir, und sî ich schuldic dran.
on me, and be I guilty therein.

die rœmschen fürsten ich hie man,
the Roman princes I here remind,

daz ir kristenlîch êre mêrt,
that you Christian honor increase,

306,20 ob iuch got sô verre gêrt,
if you God so far honors,

daz ir mit strîte ûf Alischanz
that you with battle on Alischanz

rechet den jungen Vivîanz
avenge the young Vivianz

an mînen mâgn und an ir her:
on my kinsmen and on their host:

die vindet ir mit grôzer wer.
them find you with great defense.

und ob der heiden schumpfentiur ergê, 306,25
and if the heathens' discomfiture happen,

sô tuot daz sælekeit wol stê:
so do that blessedness well stand:

hœrt eins tumben wîbes rât,
hear a foolish woman's counsel,

schônt der gotes hantgetât.
spare the God's handiwork.

ein heiden was der êrste man
a heathen was the first man

den got machen began.
whom God to-make began.

Nu geloubt daz Eljas und Enoch 307,1
Now believe that Elias and Enoch

für heiden sint behalten noch.
for heathens are kept still.

Nôê ouch ein heiden was,
Noah also a heathen was,

der in der arken genas.
who in the ark survived.

Iop für wâr ein heiden hiez, 307,5
Job for true a heathen was-called,

den got dar umbe niht verstiez.
whom God there for not cast-out.

nu nemt ouch drîer künege war,
now take also of-three kings heed,

der heizet einer Kaspar,
of-them is-called one Kaspar,

Melchîor und Balthasân:
Melchior and Balthasar:

307,10 die müeze wir für heiden hân,
them must we for heathens have,

diene sint zer flüste niht benant:
they are to-the loss not named:

got selb enpfienc mit sîner hant
God himself received with his hand

die ersten gâbe ân muoter brust
the first gift without mother's breast

von in. die heiden hin zer flust
from them. the heathens away to-the loss

307,15 sint alle niht benennet.
are all not named.

wir hân für wâr bekennet,
we have for true known,

swaz müeter her sît Even zît
whatever mothers hither since Eve's time

kint gebâren, âne strît
children bore, without dispute

gar heidenschaft was ir geburt:
wholly heathendom was their birth:

307,20 etslîchz der touf het umbegurt.
some-one the baptism had girded.

getouft wîp den heiden treit,
baptized woman the heathen bears,

swie dez kint der touf hab umbeleit.
however the child the baptism have enveloped.

der juden touf hât sundersite:
the Jews' baptism has special-manner:

den begênt si mit eime snite.
it perform they with a cut.

wir wârn doch alle heidnisch ê. 307,25
we were yet all heathen before.

dem sældehaften tuot vil wê,
to-the blessed-one does very woe,

ob von dem vater sîniu kint
if from the father his children

hin zer flust benennet sint:
away to-the loss named are:

er mac sih erbarmen über sie,
he may himself have-pity over them,

der rehte erbarmekeit truoc ie.
who right mercy bore ever.

Nu geloubt ouch daz diu mennescheit 308,1
Now believe also that the humanity

den engelen ir stat ab erstreit,
from-the angels their place off won,

daz si gesetzet wâren,
that they set were,

die unser künne vâren,
who our kin ambush,

ze himele in den zehenden kôr. 308,5
in heaven into the tenth choir.

die erzeigeten got alsölhen bôr,
they showed God so-much defiance,

daz sîn werdiu kraft vil stætec
that his worthy power very steadfast

von in wart anrætec.
by them was assailed.

die selben nôtgestallen
the same distress-companions

von gedanken muosen vallen: 308,10
from thoughts must fall:

got enlie si niht zen werken komn,
God let them not to-the works come,

der gedanc weiz wol unvernomn.
who thought knows well unheard.

dar umbe des menschen wart erdâht.
there for of-the man was devised.

sich heten mensch und engel brâht
themselves had man and angel brought

308,15 beidiu in den gotes haz:
both into the God's hatred:

wie kumt daz nu daz mennisch baz
how comes that now that man better

dan der engl gedinget?
than the angel hopes?

mîn munt daz mære bringet.
my mouth the tale brings.

daz mennisch wart durch rât verlorn:
the man was through counsel lost:

308,20 der engel hât sich selb erkorn
the angel has himself self chosen

zer êwigen flüste
to-the eternal loss

mit sîner âküste,
with his malice,

und al die im gestuonden
and all who to-him stood-by

die selben riwe fuonden.
the same rue found.

308,25 die varent noch hiute dem mensche bî,
they fare still today for-the man by,

als op der kôr ir erbe sî,
as if the choir their inheritance be,

der den ist ze erbe lâzen
which to-those is for inheritance left

die sich des kunnen mâzen
who themselves of-that can refrain

daz gotes zorn erwirbet,
what God's wrath earns,

des sælde niht verdirbet.
whose fortune not perishes.

Swaz iu die heiden hânt getân, 309,1
Whatever to-you the heathens have done,

ir sult si doch geniezen lân
you shall them yet profit let

daz got selbe ûf die verkôs
that God himself on those forgave

von den er den lîp verlôs.
by whom he the body lost.

ob iu got sigenunft dort gît, 309,5
if to-you God victory there gives,

lâts iu erbarmen ime strît.
let-them you move-to-pity in-the battle.

sîn werdeclîchez leben bôt
his worthy life offered

für die schuldehaften an den tôt
for the guilty-ones to the death

unser vater Tetragramatôn.
our father Tetragrammaton.

sus gab er sînen kinden lôn 309,10
thus gave he to-his children reward

ir vergezzenlîchen sinne.
for-their forgetful minds.

sîn erbarmede rîchiu minne
his mercy's rich love

elliu wunder gar besliuzet,
all wonders wholly encloses,

des triwe niht verdriuzet,
whose faithfulness not wearies,

sine trage die helfeclîche hant
unless-it bear the helpful hand

diu bêde wazzer unde lant
which both water and land

vil künsteclîch alrêrst entwarf,
very skillfully first-of-all designed,

und des al diu crêatiure bedarf
and of-which all the creatures need

die der himel umbesweifet hât.
which the heaven encircled has.

diu selbe [hant] die plânêten lât
the same [hand] the planets lets

ir poynder vollen gâhen
their charge full hasten

bêdiu verre und nâhen.
both far and near.

swie si nimmer ûf gehaldent,
however they never up halt,

si warment unde kaldent:
they warm and cool:

etswenne'z îs si schaffent:
sometimes-the ice they create:

dar nâch si boume saffent,
there after they trees fill-with-sap,

sô diu erde ir gevidere rêrt
when the earth its plumage sheds

unde si der meie lêrt
and her the May teaches

ir mûze alsus volrecken,
her molt thus to-complete,

nâch den rîfen bluomen stecken.
after the frosts flowers to-set.

The Host Marches

x

Gyburc says she serves the highest God and left love, wealth, and children by the blameless Tybalt; the guilt is hers alone. She weeps, and Gybert holds her. At the meal only the margrave can lift Rennewart's pole to his knees, while Rennewart swings it like a lath and then eats armed beside the queen. The princes take leave, Gyburc kisses them weeping, and from her windows she watches the crested host march toward the sea.

Ich diene der künsteclîchen hant 310,1
I serve the skillful hand

für der heiden got Tervigant:
before the heathens' god Tervigant:

ir kraft hât mich von Mahumeten
its power has me from Mahumet

unders toufes zil gebeten.
under-the baptism's goal bidden.

des trag ich mîner mâge haz; 310,5
for-that bear I my kinsmen's hatred;

und der getouften umbe daz:
and the baptized's for that:

durh menneschlîcher minne gît
for human love's greed

si wænent daz ich fuogte disen strît.
they think that I arranged this battle.

dêswâr ich liez ouch minne dort,
in-truth I left also love there,

und grôzer rîcheit manegen hort, 310,10
and of-great wealth many-a hoard,

und schœniu kint, bî einem man,
and fair children, by a man,

an dem ich niht geprüeven kan
in whom I not find can

daz er kein untât ie begienc,
that he any misdeed ever committed,

sîd ich krôn von im enpfienc.
since I crown from him received.

310,15 Tybalt von Arâbî
Tybalt of Arabi

ist vor aller untæte vrî:
is of all misdeed free:

ich trag al ein die schulde,
I bear all alone the guilt,

durh des hœhsten gotes hulde,
for the highest God's goodwill,

ein teil ouch durh den markîs
a part also for the marquis

310,20 der bejaget hât sô manegen prîs.
who won has so many-a prize.

ey Willalm, rehter punjûr,
ah Willalm, right attacker,

daz dir mîn minne ie wart sô sûr!
that to-thee my love ever became so sour!

waz werder diet ûz erkorn
what of-worthy people out chosen

in dîme dienste hânt verlorn
in thy service have lost

310,25 ir lîp genendeclîche!
their body boldly!

der arme und der rîche,
the poor and the rich,

nu geloubt daz iwerr mâge flust
now believe that your kinsmen's loss

mir sendet jâmer in die brust:
to-me sends misery into the breast:

für wâr mîn vreude ist mit in tôt.'
for true my joy is with them dead.'

si weinde vil: des twanc si nôt.
she wept much: of-that constrained her distress.

Des wirtes bruoder Gybert 311,1
The host's brother Gybert

ûf spranc, die küneginne wert
up sprang, the queen worthy

an sîne brust er dructe.
to his breast he pressed.

ir herz durh d'ougen ructe
her heart through the-eyes pushed

vil wazzers an diu wangen. 311,5
much water onto the cheeks.

von dem râte wart gegangen.
from the council was gone.

die fürsten ûf den palas
the princes onto the palace

giengen, dâ verdecket was
went, where covered was

manec tavel hêrlîche.
many-a table lordly.

Heimrîch der zühtenrîche 311,10
Heimrich the courtesy-rich

zal den fürsten sunder sprach
to-all the princes separately spoke

'als man iuch gestern sitzen sach,
'as one you yesterday sit saw,

ieslîche haben die selben want.'
each have the same wall.'

nâch den juncvrouwen wart gesant:
after the young-ladies was sent:

die kômen, und ouch Rennewart. 311,15
they came, and also Rennewart.

dem was besengt sîn junger bart,
to-him was singed his young beard,

dez harnasch [was] tiwer unde clâr,
whose armor [was] precious and bright,

er selbe starc und wol gevar.
he himself strong and well colored.

er leite sîne stangen nider.
he laid his pole down.

311,20 dar gienc manec rîter sider:
thither went many-a knight since:

ieslîches kraft sich sô verbarc,
each-one's strength itself so hid,

ir neheiner was sô starc,
of-them none was so strong,

ders hüebe von der erde,
that-he-it should-lift from the earth,

wan Willehalm der werde:
except Willehalm the worthy:

311,25 der zuctes ûf unz über diu knie:
he jerked-it up until over the knees:

daz miten die andern, dise unt die.
that avoided the others, these and those.

Rennewart daz drum nam in die hant:
Rennewart the end took into the hand:

die stangen swanc der sarjant
the pole swung the sergeant

umbz houbet als ein sumerlatn.
around-the head as a summer-lath.

sîn kraft den kristen kom ze statn.
his strength to-the Christians came to avail.

312,1 Dô des schimpfes was genuoc,
When of-the sport was enough,

den fürsten man daz wazzer truoc,
to-the princes one the water bore,

und maneger vrouwen wol gevar,
and many-a lady well colored,

dar zuo den werden rîtern gar.
there to to-the worthy knights wholly.

ieslîcher saz an sîne stat.
each-one sat at his place.

Heimrîch dô Rennewarten bat
Heimrich then Rennewart bade

zer küneginne sitzen dort
by-the queen sit there

ûfen teppich an der taveln ort.
on-the carpet at the table's end.

dô der nider was gesezzen,
when he down was seated,

er muose gewâpent ezzen.
he must armed eat.

man muoz des sîme swerte jehen,
one must of-that to-his sword declare,

het ez hêr Nîthart gesehen
had it lord Nithart seen

über sînen geubühel tragn,
over his village-green carried,

er begundez sînen friunden klagn:
he began-it to-his friends to-lament:

daz lie der marcrâve âne haz,
that left the margrave without hatred,

swie nâhe er bî der künegîn saz.
however near he by the queen sat.

in eime alsô verherten lant
in a so ravaged land

wart nie bezzer spîse erkant
was never better food known

und alsô willeclîche gegebn.
and so willingly given.

312,20 swer guotes willen kunde lebn,
whoever of-good will could live,

den gap wirt und wirtin:
to-him gave host and hostess:

ir neheiner truoc mit sünden hin
of-them none bore with sins away

swaz er spîse mohte aldâ verzern,
whatever he of-food could there consume,

der sich den vînden wolde wern.
who himself from-the enemies would defend.

312,25 dô man ezzens dâ verpflac,
when one of-eating there was-done,

ez was wol mitter morgens tac.
it was well middle morning's day.

die fürsten urloup durch daz
the princes leave for that

nâmn: si wolten fürbaz
took: they would further

kêren, strîts si luste.
turn, of-battle them pleased.

Gyburc si weinde kuste.
Gyburc them weeping kissed.

313,1 Ê si zir ringen wæren komn,
Before they to-their rings were come,

gezelt wârn elliu ab genomn,
tents were all off taken,

und daz her gerottieret,
and the host formed-in-troops,

daz velt al überzieret
the field all overadorned

313,5 mit maneger baniere.
with many-a banner.

Gyburc diu kom schiere
Gyburc she came soon

in diu venster durch schouwen
into the windows for beholding

mit maneger juncvrouwen,
with many-a young-lady,

wie mit fürstenlîcher krefte
how with princely strength

maneger geselleschefte 313,10
of-many-a fellowship

daz velt wart überdecket.
the field was covered.

allenthalben zuo getrecket
everywhere to marched

ûf die strâzen gein dem mer
onto the roads toward the sea

kom ein sô kreftigez her,
came a so mighty host,

daz ez die engel möhten sehen, 313,15
that it the angels might see,

kunden si zimierde spehen.
could they crest spy.

si heten an den stunden
they had at the hours

ûf die helme gebunden
onto the helms bound

manec tiwer zimierde clâr.
many-a costly crest bright.

ouch sah man her unde dar 313,20
also saw one hither and thither

daz velt al überglesten
the field all over-gleam

mit phellen den besten
with silks the best

an den hôh gemuoten werden.
on the high spirited worthy-ones.

ûf al kristenlîcher erden
on all Christian earth

313,25 wart manlîcher zuo komn
was more-manly to come

von wirtes friwenden nie vernomn.
from host's friends never heard.

diz ist ir dan scheiden:
this is their thence parting:

si wellnt nu gein den heiden.
they will now toward the heathens.

got waldes, sît ers alles phligt.
God have-power-of-it, since he-of-it all takes-care.

der weiz nu wol wer dâ gesigt.
he knows now well who there conquers.

The Forgotten Pole

XI

Rennewart, gazing at the crests and banners, forgets his pole, and the marquis sends a sergeant for it. The next morning, distracted again by the host, he forgets it once more. Ashamed, and fearing he will be thought to have fled and so disgrace his kin and the kiss he was given, he runs back alone to the burned camp and searches for it among the smoking huts.

Rennewarten des ze sehen zam, 314,1
to-Rennewart of-that to see befitted,

wie dirre den schilt ze halse nam,
how this-one the shield to neck took,

wie der ander helm ûf houbet bant,
how the other helm onto head bound,

wie die wartman wurden gesant
how the watchmen were sent

nâch den vînden durh des heres phlege. 314,5
after the enemies for the host's care.

bêde ûf velde und ûf dem wege
both on field and on the way

sundrrotte dar zuo wârn genomn,
separate-troops there to were taken,

op die vînde wider wolden komn,
if the enemies back would come,

daz si funden widersaz.
that they found resistance.

Terramêrs huovekraz
Terramer's hoof-scratch

was harte breit und ninder smal
was very broad and nowhere narrow

bêde an bergen unde an tal.
both on mountains and in valley.

Rennewart lief allez mite,
Rennewart ran all with,

daz er den manegen sundersite
that he the many separate-manners

gerne hête bekant.
gladly had known.

dô er sînen hêrren vant,
when he his lord found,

si wârn wol raste lanc gevarn.
they were well a-league long faring.

zuo dem markîs Terramêres parn
to the marquis Terramer's child

kom geloufen, niht gegangen.
came running, not walking.

der vrâget in nâch sîner stangen:
he asked him after his pole:

'wes sol mich dîn helfe trœsten?'
'of-what shall me thy help comfort?'

'dâ sult ir mich für den bœsten
'there shall you me for the worst

undr allen disen rotten zeln,
among all these troops count,

welt ir einen ribalt weln.'
(if)-will you a ribald choose.'

Rennewart sich schamte sêre:
Rennewart himself shamed sorely:

ez dûhte in grôz unêre,
it seemed to-him great dishonor,

daz der stangen was vergezzen.
that of-the pole was forgotten.

er was halt von dem ezzen
he was even from the eating

geloufen durh busîne krach:
run for trumpets' crash:

und dô er ûf den helmen sach
and when he on the helms saw

sô spæhe wunder manecvalt 315,1
so skillful wonders manifold

(ez enist dechein wîp sô alt,
(there is no woman so old,

der ez dicke für si fuorte,
to-whom it often before her passed,

ir jugende muot si ruorte,
her youth's spirit it touched,

dazs ir ougen lieze swingen dar), 315,5
that-she her eyes should-let swing thither),

vil manec geflôriertiu schar
very many-a flowered company

Rennewarten dar zuo brâhte
Rennewart there to brought

daz er gar überdâhte
that he wholly forgot

ob er ie stangen hêrre wart:
whether he ever of-pole lord was:

sô gâh was im ûf die vart. 315,10
so hasty was to-him onto the journey.

doch truog er umbe sich sîn swert.
yet bore he around himself his sword.

zem markîs sprach der knappe wert
to-the marquis spoke the squire worthy

'hêrre, ich wil die stangen holn.
'lord, I will the pole fetch.

lât mich schamende arbeit doln:
let me shaming toil suffer:

315,15 wan pflæge ich manlîcher site,
for practiced I manly manners,

diu stang wær mir gevolget mite.
the pole would-be to-me followed with.

ich hân iuch schiere ergâhet.
I have you soon overtaken.

ob halt diu naht uns nâhet,
if even the night us nears,

ich vinde iedoch wol iwer spor
I find yet well your track

315,20 und der heiden die dâ rîten vor.'
and of-the heathens who there ride before.'

der markîs sprach ze Rennewart
the marquis spoke to Rennewart

'dîn widerreis wirt nu gespart:
'thy back-journey becomes now spared:

eins andern boten ich dich wer,
of-an other messenger I thee grant,

der uns die stangen bringet her.'
who us the pole brings hither.'

315,25 ein wol geriten sarjant
a well mounted sergeant

nâch der stangen wart gesant:
after the pole was sent:

der reit hinz Oransche widr,
he rode toward Orange back,

dâ diu stange was geleget nidr.
where the pole was laid down.

eintweder karre odr ein wagn
either cart or a wagon

nâch dem her die stangen muose tragn.
after the host the pole must carry.

Heimrîch und sîniu kint 316,1
Heimrich and his children

und ouch die andern fürsten sint
and also the other princes are

komn an eine schœne stat,
come at a fair place,

aldâ manz her sich legen bat.
there-where one-the host itself lay bade.

wol gehêret wart daz velt: 316,5
well adorned was the field:

preymerûn und manc gezelt,
broad-tents and many-a tent,

ekube, treif unt tulant
round-tents, tents and pavilions

man vil dâ ûf geslagen vant.
one many there up pitched found.

ê dez her sich gar geleite nider,
before the host itself wholly laid down,

Rennewarte kom sîn stange wider 316,10
to-Rennewart came his pole back

mit der nâchhuote:
with the rearguard:

des was im wol ze muote.
of-that was to-him well to spirit.

aldâ lâgen si die naht.
there lay they the night.

des morgens gein der heiden maht
of-the morning toward the heathens' might

sich daz her begunde enbœren. 316,15
itself the host began to-raise.

man moht dâ wunder hœren
one could there wonder hear

von pusîn und anderm schalle.
from trumpets and other clamor.

nu wolt si aber alle
now would them again all

Rennwart umbegâhen,
Rennwart around-hasten,

316,20 die verren und die nâhen,
the far and the near,

dort eine storje, d'andern hie,
there one troop, the-other here,

er wolte prüeven dise unt die,
he would examine these and those,

schilde und ir baniere baz,
shields and their banners better,

unz er der stangen aber vergaz.
until he of-the pole again forgot.

316,25 [die] herberge wurden an gezunt,
[*the*] *lodgings were on kindled,*

dô si verre gefuoren. nu wart kunt
when they far fared. now became known

mit zorne dem jungen sarjant,
with wrath to-the young sergeant,

daz diu stange in sîner hant
that the pole in his hand

niht dannen was gevolget mite.
not thence was followed with.

in sîme herzen wuohs unsite:
in his heart grew ill-manner:

317,1 schamt er sich gestern sêre,
shamed he himself yesterday sorely,

des wart hiut zwir mêre.
of-that became today twice more.

er sprach 'nu hât mir tumpheit
he spoke 'now has to-me folly

alrêrst gefüeget herzenleit:
first-of-all arranged heart's-sorrow:

diu scheidet selten sich von mir. 317,5
it parts seldom itself from me.

der dem grimmen vederspil die gir
he-who to-the fierce falcon the greed

verhabt, daz hân ich doch gesehen,
restrains, that have I yet seen,

man muoz im dâ nâch plûkeit jehen.
one must to-him there after timidity declare.

wan ich hân mîn selbes gir verhabt.'
for I have my own greed restrained.'

widr ûf die strâzen wart gedrabt: 317,10
back onto the roads was trotted:

snelheit erzeigeten sîniu bein.
quickness showed his legs.

der knappe huop sich dan al ein:
the squire lifted himself thence all alone:

ein ors von sölhem kalopeiz
a horse of such gallop

müese rêren sînen sweiz,
must shed its sweat,

daz im gevolget solte hân: 317,15
that to-him followed should have:

sô gâh was im wider dan.
so hasty was to-him back thence.

er truoc harnasch ob al den liden.
he bore armor over all the limbs.

sîn zuht daz kunde niht gevriden:
his courtesy that could not protect:

sîn manheit hete grôzen zorn
his manhood had great wrath

ze geselln für hôhen muot erkorn. 317,20
as companion before high spirit chosen.

er sprach ‘waz wunders mac diz sîn,
he spoke ‘what of-wonder may this be,

daz ich der starken stangen mîn
that I the strong pole mine

nu zem dritten mâle vergaz?
now for-the third time forgot?

daz mir diu werdekeit ir haz
that to-me the worthiness her hatred

317,25 niht anders mac erzeigen,
not otherwise may show,

ich wæn daz sol die veigen
I think that shall the doomed

bringen unders tôdes zil.
bring under-the death's goal.

waz ob mich versuochen wil
what if me try will

der aller wunder hât gewalt,
he-who of-all wonders has might,

und ob mîn manheit sî balt?
and whether my manhood be bold?

318,1 Ich liez durch zuht und durch scheme,
I left for courtesy and for shame,

daz ich ze disem noch ze deme
that I to this-one nor to that-one

niht sprach mîn wider kêren.
not spoke my back turning.

daz sol mîn laster mêren:
that shall my reproach increase:

318,5 si wænnt, ich si in entrunnen.
they think, I be from-them escaped.

ich hân mich des versunnen,
I have myself of-that bethought,

wirt mîn hêrre dort bestanden,
(if)-becomes my lord there attacked,

der grôzen houbetschanden
of-the great head-disgrace

sulen mîne mâge pflihte hân:
shall my kinsmen share have:

daz hœnet manegen edelen man, 318,10
that shames many-a noble man,

die erborn sint von mîner art.
who born are of my nature.

man wænet daz mîn widervart
one thinks that my back-journey

sî durch zageheit erdâht:
be through cowardice devised:

dâ mit der kus wære gesmâht,
there with the kiss were disdained,

den mir gap sîner swester kint, 318,15
which to-me gave his sister's child,

bî dem in strîte bêdiu sint
by whom in battle both are

mîn herze und des wille.
my heart and its will.

swîge ich diss mæres stille:
(if)-keep-silent I of-this tale still:

ez wirt doch âne mich gesagt.'
it becomes yet without me told.'

nu kom der junge unverzagt 318,20
now came the young undaunted-one

dâ die hütten von loube
where the huts of leaves

mit rôre und von schoube
with reed and of sheaf

wârn verbrunn und begunden brinnen.
were burned and began to-burn.

er enkund sich niht versinnen
he could himself not bethink

318,25 wâ sîn starkiu stange lac:
where his strong pole lay:

vil umbesweifes er dô pflac.
much searching-around he then practiced.

The Fainthearted Turn Back

XII

Rennewart finds the pole singed black and harder for it. From a hill the margrave shows his helpers Terramer's camp by Larkant, covering Alischanz, and bids any who fear to turn back now rather than flee in battle. Many of Loys's French take leave for home, and the margrave says those who remain will win the endless prize. The queen's soldiers and Irmenschart's host stay and form five companies, while the deserters reach the narrows at Pitit Punt and meet resistance there.

besenget was diu stange:
singed was the pole:

ez sûmte in harte lange,
it delayed him very long,

unz er si verloschen vant:
until he it extinguished found:

si was swarz als ein ander brant.
it was black as an other brand.

319,1 Nu enruochet, was se ê wæher:
Now care-not, was it before finer:

si ist nu vestr und zæher.
it is now firmer and tougher.

er zuctes ûzem fiure
he jerked-it out-of-the fire

und lief gein âventiure.
and ran toward adventure.

der marcrâf was sô nâhe komn: 319,5
the margrave was so near come:

ûf einen berc het er genomn
onto a mountain had he taken

sîner helfær vil durch schouwen:
of-his helpers many for beholding:

an halden unde an ouwen
on slopes and on meadows

hiez er stille habn sîn her.
bade he still have his host.

zwischen dem gebirge und dem mer 319,10
between the mountains and the sea

bî Larkant lac Terramêr,
by Larkant lay Terramer,

der kreftige von arde hêr
the mighty-one by nature proud

und von sîner hôhen rîcheit:
and by his high wealth:

ûf Alischanz dem velde breit
on Alischanz the field broad

sîne kraft man mohte erkennen. 319,15
his strength one could recognize.

solt ichs iu alle nennen,
should I-them to-you all name,

die mit grôzem here dâ lâgen
who with great host there lay

und sunder ringe phlâgen,
and separate rings kept,

liute und lant mit namen zil,
people and land with names' goal,

sô het ich arbeite vil. 319,20
so would-have I of-toil much.

so beherberget was daz velt:
so lodged was the field:

niht wan mer und gezelt
nothing but sea and tents

sâhen die des nâmen war.
saw those-who of-that took heed.

des begunde zwîvelen etslîch schar,
of-that began to-doubt some company,

319,25 die vil genendeclîche
which very boldly

ê dicke in Francrîche
before often in France

bejageten prîs und ungemach.
won prize and discomfort.

der marcrâve zin allen sprach
the margrave to-them all spoke

‘vriwende herze und vînde kraft
‘friends’ hearts and enemies’ strength

nu prüeve ein ieslîch geselleschaft.
now consider a each fellowship.

320,1 die hie durch got sint und durch mich,
those-who here for God are and for me,

ein ieslîch man bedenke sich,
a each man bethink himself,

waz er mit strîte welle tuon.
what he with battle will do.

dort lît der Kanabêus suon,
there lies the Kanabeus’s son,

320,5 Terramêr der rîche,
Terramer the rich,

alsô krefteclîche
so mightily

daz wir für wâr dâ vinden strît.
that we for true there find battle.

nu muoz ich vrâgen (des ist zît)
now must I ask (of-that is time)

wer vehtens welle ernenden.
who of-fighting will dare.

got sol iu allen senden 320,10
God shall to-you all send

in iwer herze sölhen muot,
into your heart such spirit,

daz ir iu selben rehte tuot.
that you to-you selves rightly do.

ze iwer keinem hân ich daz ervorht:
of you any have I that feared:

doh wurde dez gotes her entworht,
yet became the God's host undone,

hüeb unser keiner hie die fluht. 320,15
raised of-us any here the flight.

ein ieslîch man durch sîne zuht
a each man for his courtesy

spreche als erz im herzen weiz.
speak as he-it in-the heart knows.

als uns nu vil manec puneiz
as us now very many-a charge

ze gegenstrîte dringet,
to counter-battle presses,

swen denn sîn herze twinget 320,20
whomever then his heart constrains

wider hinder sich und niht hin für,
back behind himself and not away forward,

der hât hie baz ander kür,
he has here better other choice,

daz er nu wider kêre,
that he now back turn,

danne er die fluht dort mêre.
than he the flight there increase.

320,25 ein ieslîch fürste sîne man
a each prince his men

sprech. swem got der sælden gan,
speak. to-whom God of-the fortune grants,

daz er mit strîtes urteil
that he with battle's judgment

umb daz endelôse heil
for the endless salvation

noch hiute wirbet, wol dem wart
still today strives, well-for him became

sîner her komenden vart.'
of-his hither coming journey.'

321,1 Lôys, der rœmsche krône truoc,
Loys, who Roman crown bore,

hete fürsten dar genuoc
had princes thither enough

mit grôzer rîterschaft gesant:
with great knighthood sent:

die wurdn almeistic dâ geschant.
they became almost there disgraced.

321,5 genuoge nâmen in ir muot,
many took into their spirit,

dô si der heiden sölhe fluot
when they of-the heathens such flood

dort vor in ligen sâhen,
there before them lie saw,

si wolten wider gâhen
they would back hasten

gein dem lant ze Francrîche.
toward the land at France.

sich bereiten sumelîche 321,10
themselves prepared some

und nâmn urloup ze varen widr.
and took leave to fare back.

daz gerou si mit schame sidr.
that rued them with shame since.

swaz ze Oransche ûfem palas
whatever at Orange on-the palace

bete gein in ergangen was,
of-request toward them gone was,

michel mêr mans hie bat. 321,15
much more one-them here bade.

si nâmen urloup an der stat,
they took leave at the place,

und jâhen, bî ir zîten
and declared, by their times

in turneyn unde in strîten
in tournaments and in battles

möhten si dâ heime behalten prîs:
might they there at-home keep prize:

sine wolten niemens tärkîs 321,20
they would of-no-one's quiver

dâ sîn deheine wîle,
there be any while,

daz iemen sîne phîle
that anyone his arrows

in si dâ dorfte stecken.
into them there needed stick.

si begunden wider trecken.
they began back to-march.

ir schämlîch wider wenden 321,25
their shameful back turning

diu kriuce solte schenden,
the crosses should disgrace,

diu an si wârn gemachet.
which on them were made.

ich ding daz ir niht lachet,
I bargain that you not laugh,

als ir nu vreischt wiez in ergêt
as you now learn how-it to-them goes

aldâ si Rennewart bestêt.
there-where them Rennewart attacks.

322,1 Der manlîch unverzagte,
The manly undaunted-one,

der manegen prîs bejagte
who many-a prize won

(nu mein ich aber den markîs),
(now mean I again the marquis),

der sprach ‘den endelôsen prîs
he spoke ‘the endless prize

322,5 werbent die nu dâ sîn belibn.
win those-who now there are remained.

dine werdent nimmer vertribn
they become never driven-away

von der durchslagenen zeswen hant,
from the pierced right hand,

diu für diu helleclîchen pfant
which for the hellish pledges

ame kriuce ir bluot durh uns vergôz.
on-the cross its blood for us shed.

322,10 die selben hant noch nie verdrôz,
the same hand still never wearied,

swerz mit einvaltem dienst erholt,
whoever-it with simple service earns,

si teilt den endelôsen solt.
it deals the endless pay.

die belibene sint zer sælde erwelt.
the remained-ones are to-the fortune chosen.

swer die schalen vor hin dan schelt,
whoever the shells before away thence peels,

der siht alrêste den kernen. 322,15
he sees first-of-all the kernel.

noch hiute sule wir lernen
still today shall we learn

wie diu gotes zeswe uns lônes gieht.
how the God's right-hand us of-reward declares.

dehein sterne ist sô lieht,
no star is so bright,

ern fürbe sich etswenne.
unless-it darken itself sometimes.

enruocht, lât sîn: waz denne, 322,20
care-not, let be: what then,

sint uns die hârslihtære entriten?
are from-us the hair-sleekers ridden-away?

sint diu wîp dâ heime in rehten siten,
(if)-are the women there at-home in right manners,

si teilnt in drumbe sölhen haz,
they deal them for-it such hatred,

daz in stüende hie belîben baz.
that to-them should-stand here remaining better.

wir mugen hie sünde büezen 322,25
we may here sin atone

und behalten werder wîbe grüezen.
and keep worthy women's greetings.

vater und bruodr, nu nemet war,'
father and brothers, now take heed,'

sprach er, 'und seht wie manege schar
spoke he, 'and see how many-a company

wir wellen haben mit der zal.
we will have with the number.

daz stêt nu an der wîsen wal.'
that stands now at the wise-ones' choice.'

323,1 Der rœmschen küneginne solt
The Roman queen's pay

wart nu mit prîse aldâ geholt,
was now with prize there fetched,

und die von Paveye Irmenschart
and those-whom of Pavia Irmenschart

het erkoufet ûf die vart,
had bought onto the journey,

323,5 der neweder von den heiden
of-them neither from the heathens

durch fluht wolden scheiden:
for flight would part:

sîner swestr und sîner muoter her
his sister's and his mother's host

bî dem marcrâven blibn ze wer.
by the margrave remained for defense.

die dâ vor ê dicke ernanten,
those-who there before earlier often dared,

323,10 und die mangen sturm erkanten,
and who many-a battle knew,

rasûnten sich ze fünf scharn.
ranged themselves into five companies.

innen des die flühtegen wârn gevarn
meanwhile that the fleeing-ones were faring

an die enge ze Pitît punt.
to the narrow at Pitit Punt.

widersaz wart in dâ kunt.
resistance became to-them there known.

Rennewart at Pitit Punt

XIII

The deserters ride homeward dreaming of women, soft beds, and cupping-glasses. Rennewart falls on them at the narrow bridge of Pitit Punt, between rocks and a moor, and kills them by the score. A wise man among them urges him to come home to taverns, wine, and springs, and says the margrave fights the wind. Rennewart fights on until they swear to help him against the heathens, and they march back together.

al die wîl si zogeten her, 323,15
all the while they marched hither,

maneger slahte was ir ger.
of-many kinds was their desire.

eteslîcher wolde sehen wîp:
some would see women:

sô wolde der ander sînen lîp
so would the other his body

eysiern mit maneger sache
ease with many-a thing

nâch dem grôzen ungemache, 323,20
after the great discomfort,

daz er unsanfte was gelegn.
that he ungently was lain.

dâ widr der ander wolde phlegn
there against the other would take-care

vintûsen an sich setzen
cupping-glasses on himself set

und arbeit sich ergetzen.
and of-toil himself compensate.

der jach daz nie sô guot gezelt 323,25
he declared that never so good tent

kœm ûf wisen noch ûf velt,
should-come onto meadows nor onto field,

ern næme ein kemenâten
unless-he took a chamber

dâ für, wol berâten
there for, well provided

mit senften pflûmîten:
with soft feather-beds:

tôren solten strîten
fools should fight

324,1 mit sô manegen Sarrazînen:
with so many Saracens:

'wir sulen ûz disen pînen,
'we shall out-of these pains,

dâ wir gemach vinden grôz.
where we comfort find great.

jâ sint der Sarrazîne geschôz
indeed are the Saracens' shot

324,5 gelüppet sam diu nâtern biz.'
poisoned like the adders' bite.'

si wolten daz kein pilwiz
they would that no goblin

si dâ schüzze durh diu knie.
them there should-shoot through the knees.

dô Rennewart sah flühtic sie,
when Rennewart saw fleeing them,

im was mit zorne gein in gâch.
to-him was with wrath toward them haste.

324,10 ê daz er zir deheime iht sprach,
before that he to-them any anything spoke,

ir lâgn wol fümf und vierzec tôt.
of-them lay well five and forty dead.

sine mohten von der grôzen nôt
they could from the great distress

niht entwîchen an der enge.
not escape at the narrow.

ez dûht si harte lenge,
it seemed to-them very long,

ê si gewunnen künde 324,15
before they gained knowledge

war umb er die grôzen sünde
what for he the great sin

âne schult hin zin begienge.
without guilt toward to-them should-commit.

war umbe erz sus an vienge,
what for he-it thus on began,

des vrâgeten die rîchen.
that asked the rich-ones.

er liez et nâher strîchen 324,20
he let just nearer sweep

sîns êrsten strîtes urhap:
of-his first battle's beginning:

alze vil er in des gap.
all-too much he them of-that gave.

si wâren sunder harnasch blôz:
they were without armor bare:

genuoge der wer aldâ verdrôz:
many of-the defense there wearied:

eteslîcher begunde sich ouch wern: 324,25
some began themselves also to-defend:

der enwederz mohte si ernern.
of-these neither could them save.

swaz er ir mohte erlangen
whatever he of-them could reach

mit sîner grôzen stangen,
with his great pole,

der wart vil wênc von im gespart.
of-them was very little by him spared.

do gerou si diu widervart.
then rued them the return-journey.

325,1 Genuoge undr in begunden jehen,
Many among them began to-declare,

in wære al rehte geschehen:
to-them were all rightly happened:

si slüege aldâ diu gotes hant,
them struck there the God's hand,

von der si flühtic wærn gewant.
from whom they fleeing were turned.

325,5 'wir habn niht sölher wîte,
'we have not such width,

daz wir gein disem strîte
that we against this battle

uns ze wer niht mugen berüeren.
ourselves for defense not may stir.

wolte Rennewart uns füeren
would Rennewart us lead

in sîme dienest hinnen,
in his service hence,

325,10 er möht an uns gewinnen
he might in us win

widersaz gein der heiden her.
resistance against the heathens' host.

hie sî wir blôz mit kranker wer.'
here are we bare with weak defense.'

nu het ouch Rennewart gevalt
now had also Rennewart felled

ze bêder sît ungezalt
on both sides uncounted

325,15 des volkes âne mâze
of-the people without measure

iewederhalp der strâze.
on-each-side of-the road.

die rîchen und die armen
the rich and the poor

begunden im erbarmen.
began him to-move-to-pity.

dô er reswanc wol diu lide,
when he swung well the limbs,

er liez si sprechen nâch dem vride, 325,20
he let them speak after the peace,

unz daz er vernæme
until that he should-hear

wie ir widervart gezæme.
how their return-journey should-befit.

dô sprach under in ein wîse man
then spoke among them a wise man

'du hâst uns âne schult getân
'thou hast to-us without guilt done

dise grôzen ungefüegen nôt. 325,25
this great monstrous distress.

hie lît maneger vor dir tôt,
here lies many-a-one before thee dead,

der nie deheine schult getruoc
who never any guilt bore

an smâcheit der dir bôt genuoc
in contempt of-which to-thee offered enough

von Rôme der künic Lôys,
of Rome the king Loys,

der an dir verkrancte sînen prîs.
who in thee weakened his prize.

Nu volge als wir dich lêren. 326,1
Now follow as we thee teach.

du solt mit uns wider kêren.
thou shalt with us back turn.

wir hœhen dîne werdekeit,
we heighten thy worthiness,

sô daz dîn schämlîchez leit
so that thy shameful sorrow
nâch dînem willen wirt gestalt.
after thy will becomes arranged.
wilt du diens wesen balt
(if)-wilt thou of-service be bold
den wîben nâch ir minne,
to-the women after their love,
dîner vreuden gewinne
of-thy joys' gains
sulen grôzem trûren an gesign.
shall great mourning on conquer.
wilte abr in tavernen lign,
wilt-thou however in taverns lie,
dâ wirt geisieret sô dîn lîp,
there becomes eased so thy body,
swaz vreuden möhten geben wîp,
whatever of-joys might give women,
diu wær hie gein ze nihte,
that were here against to nothing,
als ich dich nu berihte.
as I thee now instruct.
wir sulen trinken manegez kunnen,
we shall drink many-a kind,
und in die clâren brunnen
and into the clear springs
hâhen guttrel von glase,
hang flasks of glass,
dâ grüener klê und ander wase
where green clover and other turf
under boume schate müge sîn.
under trees' shade may be.

wir sulen ouch parriern den wîn 326,20
we shall also blend the wine

mit guoter salveien.
with good sage.

sus sul wirz leben heien.
thus shall we-the life tend.

wir sulen ouch hœren klingen
we shall also hear sound

den wîn vom zapfen springen,
the wine from-the tap spring,

als den hirz von ruore. 326,25
as the hart from stirring.

in der hitz bî disem muore
in the heat by this moor

sî wir gar ze ellende:
are we wholly in exile:

dort haben wir manec geslende,
there have we many-a gulp,

dâ mite wir sulen den lîp gelabn.
there with we shall the body refresh.

an die widervart soltu dich habn:
to the return-journey shalt-thou thee hold:

daz râtent alle die hie sint. 327,1
that counsel all who here are.

der marcrâf væhte umben wint:
the margrave would-fight around-the wind:

doch ist den wîsen allen kunt,
yet is to-the wise-ones all known,

küen eber zagehaften hunt
bold boar cowardly hound

fliuhet zeteslîcher zît. 327,5
flees at-some time.

swa der marcrâve funde strît,
wherever the margrave should-find battle,

daz wær diu kurzwîle sîn,
that were the pastime his,

als ein kint snellet vingerlîn.
as a child flicks little-ring.

er wil aber ein niwe her vliesen.'
he will however a new host lose.'

327,10 'mag ich niht anders kiesen
'may I not otherwise see

an iu decheine manheit?'
in you any manhood?'

sprach Rennewart. mit in er streit:
spoke Rennewart. with them he fought:

der junge unverzagete
the young undaunted-one

den vrid in widersagete.
the peace to-them renounced.

327,15 sich huop alrêrst ir ander val.
itself lifted first-of-all their second fall.

gegen der brükke was ein tal
toward the bridge was a valley

mit velsen hôh ze bêder sît:
with rocks high on both sides:

ir decheiner mohte von dem strît
of-them none could from the battle

niht enpfaren, noch entfuor:
at-all escape, nor escaped:

327,20 ietwederhalp der brükke ein muor:
on-each-side of-the bridge a moor:

dane mohte ir keiner komen durch.
there could of-them none come through.

Rennwart die tôtlîchen furch
Rennwart the deadly furrow

mit sîner grôzen stangen ier.
with his great pole plowed.

er rief hin zin ‘welt ir mier
he called toward to-them ‘will you to-me

iwer helfe gein den heiden swern, 327,25
your help against the heathens swear,

daz mac iuch wol vor mir ernern.’
that may you well from me save.’

durch den vrid von sîner stangen
for the peace from his pole

die eide wâren schiere ergangen:
the oaths were soon gone:

si zogeten wider al gelîche,
they marched back all alike,

beidiu arme unde rîche.
both poor and rich.

The Five Companies

XIV

The margrave orders his host: his own company under the gold star with Arnalt of Gerunde, Heimrich's crying Narbonne, Buove's and Bernart's crying Brubant, Gybert's and Bertram's crying Berbester, and the van under the Schetis and the lord of Tandarnas crying Tandarnas. Rennewart arrives with the returned French and says he taught them with his branch. The margrave promises to honor him by his rank, and welcomes the French back as Peter came back after his doubt.

Dô si quâmen über al 328,1
When they came over all

ûz an die wîte für daz tal,
out onto the width before the valley,

Rennwart quam dâ für sie.
Rennwart came there before them.

si zogeten nâch im, dis unt die:
they marched after him, these and those:

ze fuoz huop er sich vor in dan.
on foot lifted he himself before them thence.

ab was genomn des rîches van,
off was taken the realm's banner,

durh daz wand inds rîches her
for that for to-them-the realm's host

was entwichen von der wer.
was given-way from the defense.

ein tiwer stern von golde,
a costly star of gold,

als der markîs wolde,
as the marquis would,

in eime samît gar blâ
in a samite wholly blue

obe sîner schar swebt aldâ:
above his company floated there:

Arnalt von Gerunde
Arnalt of Gerunde

reit bî dem markîs drunde.
rode by the marquis thereunder.

nu hete der alte Heimrîch
now had the old Heimrich

die ander schar krefteclîch.
the second company mightily.

wer der dritte scharhêrre sî?
who the third company-lord be?

der rîche Buov von Cumarzî
the rich Buove of Cumarzi

und der küene Bernart von Brubant:
and the bold Bernart of Brubant:

die wârn genendic bêde erkant.
they were bold both known.

diu vierde schar ze hêrren nam
the fourth company as lords took

Gybert und Bertram.
Gybert and Bertram.

wer der fümften schar hêrre was?
who of-the fifth company lord was?

der schêtîs und der von Tandarnas:
the Schetis and he of Tandarnas:

die zwêne heten sich bewegen, 328,25
the two had themselves resolved,

si wolten vorvehtens pflegen.
they would of-vanguard-fighting take-care.

wie manic tûsent ieslîch schar
how many-a thousand each company

het, des wil ich geswîgen gar.
had, of-that will I keep-silent wholly.

waz touc diu hant vol genant
what avails the hand full named

gein dem her ûz al der heiden lant?
against the host out-of all the heathens' land?

Der marcrâf herzeichens ruof 329,1
The margrave war-cry's call

ieslîcher schar dâ sunder schuof.
for-each company there separately created.

Munschoye al die sîne
Munschoye all the his-ones

riefen ime pîne
cried in-the pain

gein starker vîende überkraft. 329,5
against strong enemies' superior-strength.

Heimrîchs des alden geselleschaft,
Heimrich's the old's company,

ir herzeichen was Narbôn,
their war-cry was Narbonne,

den vînden angestlîcher dôn.
to-the enemies fearful tune.

diu dritte schar rief Brubant.
the third company cried Brubant.

329,10 Bernhartes vanen an sîner hant
Bernhart's banner in his hand

fuort der starke grâve Landrîs:
bore the strong count Landris:

der hete ervohten manegen prîs.
he had won-by-fighting many-a prize.

wie diu vierde schar dô schrîte
how the fourth company then cried

gein überlast in strîte?
against over-burden in battle?

329,15 ir ruof was Berbester.
their call was Berbester.

eteslîch durh sandern swester
some for the-other's sister

dâ tet rîterlîche tât.
there did knightly deed.

hôh minn gît ellenthaften rât.
high love gives valorous counsel.

diu fümfte schar rief Tandarnas:
the fifth company cried Tandarnas:

329,20 der schêtîs âne lant noch was.
the Schetis without land still was.

nu kom geloufen Rennewart,
now came running Rennewart,

ê daz si gein ir strîtes vart
before that they toward their battle's journey

mit scharen riten ûf Alischans.
with companies rode onto Alischans.

sîne stangen er al bluotic dans.
his pole he all bloody dragged.

er begunde vrâgen mære, 329,25
he began to-ask tidings,

wâ sîn hêrre wære.
where his lord were.

der hielt vor im ûf Volatîn.
he halted before him on Volatin.

dô sprach er ‘hêr, lât wesen mîn
then spoke he ‘lord, let be mine

die man durch fluht hie hât für zagen.
whom one for flight here has as cowards.

si wellnt durch mich nu prîs bejagen.
they will for me now prize win.

Si hânt ir untât erkant: 330,1
They have their misdeed recognized:

grôz werdekeit hât in gesant
great worthiness has to-them sent

in ir herze sölhe gir,
into their heart such desire,

daz si wellen helfen vehten mir
that they will help fight me

gein dem künec Tybalt von Cler. 330,5
against the king Tybalt of Cler.

dem nemac gefrumen dechein sîn wer,
to-him may avail no his defense,

ez sî swert oder boge.
it be sword or bow.

ich was sô lange ir magzoge,
I was so long their tutor,

unz ichs mit disem rîse
until I-them with this branch

twanc widervart nâch prîse.’ 330,10
constrained to-return after prize.’

der marcrâf sah die wârheit:
the margrave saw the truth:

Rennwartes her dem velde breit
Rennwart's host to-the field broad

gap manegen stoup von storje grôz.
gave many-a dust from troop great.

er sah vil swerte blicken blôz,
he saw many swords gleam bare,

330,15 und manegen gezimierten helm
and many-a crested helm

sah er glesten durch den melm,
saw he gleam through the dust,

manc banier, wol gemâltiu sper
many-a banner, well painted spears

sah er gein im füeren her,
saw he toward him carry hither,

dâ bî manc scharfe lanze.
there by many-a sharp lance.

330,20 sant Dyonîse de Franze
saint Denis of France

gunde sîme lande des lasters niht.
granted to-his land of-the reproach not.

noch hœrnt ungerne, swâ mans giht,
still hear unwillingly, wherever one-it declares,

die werden Franzeise
the worthy Frenchmen

die flühteclîchen reise:
the fleeing journey:

330,25 in tuot daz wider komen baz.
to-them does the back coming better.

ich hete ouch ê der flühte haz.
I had also before of-the flight hatred.

der marcrâf sprach ze Rennewart
the margrave spoke to Rennewart

'op disiu wider komende vart
'if this back coming journey

durch dînen willen ist getân,
for thy will is done,

sô wol mich dan daz ich dich hân!
so well-for me then that I thee have!

Bistu von sölher art erkant, 331,1
(If)-art-thou of such nature known,

daz dich rîchen sol mîn hant
that thee enrich shall my hand

(ich meine, under mir, niht obe),
(I mean, under me, not above),

sô bring ich dich zuo sölhem lobe,
so bring I thee to such praise,

gan der hœhste got des lebens mier, 331,5
(if)-grants the highest God of-the life to-me,

daz nie fürsten soldier
that never prince's soldier

für dich wart baz geêret:
before thee was better honored:

dîn wirde wirt gemêret.
thy dignity becomes increased.

biste ab hôher dan ich bin,
art-thou however higher than I am,

sô trag ich dir dienstlîchen sin; 331,10
so bear I to-thee serving mind;

und allez mîn geslehte:
and all my lineage:

daz erteil ich in von rehte.'
that judge I to-them by right.'

Rennwart sprach zem markîs
Rennwart spoke to-the marquis

'hêrre, mac mîn hant dâ prîs
'lord, (if)-may my hand there prize

331,15 an den Sarrazîn bejagn,
on the Saracens win,

den lôn wil ich von iu tragn;
the reward will I from you bear;

und einen solt den ich noch hil:
and a pay which I still hide:

mir ist halt gedanke dar ze vil.
to-me is even of-thoughts thereto too much.

nemt ir mich von herzesêre,
take you me from heart-sore,

331,20 daz mac iu füegen êre.'
that may to-you join honor.'

die Franzoyse zuo zim dar
the Frenchmen to him thither

geriten kômn mit maneger schar.
ridden came with many-a company.

der marcrâf nam die hœhsten dan,
the margrave took the highest thence,

er sprach 'sît iuch nu ellen man,
he spoke 'since you now valor reminds,

331,25 daz ir iuch selben habt erkant
that you yourselves self have recognized

und iuch her wider hât gesant
and you hither back has sent

iwer sælde ân ende
your fortune without end

zer krefteclîchen hende
to-the mighty hand

diu die helleporten brach
which the hell-gates broke

und Adâm urlœsunge jach
and to-Adam release declared

und sîner nâchkomn genuoc. 332,1
and to-his descendants enough.

durh die selben hant man sluoc
through the same hand one struck

einen grôzen ungefüegen nagel:
a great monstrous nail:

daz was der helle wuochers hagel.
that was the hell's yield's hail.

ir sît an zwîvel ê gesehen: 332,5
you are in doubt before seen:

nu muoz man sælde und ellens jehen
now must one of-fortune and of-valor declare

durch reht ieslîchem Franzoys.
by right to-each Frenchman.

Pêter, des himels portenoys,
Peter, the heaven's porter,

der gotes tougen vil für wâr
who God's secrets much for true

heinlîche erkante manec jâr, 332,10
intimately knew many-a year,

dar zuo ers offenlîche sach:
there to he-it openly saw:

von zwîvel im drîstunt geschach
from doubt to-him three-times happened

daz er an got verzagete.
that he in God despaired.

hôhen prîs er sît bejagete:
high prize he since won:

sîn manheit wart alsô wert: 332,15
his manhood became so worthy:

dane zucte niemen mêr sîn swert
there drew no-one more his sword

bî Jêsus gein den juden ze wer.
by Jesus against the Jews for defense.

als wil der Franzoyser her
so will the Frenchmen's host

in die gotes helfe kêren
into the God's help turn

332,20 unde ir sælekeit gemêren.
and their blessedness increase.

The Castellan of Cler

XV

The French bind their crosses on again and take back the realm's banner, which had been stuffed into a sack. They form one company under Rennewart and cry his name. One of the queen's soldiers jousts with a heathen scout, the castellan of Cler, who rides back wounded to Terramer and reports six companies coming and the cry of Rennewart. Terramer praises him and promises him reward.

nu bindt die marter wider an:
now bind the martyr's-sign back on:

mit rehte sol des rîches van
with right shall the realm's banner

daz kriuce tragen, dar nâch gesniten,
the cross bear, there after cut,

dâ unser heil wart an erstriten.
where our salvation was on won.

332,25 dô uns des rîches her entreit,
when from-us the realm's host rode-away,

dem vanen wir buten smâcheit,
to-the banner we offered insult,

daz wir in schuben in einen sac.
that we it shoved into a sack.

iwer kunft uns sælget disen tac:
your coming us blesses this day:

diu bringet skriuces werdekeit.'
it brings the-cross's worthiness.'

er gap in wider ir vanen breit.
he gave them back their banner broad.

'Sît ir iuch vehtens habt bedâht,' 333,1
'Since you yourselves of-fighting have bethought,'

sprach er, 'rottiert al iwer maht
spoke he, 'troop all your might

zeiner schar: diu wirt krefteclich.
into-one company: it becomes mighty.

iwerr helfe trœst ich mich.
of-your help comfort I myself.

Rennwart sî undr iwerem vanen: 333,5
Rennwart be under your banner:

ir sult ein ander ellens manen:
you shall one another of-valor remind:

iwer herzeichen sî bekant
your war-cry be known

als Rennewart ist genant.'
as Rennewart is named.'

dane wart von knehten niht gespart,
there was by servants not spared,

si schrîten lûte 'Rennewart, 333,10
they cried loud 'Rennewart,

du solt die flühtegen haben dier.'
thou shalt the fleeing-ones have here.'

ein der künegîn soldier
one the queen's soldier

hete sich verstoln durch sînen prîs
had himself stolen for his prize

ûz dem her von dem markîs;
out-of the host from the marquis;

333,15 des man im sît für ellen jach.
of-which one to-him later as valor declared.

einen wartman er halden sach,
a watchman he halt saw,

ûz der heiden her aldar geritn.
out-of the heathens' host thither ridden.

dane wart tjostieren niht vermitn.
there was jousting not avoided.

in hete dâ niemen mêr gesehen:
him had there no-one more seen:

333,20 dô muost ein sölich tjost geschehen,
then must a such joust happen,

dês der Franzoys und der Sarrazîn
of-which the Frenchman and the Saracen

beide geprîset müezen sîn.
both praised must be.

der heiden sînen puneiz
the heathen his charge

sô sêr nam ûz dem galopeiz,
so sorely took out-of the gallop,

333,25 daz sîn tjost wart mit krache hel.
that his joust became with crash loud.

der Franzoys reit ein ors vil snel,
the Frenchman rode a horse very quick,

daz er mit sporen sô sêre treip,
which he with spurs so sorely drove,

daz sîn sper dem Sarrazîne beleip
that his spear in-the Saracen remained

durch den arm, ê durch den schilt,
through the arm, before through the shield,

mit hurt unz ûf die brust gezilt.
with onset until on the breast aimed.

der Franzoys fuort des heidens sper 334,1
the Frenchman bore the heathen's spear

in sîme schilde wider her.
in his shield back hither.

des Sarrazînes kêre
the Saracen's turn

was widr gein Terramêre:
was back toward Terramer:

dâ die vier nagel sint bekant, 334,5
where the four nails are known,

ein sper durch sînen schilt man vant.
a spear through his shield one found.

sus sol der wartman wider komn.
thus shall the watchman back come.

schier daz mære wart vernomn
soon the tale was heard

an Terramêres ringe,
at Terramer's ring,

daz die Kärlinge 334,10
that the Carlings

mit scharen riten ûf Alischanz.
with companies rode onto Alischanz.

Thesereiz und Vivîanz
Thesereiz and Vivianz

gerochen wart ze bêder sît.
avenged was on both sides.

nu nâhtz der urteillîchen zît,
now neared-it the judgment-like time,

daz man mit swerten muoz bejagn 334,15
that one with swords must win

swer sigenunft wil dannen tragn.
whoever victory will thence carry.

der wartman mit zorne sprach,
the watchman with wrath spoke,

do er Terramêren sitzen sach
when he Terramer sit saw

'swaz kumbers iwerem here geschiht,
'whatever of-affliction to-your host happens,

334,20 daz welt ir haben doch für niht.
that will you have yet for nothing.

ir liget hie ungewarnet;
you lie here unwarned;

daz ir noch hiute erarnet.
that you still today pay-for.

seht waz iwer kraft des tuo:
see what your strength of-that do:

die Franzoyser rîtent zuo.
the Frenchmen ride to.

334,25 ir möht iu's vor wol hân bedâht.
you might to-you-of-it before well have bethought.

hînte was de dritte naht,
tonight was the third night,

Franzoyser hardieren
Frenchmen assaulting

uns kunde wol punieren
us could well charge

immer swâ diu enge was.
ever wherever the narrow was.

die selben riefen Tandarnas.
the same cried Tandarnas.

335,1 Da verlurt ir liute und ander habe.
There lost you people and other goods.

ich wart aldâ gestochen abe
I was there thrust off

bî des mânen schîne.
by the moon's shine.

mîn tjost ouch lêrte pîne
my joust also taught pain

einen rîter, der mich valte nider: 335,5
a knight, who me felled down:

daz selbe tet ich im hin wider.
that same did I to-him away back.

swaz iemen kumbers durch iuch neme,
whatever anyone of-affliction for you take,

daz aht ir als ein kleine breme
that esteem you as a little gadfly

viele ûf einen grôzen ûr.
should-fall on a great aurochs.

Willalm der küene punjûr 335,10
Willalm the bold attacker

füert ûz der Franzoyser lant
leads out-of the Frenchmen's land

mangen tjostiur nâch prîs erkant.
many-a jouster after prize known.

ich pinz der schahteliur von Cler:
I am-it the castellan of Cler:

gein der Franzoyser her
against the Frenchmen's host

han ich einlefstunt gestritn: 335,15
have I eleven-times fought:

daz enwirt ouch hiute niht vermitn.
that becomes also today not avoided.

Tîbalt ist der hêrre mîn:
Tibalt is the lord mine:

der sol noch hiute der êrste sîn
he shall still today the first be

an die rîtr, ob ir erloubt ez im.
on the knights, if you permit it to-him.

daz urloup von iu ich nim.' 335,20
the leave from you I take.'

Terramêr zem wartman sprach
Terramer to-the watchman spoke

'helt, mir ist leit dîn ungemach.
'hero, to-me is sorrow thy discomfort.

dîn kursît ist bluotes naz.
thy surcoat is of-blood wet.

man sol durch reht dich halden baz,
one shall by right thee hold better,

335,25 dan einen der die tjost verlac
than one who the joust lay-idle

der dîn hôher muot dort pflac.
which thy high spirit there practiced.

du bringes wartmannes mâl.
thou bringest watchman's mark.

nu sage mir, helt, al sunder twâl
now tell me, hero, all without delay

der Franzoyse gelegenheit.
of-the Frenchmen's situation.

op si entrünn, daz wær mir leit.'
if they should-escape, that were to-me sorrow.'

336,1 'Nu geloubt mir,' sprach der schahteliur,
'Now believe me,' spoke the castellan,

'Willalms her durh âventiur
'Willalm's host for adventure

noch hiute wâget manegen lîp.
still today ventures many-a body.

daz Arabl, mîns hêrren wîp,
that Arabel, my lord's woman,

336,5 ie von brüsten wart genomn,
ever from breasts was taken,

daz mag uns wol ze unstaten komn.
that may us well to disadvantage come.

ir seht si schiere zuo iu varn
you see them soon to you fare

mit sehs geflôrierten scharn:
with six flowered companies:

dâ koment die gerenden inne
there come the desiring-ones within

nâch prîses gewinne. 336,10
after prize's gain.

daz beweint etslîchs âmîe.
that weeps some-one's sweetheart.

ieslîcher schare krîe
of-each company cry

hân ich besunder dort gehôrt.
have I separately there heard.

des rîches vane haldet dort:
the realm's banner halts there:

die rüefent alle Rennewart: 336,15
they call all Rennewart:

daz gehôrt ich nie mêr ûf ir vart.
that heard I never more on their journey.

Franzoyser wellentz wâgen:
Frenchmen will-it venture:

iwern man und iwern mâgen
to-your men and to-your kinsmen

und von Vrîende den gesten
and of Vriende to-the guests

wil hiut ze schaden erglesten 336,20
will today for harm gleam

der sterne ins marcrâven vanen.
the star in-the margrave's banner.

nu sult ir Ehmereizen manen:
now shall you Ehmereiz remind:

vierzehen küneg mit sunderher
fourteen kings with separate-host

brâht er mit im über mer:
brought he with him over sea:

336,25 der wurdn im sibene alhie erslagen:
of-them were to-him seven here slain:

wil der tôten künege her nu klagen
(if)-will the dead kings' host now lament

genendeclîch ir hêrren tôt,
boldly their lords' death,

des koment die Franzoyse in nôt.
for-that come the Frenchmen into distress.

wir haben dannoch heres mêr
we have still of-host more

in dem selben herzesêr.'
in the same heart-sore.'

337,1 Terramêr der rîche
Terramer the rich

sîme rehte sprach gelîche
to-his right spoke alike

'bistuz von Cler der schahteliur,
'art-thou-it of Cler the castellan,

der sô manec âventiur
who so many-a adventure

337,5 mit speren hât versuochet,
with spears has tried,

swes dan dîn wille ruochet
whatever then thy will cares

an mich mit lêhne oder mit gebe,
of me with fief or with gift,

des wart ûf mich die wîle ich lebe.
of-that wait on me the while I live.

dar zuo hâstu der wîbe lôn,
there to hast-thou the women's reward,

in manegen landen hellen dôn, 337,10
in many lands loud tune,

dâ man sprichet dîne werdekeit:
where one speaks thy worthiness:

diu ist beidiu hôh unde breit.'
it is both high and broad.'

Terramer's Council

XVI

Terramer thinks Loys himself is coming with the realm's banner and calls on his kings to avenge Pinel, Thesereiz, Noupatris, and Arofel. He claims the Roman crown as heir of Pompey. His council swears a campaign against Christendom to destroy Orange and Paris, and Terramer means to take the throne at Aachen and then the crown in Rome. He forms ten companies and gives Halzebier the first, with the hosts of five dead lords: Pinel, Noupatris, Galafre, Eskalibon, and Talimon.

'sage mêr,' sprach der von Tenabrî,
'tell more,' spoke he of Tenabri,

'wær du den Franzoysen sô [nâhen] bî
'wert thou to-the Frenchmen so [near] by

dazt ir krîe hôrtes sunder, 337,15
that-thou their cry heardst separately,

kumt Lôys dar under,
(if)-comes Loys there among,

des houbet rœmisch krône tregt,
whose head Roman crown bears,

des wirt al mîn maht erwegt.
of-that becomes all my might stirred.

du gihes, dâ kome des rîches vane:
thou declarest, there come the realm's banner:

337,20 billîche ich gein des künfte mane
rightly I toward its coming remind

rîche und arme, swen ich mac.
rich and poor, whomever I may.

uns ist erschinen der geltes tac,
to-us is appeared the payment's day,

daz wir Pynelles tôt
that we Pynel's death

sulen klagen mit der getouften nôt.
shall lament with the baptized's distress.

337,25 Thesereiz und Nöupatrîs,
Thesereiz and Noupatris,

die zwêne künege manegen prîs
the two kings many-a prize

heten, und der bruoder mîn,
had, and the brother mine,

Arofel: des muoz ich sîn
Arofel: of-that must I be

âne vreude, ine gereche sie.
without joy, unless-I avenge them.

ich bite iuch alle, dise unt die,
I bid you all, these and those,

338,1 fürsten und der künege her,
princes and the kings' host,

die durh unser gote alhie ze wer
who for our gods here for defense

und durh diu wîp den lîp verlurn,
and for the women the body lost,

die ûf Alischanz ir tôt erkurn,
who on Alischanz their death chose,

338,5 iwer decheinen des betrâge,
of-you none of-that weary,

rechet hêrren unde mâge.
avenge lords and kinsmen.

ir habt alle wol vernomn
you have all well heard

der schuldehaften zuo komn.
of-the guilty-ones' hither coming.

in mîner jugent kund ich den lîp
in my youth could I the body

wol zimieren durh diu wîp: 338,10
well adorn for the women:

daz erteil ich noch den jungen.
that judge I still to-the young-ones.

dô mir êrst die gran ensprungen,
when to-me first the beard-hairs sprang,

mich nam diu minne in ir gebot
me took the love into her command

noch sêrer dan dechein mîn got:
still more-sorely than any my god:

durch die gote und durch die minne 338,15
for the gods and for the love

nâch prîses gewinne
after prize's gain

sul wir noch hiute werben
shall we still today strive

alsô daz vor uns sterben
so that before us die

Lôys Rômære,
Loys's Romans,

dâ ich billîcher wære 338,20
where I more-rightly were

hêrre. ir hœrt michz lange klagn,
lord. you hear me-it long lament,

mîn houbt solt rœmisch krône tragn,
my head should Roman crown bear,

dar um mîn veter Baligân
there for my uncle Baligan

verlôs manegen edelen man.
lost many-a noble man.

338,25 ûf rœmisch krône sprich ich sus:
on Roman crown speak I thus:

der edele Pompeius,
the noble Pompey,

von des gesläht ich bin erborn,
from whose lineage I am born,

(ich enhân die vorderung niht vlorn)
(I have the claim not lost)

der wart von rœmscher krône vertribn.
he was from Roman crown driven.

zunrehte ist manec künc belibn
by-wrong is many-a king remained

339,1 dâ sît ûf mînem erbe:
there since on my inheritance:

ich wænz noch manegen sterbe.'
I think-it still many-a-one die.'

Für Terramêren was gebotn
Before Terramer was commanded

bî al der heidenschefte gotn
by all the heathendom's gods

339,5 unde ouch bî sîn selbes kraft
and also by his own power

maneger rîchen geselleschaft,
many-a rich fellowship,

küngen von manegen landen.
kings from many lands.

die sprâchen von den schanden
they spoke of the disgraces

die der heilege Tervigant
which the holy Tervigant

und Machmete hêt erkant
and Machmet had known

und ir werder got Apolle.
and their worthy god Apollo.

si sprâchn ouch von dem zolle
they spoke also of the toll

den si dem tôde müesten gebn.
which they to-the death must give.

sî jâhn, in wære unmære ir lebn,
they declared, to-them were indifferent their life,

sine geræchen ê den schaden baz.
unless-they avenged first the harm better.

an disem râte maneger saz,
in this council many-a-one sat,

eskelîre und emerâle,
eskeliers and emirs,

amazûre al zemâle,
almansurs all together,

und die hœhsten künge übr al daz her.
and the highest kings over all the host.

eteslîcher über daz fünfte mer
some over the fifth sea

mit maneger rotte dar was komn:
with many-a troop thither was come:

heten marnær von den iht genomn,
had mariners from them anything taken,

daz enaht ich niht für wunder.
that would-esteem I not for wonder.

dâ sâzen ouch besunder
there sat also separately

339,25 vil fürsten die dâ heten verlorn
many princes who there had lost

ir hêrren. durh daz wart gesworn
their lords. for that was sworn

ein hervart ûf die kristenheit.
a campaign on the Christendom.

si wolden rechen herzenleit
they would avenge heart's-sorrow

und al ir goten füegen prîs.
and to-all their gods join prize.

Oransche und Pârîs
Orange and Paris

340,1 si zestœren solten.
they destroy should.

dar nâch si fürbaz wolten
there after they further would

ûf die kristenheit durch râche.
onto the Christendom for vengeance.

Terramêr den stuol dâ zAche
Terramer the throne there at-Aachen

340,5 wolt besitzn und dan ze Rôme varn,
would possess and thence to Rome fare,

sînen goten prîs alsô bewarn,
to-his gods prize so guard,

die Jêsus helfe wolde lebn,
those-who of-Jesus's help would live,

daz die dem tôde wurde gegebn.
that they to-the death should-be given.

sus wold er rœmsche krône
thus would he Roman crown

vor sînen goten schône
before his gods fairly

und vor der heidenschefte tragen.
and before the heathendom bear.

do der wartman sus begunde sagen,
when the watchman thus began to-tell,

diu hervart wart wendec.
the campaign became turned.

Terramêr was doch genendec.
Terramer was yet bold.

er sprach ‘iur aller helfe ich ger.
he spoke ‘of-your all help I desire.

der Karles sun dâ gein mir her
the Charles's son there toward me hither

rîtt: sît daz des rîches vane
rides: since that the realm's banner

von den kristen ist gebunden ane,
by the Christians is bound on,

si bringnt ir rehten houbetman,
they bring their right captain,

des vater mir vil hât getân.
whose father to-me much has done.

nemt alle mîns gebotes war.
take all of-my command heed.

ich wil haben zehen schar,
I will have ten companies,

der ieslîch baz gerîtert sî
of-which each better knighted be

dan der grœsten schar drî
than of-the greatest companies three

340,25 die mîn veter Baligân
which my uncle Baligan

in sturm gein Karle mohte hân.
in battle against Charles could have.

swie vil mir hers sî tôt gevalt,
however much to-me of-host be dead felled,

ich hân noch hers ungezalt,
I have still of-host uncounted,

daz nieman wol geprüeven mac.
that no-one well reckon may.

swem hêrre od mâc hie tôt belac,
to-whomever lord or kinsman here dead lay,

341,1 oder sus sîn liep geselle,
or thus his dear companion,

der rechez, ob er welle,
he avenge-it, if he will,

dar nâch als in sîn ellen mane.
there after as him his valor remind.

neve Halzebier, nu sol dîn vane
nephew Halzebier, now shall thy banner

341,5 hiut der êrste an die rîter sîn.
today the first on the knights be.

ich getrûwe wol der manheit dîn.
I trust well the manhood thine.

die fürsten zuo dir drunder nim
the princes to thee thereunder take

Pînels von Assim,
of-Pinel of Assim,

den mir Kâtor sande
whom to-me Kator sent

werdeclîch ûz sîme lande: 341,10
worthily out-of his land:

er hete kindes niht wan in.
he had of-child nothing but him.

Pînels ich immer jæmerc bin.
for-Pinel I ever mournful am.

der vater ist mit dem sun erslagn:
the father is with the son slain:

ich mein, sô sêre beginnt er klagn.
I mean, so sorely begins he to-lament.

ich schaffe ouch zuo dem vanen dîn 341,15
I provide also to the banner thine

die von Oraste Gentesîn,
those of Oraste Gentesin,

die der süeze Nöupatrîs
whom the sweet Noupatris

brâhte. die hânt manegen prîs
brought. they have many-a prize

erstriten mit rœrînen spern:
won-by-fighting with reed spears:

si beginnt ouch hiute tjoste gern. 341,20
they begin also today of-joust to-desire.

ir hêrren herze truoc ein wîp:
their lord's heart bore a woman:

durh die verlôs er hie den lîp.
for her lost he here the body.

den fürsten ûz dem lant Kânach
to-the prince out-of the land Kanach

an Galafrê alsam geschach.
in Galafre likewise happened.

341,25 von Sêres Eskalibôn
of Seres Eskalibon

und von Boctân rois Talimôn,
and of Boctan king Talimon,

der minne gerenden künege her
of-the love's desiring kings' host

alle fünf schaff ich dir ze wer.
all five provide I to-thee for defense.

ir hêrren ie nâch minnen striten,
their lords ever after love fought,

unz si der tôt hât überriten.'
until them the death has overridden.'

Tybalt and the Ten Sons

XVII

Halzebier rejoices at leading the first company. Terramer urges Tybalt, whom his daughter left, and Tybalt's son Ehmereiz to fight, and Tybalt answers that his prize has long been bowed by her flight; the two form the second company. Synagun of Bailie leads the third, of hosts whose lords are dead. Terramer gives his ten sons the fourth, with Arofel's Persians, to meet the sons of the old man of Narbonne, and Poydjus of Friende the fifth, with Thesereiz's Sicilians.

342,1 Halzebier sich vreute sêre:
Halzebier himself gladdened sorely:

ez dûht in grœzlîch êre,
it seemed to-him great honor,

daz er solde gâhen,
that he should hasten,

die vînde vor enphâhen.
the enemies before receive.

ân sîn selbes her über fünf lant
besides his own host over five lands

diu her ze helfe im wârn benant.
which hither as help to-him were named.

Terramêr sprach ze Tîbalt
Terramer spoke to Tibalt

'gedenc, helt, du wær ie gezalt
'remember, hero, thou wert ever counted

zer unverzageten manheit:
to-the undaunted manhood:

lâ dir hiute wesen leit
let to-thee today be grievous

daz dich mîn tohter ie verliez,
that thee my daughter ever left,

als si ir unsælde hiez.
as her her misfortune bade.

dîne milde und dîne güete
thy generosity and thy goodness

und dîn rîterlîch gemüete
and thy knightly spirit

und dînen flæteclîchen lîp
and thy handsome body

den möht ein sældehaftez wîp
it might a fortunate woman

immer gerne minnen,
ever gladly love,

diu sich wîpheit kunde versinnen,
who herself of-womanhood could bethink,

und dîn rîcheit und dîn hôhen art:
and thy wealth and thy high nature:

reht minne wær zuo dir bewart.
right love were to thee guarded.

nu soltu manlîche tuon,
now shalt-thou manly do,

du und Emereiz dîn suon:
thou and Emereiz thy son:

ir habt hie hers grôze fluot.
you have here of-host great flood.

Ehmereiz, dîn hôher muot,
Ehmereiz, thy high spirit,

342,25 swederthalp der edelt hin,
on-whichever-side that ennobles away,

daz wirt an prîse dîn gewin,
that becomes in prize thy gain,

nâch dînem vater oder nâch mir.
after thy father or after me.

dîns vater ellen râte ich dir:
of-thy father's valor counsel I thee:

sô biste in allen landen
so art-thou in all lands

bewart vor houbetschanden.'
guarded from head-disgraces.'

343,1 Der manlîch und der kurtoys
The manly and the courteous

Tîbalt der Arâboys
Tibalt the Arab

sprach 'hêrre, ir sprechet iwer zuht.
spoke 'lord, you speak your courtesy.

doch hât diu werdekeit ir fluht
yet has the worthiness her flight

343,5 nu lange an mir rezeiget:
now long on me shown:

hete ich prîs, der wart geneiget.
had I prize, it was bowed.

ir gâbet mir des ich iuch bat:
you gave to-me what I you bade:

diu gâb al mîner freude mat
the gift to-all my joy checkmate

und mîme hôhen prîse sprach,
and to-my high prize spoke,

dâ man mich bî etwenne sach. 343,10
where one me by sometime saw.

mîn laster ist nu lange breit.
my reproach is now long broad.

sît hân ich etslîch herzenleit
since have I some heart's-sorrow

iwerr tohter nâch gesendet,
your daughter after sent,

diu mich sus hât geschendet.
who me thus has disgraced.

bî mîme sune Ehmereiz 343,15
by my son Ehmereiz

alsölhe hers fluot ich weiz:
such host's flood I know:

sul wir bî ein ander varn,
shall we by one another fare,

daz wir uns zuo zein ander scharn,
that we ourselves to one another rank,

wir geben al den getouften strît,
we give to-all the baptized battle,

die dâ koment ze bêder sît 343,20
who there come on both sides

durh daz rîche und durh den markîs.'
for the realm and for the marquis.'

geflôriert in mange wîs
flowered in many ways

wart der von Todjerne.
became he of Todjerne.

si bêde striten gerne,
they both fought gladly,

343,25 Tybalt und Ehmereiz:
Tybalt and Ehmereiz:

kreftic wart ir puneiz.
mighty became their charge.

der heiden schar sint nu zwuo.
the heathens' companies are now two.

Franzoyser riten sanfte zuo:
Frenchmen rode gently to:

Halzebier durh strîten kom gein in.
Halzebier for fighting came toward them.

dâ wuohs dem jâmer sîn gewin.
there grew to-the misery its gain.

344,1 Der künec von Bailîe
The king of Bailie

Sînagûn der valsches vrîe
Sinagun the of-falseness free

der dritten schar was houbetman.
of-the third company was captain.

ich wil iu nennen, ob ich kan,
I will to-you name, if I can,

344,5 wen Terramêr zuo zim dô schuof.
whom Terramer to him then appointed.

vil maneger krîe sunderruof.
very many-a of-cry separate-call.

daz her des künec Tampastê,
the host of-the king Tampaste,

und die der künec Fausabrê
and those-whom the king Fausabre

brâhte ûz Alamansurâ:
brought out-of Alamansura:

344,10 die wârn gezimiert noch aldâ,
they were adorned still there,

si kunden rîterschaft wol tuon.
they could knighthood well do.

und die der künic Turpîuon
and those-whom the king Turpiuon

brâhte von Falturmyê:
brought from Falturmye:

ir strît tet den getouften wê.
their battle did to-the baptized woe.

die brâhte der künec Arfiklant 344,15
those-whom brought the king Arfiklant

und des bruoder Turkant,
and his brother Turkant,

ouch bî Sînagûne riten:
also by Sinagun rode:

von den wart dâ wol gestriten.
by them was there well fought.

in Sînagûnes puneiz
in Sinagun's charge

fuor daz her des künec Poufemeiz 344,20
went the host of-the king Poufemeiz

von Ingalîe des geflôrten.
of Ingalie the flowered.

elliu ôren nie gehôrten
all ears never heard

von im nie falschlîchen site:
of him ever false manner:

der wîbe lôn im wonte mite
the women's reward to-him dwelt with

unz an sîn rîterlîchen tôt: 344,25
until to his knightly death:

der minne er sich ze dienste erbôt.
to-the love he himself for service offered.

disiu her wârn elliu hêrrenlôs.
these hosts were all lordless.

diu kristenheit von in verlôs
the Christendom by them lost

mangen rîter ê der sturm ergienc,
many-a knight before the battle happened,

der sêl got in den himel enpfienc.
whose soul God into the heaven received.

345,1 Terramêr von Suntîn
Terramer of Suntin

sprach 'die zehen süne mîn,
spoke 'the ten sons mine,

ir sult haben die vierden schar.
you shall have the fourth company.

nemt mîns unverzageten ellens war,
take of-my undaunted valor heed,

345,5 daz ich in iweren jâren truoc,
which I in your years bore,

dô man mir prîses jach genuoc.
when one to-me of-prize declared enough.

ir sît künege über zehen rîchiu lant:
you are kings over ten rich lands:

iwer ieslîchem sunder ist benant
of-you to-each separately is named

vil künege die daz niht versmâhent
many kings who that not disdain

345,10 daz si ir krôn von iu enpfâhent.
that they their crown from you receive.

gein den getouften werden
against the baptized worthy-ones

sult ir unsern goten ir erden
shall you to-our gods their earth

mit sigenunft gebreiten.
with victory broaden.

ir sult ouch bî iu leiten
you shall also by you lead

iwers vetern her schône, 345,15
your uncle's host fairly,

die von Samargône,
those of Samargone,

und die fürsten gar ûz Persîâ.
and the princes wholly out-of Persia.

Arofel hât si dicke aldâ
Arofel has them often there

vil rîterlîche gelêret
very knightly taught

daz ir prîs wart gemêret. 345,20
that their prize was increased.

an des ringe ir lâget hie,
at whose ring you lay here,

nu denket hiute daz er ie
now think today that he ever

iwer ieslîchen ze sun erkôs,
of-you each as son chose,

unz er den lîp durh iuch verlôs.
until he the body for you lost.

ach wer sol nu minne pflegn, 345,25
ah who shall now love practice,

sît sô hôher prîs ist tôt gelegn?
since so high prize is dead laid-low?

waz wunders tet der Persân!
what of-wonder did the Persian!

kunnen diu wîp iht triwe hân,
can the women any faithfulness have,

sît wir alle sîn von wîben komn,
since we all are from women come,

ir jâmer wirt nâch im vernomn.
their misery becomes after him heard.

346,1 Gebt iwerr jugende hôhen muot.
Give your youth high spirit.

ir habt hôh art, [und] alsölhez guot,
you have high nature, [and] such goods,

ir muget wol volkes hêrren sîn.
you may well of-people lords be.

wîbe süeze, [und] ir minneclîcher schîn
women's sweetness, [and] their lovely shine

346,5 sol iuch hiute lêren
shall you today teach

iwern prîs bî vînden mêren
your prize by enemies to-increase

gein den die gein iu füerent prîs.
against those who toward you lead prize.

durch waz wart der markîs
for what was the marquis

genant Willalm der punjûr?
named Willalm the attacker?

346,10 da ist im vil dicke worden sûr
there is to-him very often become sour

iwerr swester minne
of-your sister's love

nâch prîses gewinne
after prize's gain

gein der rehten manheit geburt.
toward the right manhood's birth.

ir sult noch hiute den strîtes furt
you shall still today the battle's ford

346,15 alle zehen vor mir versuochen.
all ten before me try.

wellent wîp des ruochen,
will women of-that care,

etslîchiu gît iu drumbe ir lôn.
some gives you for-it her reward.

der alde dâ von Narbôn
the old-one there of Narbonne

gein mir hetzet sîniu kint:
against me sets his children:

mîner süne zehne sint, 346,20
of-my sons ten are,

die ich im zenpfâhne sende.
whom I to-him to-receive send.

Poydjus von Frîende
Poydjus of Friende

und von Griffâne der rîche,
and of Griffane the rich,

nu wirp hiut rîterlîche:
now strive today knightly:

diu fünfte schar sol wesen dîn. 346,25
the fifth company shall be thine.

Thesereizes her, des neven mîn,
Thesereiz's host, of-the nephew mine,

die küenen Seciljoyse
the bold Sicilians

suln hiute die Franzoyse
shall today the Frenchmen

under dînen vanen dringen,
under thy banner press,

dâ swert durch helm erklingen.
where swords through helms resound.

The Sixth to Ninth Companies

XVIII

Terramer sends Thesereiz's princes with Poydjus. He gives Aropatin of Ganfassasche the sixth company, with Matribleiz of Scandinavia and Glorion of Ascalon; Josweiz, son of Matusales, the seventh, with four kings; and Poydwiz of Raabs the eighth, with the black men of Azagouc. Lamenting his daughter Arabel, he gives Marlanz of Jericop the ninth, with the son of King Anki, Margot of Pozzidant, and Gorhant, whose skin is green horn.

Thesereizes fürsten nim zuo dir.
Thesereiz's princes take to thee.

geloube in allen, unde ouch mir,
believe them all, and also me,

Grikuloysen und den Latrisetn,
Grikulians and the Latrisets,

ir hêrren herze was erjetn
their lord's heart was weeded

daz man nie valsch dar inne vant.
that one never falseness there within found.

er was künec über fünf lant:
he was king over five lands:

durch dîn ellende,
for thy exile,

daz duns kœm ûz Frîende,
that thou-us shouldst-come out-of Friende,

und durch sippe und die triwe sîn,
and for kinship and the faithfulness his,

niht durch die rîcheit dîn,
not for the wealth thine,

was er dir diens undertân
was he to-thee of-service subject

in der mâze als ob er wær dîn man.
in the measure as if he were thy man.

den soltu hiute rechen.
him shalt-thou today avenge.

von des tôde müezen sprechen
of whose death must speak

immer guotiu wîp ir klage.
ever good women their lament.

von dem êrst erschinenen tage
from the first appeared day

unz an des jungsten tages schîn
until to the last day's shine

muoz Thesereiz geprîset sîn
must Thesereiz praised be

für al Adâms geslehte,
before all Adam's lineage,

swer prîs wil prüeven rehte.
whoever prize will reckon rightly.

nu sît ir mîner kinde kint,
now are you of-my children children,

die hie mit maneger storje sint,
who here with many-a troop are,

Poydjus und Ehmereiz:
Poydjus and Ehmereiz:

swâ ich iuch pêde in strîte weiz,
wherever I you both in battle know,

und ouch die zehen süne mîn,
and also the ten sons mine,

mîn herze hât den selben pîn:
my heart has the same pain:

dâ sleht man ûf mîn selbes verch.
there strikes one on my own life.

diu rede ist wâr und ninder twerch:
the speech is true and nowhere crosswise:

Halzebier und Synagûn,
Halzebier and Synagun,

ietwedr ist liebehalp mîn sun.
each is on-the-dear-side my son.

348,1 Mîner mâge sol noch mêr hie sîn.
Of-my kinsmen shall still more here be.

von Ganfassâsche Aropatîn,
of Ganfassasche Aropatin,

dîn rîche hât vil wîte:
thy realm has much width:

du solt hiut gein dem strîte
thou shalt today toward the battle

348,5 die sehsten schar füeren.
the sixth company lead.

die dîne hervart swüeren,
those-who thy campaign swore,

künege und fürsten, dîne man,
kings and princes, thy men,

die mahtu gerne bî dir hân.
them mayst-thou gladly by thee have.

ez stêt wol dîner krône,
it stands well to-thy crown,

348,10 ob du nâch der gote lône
if thou after the gods' reward

und nâch dîn selbes prîse,
and after thy own prize,

ob dichs diu minne wîse,
if thee-it the love direct,

noch hiute in strîte kumber dolst
still today in battle affliction sufferest

und der wîbe lôn ze reht erholst,
and the women's reward by right earnest,

348,15 dâ man hurte nimt unt hurte gît.
where one onset takes and onset gives.

stêt dîn herze in den strît,
(if)-stands thy heart into the battle,

du hâst sô manegen rîter guot:
thou hast so many-a knight good:

den Franzoysen schaden tuot
to-the Frenchmen harm does

dîns hurteclîchen poynders krach
of-thy onsetting charge's crash

sol si wol lêren ungemach. 348,20
shall them well teach discomfort.

krefteclîch an dîme ringe ich weiz
mighty at thy ring I know

den künec Matribleiz:
the king Matribleiz:

der hât vil hers bî dir dâ,
he has much host by thee there,

brâht ûz Scandinâvîâ:
brought out-of Scandinavia:

in Gruonlant unde in Gaheviez, 348,25
in Greenland and in Gaheviez,

der werden er dâ keinen liez.
of-the worthy-ones he there none left.

hie ist der künec von Ascalôn
here is the king of Ascalon

durh dich, der stolze Glorîôn.
for thee, the proud Glorion.

gip manlîch ellen dîner jugent:
give manly valor to-thy youth:

daz lêrt dich in dem alter tugent.'
that teaches thee in the old-age virtue.'

Terramêr sprach dô ‘helt Josweiz,
Terramer spoke then ‘hero Josweiz,

nu denke ob dir ie guot geheiz
now think whether to-thee ever good promise

von guotes wîbes munde
from good woman’s mouth

ie ze keiner stunde
ever at any hour

widerfuor durch rîterlîche tât:
befell for knightly deed:

lâ dir die minne geben rât.
let to-thee the love give counsel.

des küenn Matusaleses barn,
of-the bold Matusales’s child,

du solt hiute der gote prîs bewarn.
thou shalt today the gods’ prize guard.

Matusales dich sande mir:
Matusales thee sent me:

mîne mâge und ich getrûwe dir:
my kinsmen and I trust thee:

du bist mîner kinde œheimes sun.
thou art of-my children’s uncle’s son.

die von Hippipotiticûn
those from Hippipotiticun

unz an Agremuntîn
until to Agremuntin

sitzent, die müezen sîn
dwell, they must be

diensthaft dîner krône.
serviceable to-thy crown.

nâch der gote lône
after the gods’ reward

solt du hiute arbeiten,
shalt thou today toil,

[unt] die sibenten schar leiten.
[and] the seventh company lead.

von Janfûse Corsant
of Janfuse Corsant

sîne krône hât von dîner hant, 349,20
his crown has from thy hand,

und von Nourîente Rubbûâl:
and of Nouriente Rubbual:

der selbe künec hât al diu mâl
the same king has all the marks

diu ich an geprîstem herzen weiz.
which I in praised heart know.

her kom ouch durh dich Pohereiz,
hither came also for thee Pohereiz,

der künec von Ethnîse, 349,25
the king of Ethnise,

der gerende nâch dem prîse,
the desiring-one after the prize,

und der künec von Valpinôse
and the king of Valpinose

Thalimôn der gar unlôse:
Thalimon the wholly guileless:

wan swa er gein vînden hête haz,
for wherever he against enemies had hatred,

hôhes muotes er dâ niht vergaz.
of-high spirit he there not forgot.

Die vier künege hie durch dich 350,1
The four kings here for thee

sint. nu sol dîn gerich
are. now shall thy vengeance

über dîner basen tohter sîn.
over thy aunt's daughter be.

diu was etswenn diu tohter mîn,
she was sometime the daughter mine,

ê si sich Jêsuse ergap:
before she herself to-Jesus gave-up:

sît wuohs ir unsælde urhap.
since grew her misfortune's beginning.

Franzoyse und Alemâne
Frenchmen and Germans

durch si ûf disem plâne
for her on this meadow

mich suochent hie mit rîterschaft,
me seek here with knighthood,

daz ich mîner wîten kraft
that I of-my wide strength

niht mac geniezen unt der gote.
not may profit and of-the gods.

Poydwîz von Raabs, ze dîme gebote
Poydwiz of Raabs, at thy command

solt du hân die ahten schar.
shalt thou have the eighth company.

under dînen vanen schaffe ich dar
under thy banner provide I thither

daz her des künec Tenabruns,
the host of-the king Tenabruns,

des werden von Liwes Nugruns:
the worthy-one of Liwes Nugruns:

ir hêrre ûz prîse nie getrat.
their lord out-of prize never stepped.

Lybilûns her von Rankulat
Lybilun's host of Rankulat

sol dînes vanen ouch warten:
shall of-thy banner also wait:

die sulen noch hiute scharten
they shall still today notches

houwen durch vil herten helm,
hew through very hard helms,

dâ von begozzen wirt der melm.
there from watered becomes the dust.

bî dir sol rîterschaft ouch tuon
by thee shall knighthood also do

daz her des künec Rubîuon:
the host of-the king Rubiuon:

von Azagouc diu swarze diet 350,25
from Azagouc the black people

sint poynders hurte gegenbiet.
are of-charge's onset counter-offer.

du hâst ouch turkople vil,
thou hast also turcopoles many,

und bist wol in der krefte zil:
and art well in the strength's goal:

âne mich deheines küneges her
except me no king's host

hât hie sô maneger slahte wer.'
has here so many kinds defense.'

'Mîn tohter frumt mir herzesêr, 351,1
'My daughter makes to-me heart-sore,

Arable,' sprach dô Terramêr:
Arable,' spoke then Terramer:

'daz klag ich guoten friunden.
'that lament I to-good friends.

mîne schar die niunden
my company the ninth

soltu füeren, künec Marlanz 351,5
shalt-thou lead, king Marlanz

von Jericop. ûz strîte ganz
of Jericop. out-of battle whole

du sper noch schilt nie brâhtes,
thou spear nor shield ever broughtest,

swâ du vînden ie genâhtes:
wherever thou to-enemies ever neared:

nu tuoz durch dîne werdekeit,
now do-it for thy worthiness,

351,10 hilf hiute rechen mir mîn leit.
help today avenge me my sorrow.

ich schaffe dînem vanen bî
I provide to-thy banner by

den sun des künec Ankî,
the son of-the king Anki,

und rois Margot von Pozzidant
and king Margot of Pozzidant

under dînen vanen ouch sî benant,
under thy banner also be named,

351,15 und rois Gorhant von Ganjas.
and king Gorhant of Ganjas.

lûter grüene als ein gras
clear green as a grass

ist im hürnîn gar sîn vel:
is to-him horn-skinned wholly his hide:

sîn volc ist küene unde snel.
his people is bold and quick.

du maht die vînde wênic sparn:
thou mayst the enemies little spare:

351,20 die gote müezen dich bewarn.'
the gods must thee guard.'

Terramer's Lament

XIX

The Christians arrive and the jousting begins. Terramer has his gods set on high masts on carts drawn by armored sea-oxen. He forms the tenth company of his nine kingdoms and the dead kings' people, and gives its banner to Ector of Salenie. Seated on a mattress before his tent, he laments the kinsmen lost through his daughter's love and praises the blameless Tybalt. Like David with Absalom, he fears that if Loys falls today, Arabel may fall under her father's sword.

nu wârn ouch die getouften komn.
now were also the baptized come.

des wart ûf Alischanz vernomn
of-that was on Alischanz heard

von speren manec lûter krach:
from spears many-a loud crash:

trunzûne wurdens veldes dach.
truncheons became-the field's roof.

die tjostiur ze bêder sît 351,25
the jousters on both sides

mit einem buhurt huoben strît,
with a buhurt raised battle,

Franzoys und Sarrazîne.
Frenchmen and Saracens.

Jêsus hab die sîne:
Jesus have the his-ones:

d'andern ûz al der heiden lant,
the-others out-of all the heathens' land,

der müeze pflegen Tervigant.
of-them must take-care Tervigant.

352,1 Den selben got hiez Terramêr
The same god bade Terramer

und ander sîne gote hêr
and other his gods proud

setzen ûf manegen hôhen mast.
set on many-a high mast.

daz was iedoch ein swærer last:
that was yet a heavy load:

352,5 karrâschen giengen drunder:
carts went thereunder:

die zugen dâ besunder
them drew there separately

gewâpendiu merrinder:
armored sea-oxen:

starke liute (ez wârn niht kinder)
strong people (they were not children)

menten si mit garten.
drove them with goads.

352,10 Terramêr begunde warten,
Terramer began to-watch,

wie von golde und mit gesteine
how with gold and with gems

lûter unde reine
clear and pure

sîne gote wârn geflôret.
his gods were flowered.

er selbe was vertôret,
he himself was befooled,

352,15 daz er an si geloubte
that he in them believed

unt sîn alter wîsheit roubte,
and his age of-wisdom robbed,

als ob er wær nâch jugende var.
as if he were after youth colored.

nu wart alrêst sîn zehendiu schar
now was first-of-all his tenth company

gerottiert krefteclîche.
formed-in-troops mightily.

'niun künecrîche,' 352,20
'nine kingdoms,'

sprach er, 'ze mînen handen sint,
spoke he, 'to my hands are,

âne diu dâ habent mîniu kint:
except those-which there have my children:

swaz fürsten mir dar ûz sint komn,
whatever princes to-me there out-of are come,

under mînen vanen die sîn genomn,
under my banner they be taken,

und al der tôten künege diet, 352,25
and all the dead kings' people,

der hêrre hie von lebne schiet,
whose lord here from life parted,

ân die ich vor ir hân benant
except those-whom I before them have named

in die schar diech für mich hân gesant,'
into the company which-I before me have sent,'

sprach Terramêr von Suntîn:
spoke Terramer of Suntin:

'die andern warten alle mîn.'
'the others wait all for-me.'

'Ector von Salenîe, 353,1
'Ector of Salenie,

ich wæne, dechein âmîe
I think, no sweetheart

dich sande her,' sprach Terramêr:
thee sent hither,' spoke Terramer:

‘ich wæne doch, dîn umbekêr
‘I think yet, thy around-turning
ân den tôt sol niemen hie gesehen.
without the death shall no-one here see.
man muoz dir manheite jehen:
one must to-thee of-manhood declare:
mîn vater ungerne vlôch,
my father unwillingly fled,
Kanabêus, der dich zôch.
Kanabeus, who thee reared.
du treist krôn von mînen vanen:
thou bearest crown from my banners:
des lêhns muoz ich dich hiute manen.
of-the fief must I thee today remind.
nu nim den vanen in dîne hant:
now take the banner into thy hand:
der gote scherm sî den benant,
the gods’ protection be to-those named,
die bî dir drunde rîten
who by thee thereunder ride
und durh mich hiute strîten.
and for me today fight.
swaz künege och belêhent sîn
whatever kings also enfeoffed are
zuo dem harnasche mîn,
to the armor mine,
die bringenz al bereite her.
they bring-it all ready hither.
rîterschaft ist mîn ger.’
knighthood is my desire.’
ein tiwer pfell von golde,
a costly silk of gold,
gesteppet, als er wolde,
quilted, as he would,

von palmât ûf ein matraz,
of palm-silk onto a mattress,

dar ûf Terramêr dô saz
there on Terramer then sat

vor sîme gezelde ûf den plân.
before his tent on the meadow.

von Ormalereiz Putegân
of Ormalereiz Putegan

dar kom, der wol geborne: 353,25
thither came, the well born-one:

der truoc krône von dem horne
he bore crown from the horn

daz er blâsen solde,
which he blow should,

so er wâpen tragen wolde,
when he arms bear would,

der süezen Gyburge vater.
the sweet Gyburc's father.

Brahân, sîn ors, verdecken bater.
Brahan, his horse, cover bade-he.

Terramêr der wîse man 354,1
Terramer the wise man

sprach 'mich wænt erslichen hân
spoke 'me thinks crept-upon have

der Karles sun Lôys,
the Charles's son Loys,

als mir tet sîn markys.
as to-me did his marquis.

der kom ûf Alitschanz geriten: 354,5
he came onto Alitschanz ridden:

dane wart sô lange niht gebiten,
there was so long not waited,

unz ich mich sô bewarte
until I myself so guarded

daz ich mîn her gescharte:
that I my host ranked:

dâ von enpfieng ich herzenleit.
there from received I heart's-sorrow.

al mîner gote heilekeit
all my gods' holiness

solte erbarmn und guotiu wîp,
should have-pity and good women,

daz ich sô manegen werden lîp
that I so many-a worthy body

ûz mîme geslähte alhie verlôs.
out-of my lineage here lost.

mîn selbes bruoder ouch hie kôs
my own brother also here chose

sîn rîterlîchez ende,
his knightly end,

mirst gesaget, von des hende
to-me-is told, from whose hand

den mîn tohter minnet,
whom my daughter loves,

diu sich niht versinnet
who herself not bethinks

waz si durh in hât verlorn,
what she for him has lost,

daz si unser gote hât verkorn,
that she our gods has forsaken,

und ir wîtiu lant, [und] ir rîchez lebn
and her wide lands, [and] her rich life

hât umb armuot hie gegebn.
has for poverty here given.

si liez ouch Tybalden,
she left also Tybalt,

den süezen einvalden,
the sweet guileless-one,

den milten unt den rîchen, 354,25
the generous and the rich-one,

den clâren manlîchen,
the bright manly-one,

der enpfienc nie valscheit enkein.
he received never falseness any.

wie vert sunn durch edelen stein,
how goes sun through noble stone,

daz er doch scharten gar verbirt?
that it yet notches wholly forgoes?

alsô wênc hât ie verirt
so little has ever misled

Tybalden den genenden 355,1
Tybalt the bold

swaz man sagt von missewenden:
whatever one tells of misdeeds:

sîn herze was vor valsche ie blint.
his heart was from falseness ever blind.

durch daz kôs ich in zeime kint,
for that chose I him as-a child,

ich gap dem ellens vesten 355,5
I gave to-the of-valor firm-one

der sunnen wider glesten,
the sun's back gleaming,

Arablen die vil clâren,
Arable the very bright,

in ir beider jungen jâren,
in of-them both young years,

der schaden ich nu schaffe.
to-whom harm I now make.

355,10 ûz mînes herzen saffe
out-of my heart's sap

ist doch ir liehter blic erblüet.
is yet her bright gleam blossomed.

aller sêrest mich nu müet,
of-all most-sorely me now troubles,

ich hân gelesen daz Dâvît
I have read that David

gein sîme kinde ouch hête strît:
against his child also had battle:

355,15 Dâvît smæhen sig erkôs,
David contemptible victory chose,

dô Absalôn den lîp verlôs:
when Absalom the body lost:

dô wære er gerne für in tôt.
then were he gladly for him dead.

nu ist künftec mir diu selbe nôt.
now is future to-me the same distress.

wirt Lôys noch hiute entworht,
(if)-becomes Loys still today undone,

355,20 die râche ich fürhte und hân ervorht,
the vengeance I fear and have feared,

daz diu süeze Arable
that the sweet Arable

under sîme swerte erzable.
under his sword should-fall.

für wâr sin mugen mîn sterben
for true they may my dying

ninder ê gewerben.
nowhere sooner procure.

355,25 tragent mir die getouften haz,
bear to-me the baptized hatred,

sô stêt iedoch den werden baz
so stands yet to-the worthy-ones better

daz si ir prîs sus êren
that they their prize thus honor

und gein mir selben kêren
and against me self turn

swaz si mugen gehazzen,
whatever they may hate,

unt sich dar an niht lazzen.'
and themselves there in not slacken.'

Terramer Arms

XX

Kings bring Terramer hose, hauberk, a helm made by Schoyt, a shield, a lance, and a ruby quiver with a bow, and Clabur fastens his spurs. He complains that the Christians' coffin-stones hinder his charges. He sets his son Kanliun to guard the gods' carts and ranks kings at either hand, with Purrel and his fourteen sons on the left. A thousand drums and eight hundred trumpets sound, and he mounts Brahan. The poet turns to the first companies' fighting.

Sus der getriwe heiden saz 356,1
Thus the faithful heathen sat

al klagende ûf sînem matraz.
all lamenting on his mattress.

îsernhosen und senftenier
iron-hose and padding

brâht im der künec Grôhier
brought him the king Grohier

von Nomadjentesîn. 356,5
of Nomadjentesin.

die hosen gâben blanken schîn.
the hose gave white shine.

guote jopen und hâberjœl
good jerkins and habergeon

(Artûs bî dem Plimizœl
(Arthur by the Plimizoel

in sîme her niht bezzers vant)
in his host not better found)

356,10 brâht im der künec Oquidant:
brought him the king Oquidant:

der was von Imanzîe.
he was of Imanzie.

der künec von Barberîe
the king of Barbary

brâht im einen halsperc:
brought him a hauberk:

in Jazeranz daz selbe werc
in Jazeranz that same work

356,15 worhte derz wol kunde.
wrought he-who-it well could.

in Assigarzîunde
in Assigarziunde

was ein tiwer helm geworht:
was a costly helm wrought:

den brâht ein künec unrevorht,
it brought a king unafraid,

Samirant von Boytendroyt.
Samirant of Boytendroyt.

356,20 den selben helm worhte Schoyt,
the same helm wrought Schoyt,

des wîsen Trebuchetes sun.
the wise Trebuchet's son.

von Hipipotiticûn
of Hipipotiticun

der künec brâht im einen schilt.
the king brought him a shield.

ez hete ein armen man bevilt
it would-have a poor man wearied

solher dienære. 356,25
of-such servants.

ein lanzen scharpf, niht swære,
a lance sharp, not heavy,

geworht in Siglimessâ
wrought in Siglimessa

(ir snîde was ein grîfen klâ),
(its edge was a griffin's claw),

die brâhte der künec Bohedân
it brought the king Bohedan

von Skipelpunte, ein werder man.
of Skipelpunte, a worthy man.

Der künec von Marroch Akkarîn 357,1
The king of Marroch Akkarin

ein tärkîs ûz eim rubîn
a quiver out-of a ruby

im brâhte und einen bogen starc.
him brought and a bow strong.

ir deheines bringen er verbarc,
of-them none's bringing he hid,

er leitz et gar an sînen lîp. 357,5
he laid-it just wholly on his body.

im sanden wênic dar diu wîp:
to-him sent little thither the women:

zimierde het er sich bewegen:
crest had he himself renounced:

des liez er junge rîter pflegen.
of-that let he young knights take-care.

dô spien im umbe sîne sporn
then fastened to-him on his spurs

Clabûr, ein künec wol geborn: 357,10
Clabur, a king well born:

der was von Tybaldes art.
he was of Tybalt's lineage.

dô Terramêr gewâpent wart,
when Terramer armed became,

ûf stuont der werde rîche.
up stood the worthy rich-one.

dô sprach der manlîche,
then spoke the manly-one,

357,15 des küenen Kanabêus suon
the bold Kanabeus's son

'wie sul wir rîterschaft getuon
'how shall we knighthood do

vor der getouften sarken?
before the baptized-ones' coffins?

mîne poynder die starken
my charges the strong

mugen niht ze frumen voldrucken
may not to advantage press-through

357,20 noch hinder sich gerucken
nor behind themselves push

den Rômære Lôys.
the Roman Loys.

die getouften hânt für prîs
the baptized have for prize

daz der zouberære Jêsus
that the sorcerer Jesus

ir velt hât bestreut sus
their field has strewn thus

357,25 mit manegem sarcsteine.
with many-a coffin-stone.

ir verch und ir gebeine
their life and their bones

dar inne lît: si sint doch ganz.
there within lies: they are yet whole.

der den dürnînen kranz
he-who the thorny garland

ame kriuce ûf hete, den rûhen huot,
on-the cross on had, the rough hat,

durh si alsölhiu wunder tuot.'
for them such wonders does.'

'Al die mîn harnasch brâhten hie,' 358,1
'All who my armor brought here,'

sprach Terramêr, 'dise unt die,
spoke Terramer, 'these and those,

den ich wîtiu lant dar umbe lihe
to-whom I wide lands there for lend

und ir houbten drumbe krônen gihe,
and their heads for-it crowns grant,

die dienen hiute ir lêhen, 358,5
they serve today their fiefs,

daz si die getouften vêhen.
that they the baptized feud-against.

ir ahte füert hie grôziu her:
you eight lead here great hosts:

iwer volc hât ouch vil ze wer
your people has also much for defense

swert, pogen, lanzen, hâschen.
swords, bows, lances, hatchets.

zuo der gote karrâschen 358,10
to the gods' carts

rîtt bî mîner zeswen hant.
ride by my right hand.

dâ ist Apolle und Tervigant,
there is Apollo and Tervigant,

Mahumet und Kâhûn.
Mahumet and Kahun.

der pflege mit iu Kanlîûn
of-them take-care with you Kanliun

358,15 der künec von Lanzesardîn.
the king of Lanzesardin.

daz ist der eltste sun mîn,
that is the eldest son mine,

von mînem êrsten wîbe erborn.
from my first woman born.

zuo den goten hân ich den erkorn
to the gods have I him chosen

durh sîn ellen in mîn selbes schar:
for his valor into my own company:

358,20 ir und mîn er nimt wol war.
of-you and of-me he takes well heed.

die niun künege rîten
the nine kings ride

ze mîner zeswen sîten.
at my right side.

sô rît ze mîner lenken hant
so ride at my left hand

in der schar der künec von Nubîant
in the company the king of Nubiant

358,25 mit den vierzehen sünen sîn.
with the fourteen sons his.

Purrel tuot hiute manheit schîn,
Purrel makes today manhood seen,

und die stolzen Cordîne
and the proud Cordines

und die punjûr Poytwîne,
and the attackers Poytwines,

und Cliboris der starke,
and Cliboris the strong,

der künec von Tananarke.
the king of Tananarke.

Von Bêâterr rois Samirant, 359,1
Of Beaterr king Samirant,

von Norûn rois Oukidant,
of Norun king Oukidant,

die scharn sich winsterthalben mier,
they rank themselves on-the-left-side to-me,

und der künic Crôhier
and the king Crohier

von Oupatrîe: 359,5
of Oupatrie:

maneger slahte krîe
of-many kinds cries

sol man hœrn in sîme her.
shall one hear in his host.

der künic Samûêl ze wer
the king Samuel for defense

sî bî mîner winstern hende,
be by my left hand,

und der künec Môrende. 359,10
and the king Morende.

der ist jenhalp Katus Erkules
he is beyond Gades Hercules

mir verre kumen, geloubet des.
to-me far come, believe that.

do ich mîne samnunge sprach,
when I my gathering spoke,

über sehs jâr diu geschach:
over six years it happened:

swer mir in den zîten wolde komn, 359,15
whoever to-me in the times would come,

der mohte si wol hân vernomn.
he could it well have heard.

bî dem strîte der künec Fabûr:
by the battle the king Fabur:

der hât manegen amazûr
he has many-a almansur

über Fîsônen brâht.
over Phison brought.

359,20 ich hân ouch Haropîns gedâht,
I have also of-Haropin thought,

des alten Tananarkoys,
the old man-of-Tananark,

zuo sîme sune dem kurtoys,
to his son the courteous-one,

Clyborise, den ich zôch.
Clyboris, whom I reared.

ir neweder nie geflôch:
of-them neither ever fled:

359,25 swâ man poynders hurte vernam,
wherever one charge's onset heard,

dâ was ir wilde wol sô zam
there was their wild well so tame

daz si ir biten ime schalle.
that they of-it waited in-the clamor.

dise werden künege alle
these worthy kings all

sulen schildes halp zuo mir scharn,
shall of-shield side to me rank,

mînen lîp und ir prîs bewarn.'
my body and their prize guard.'

360,1 Terramêr der rîche sprach
Terramer the rich spoke

ze eime künege, dem er jach
to a king, to-whom he declared

daz er krône dâ von trüege
that he crown there of should-bear

daz er würfe und slüege
that he threw and struck

tûsent rottumbes hel.
thousand drums loud.

Cernubilê von Ammirafel
Cernubile of Ammirafel

gebôt daz den sînen.
commanded that to-the his-ones.

aht hundert pusînen
eight hundred trumpets

hiez blâsen rois Kalopeiz.
bade blow king Kalopeiz.

in sîme lande man noch weiz
in his land one still knows

daz pusîn dâ wart erdâht:
that trumpet there was devised:

ûz Thusî die wâren brâht.
out-of Thusi they were brought.

dô zoch man Brahâne dar.
then drew one Brahan thither.

unz ûf den huof daz ors vil gar
until on the hoof the horse very wholly

gewâpent was mit kovertiur:
armored was with covering:

ein phellel glestende als ein fiur,
a silk gleaming as a fire,

mit kost geworht in Suntîn,
with cost wrought in Suntin,

der lag ûf der îserîn.
it lay on the iron-one.

ûf saz der von Tenabrî.
up sat he of Tenabri.

im reit ze bêden sîten bî
to-him rode on both sides by

manec unverzaget rîter guot:
many-a undaunted knight good:

etslîchem wîp gâben muot
to-some women gave spirit

daz er sich nâch in sente.
that he himself after them yearned.

merrinder man dô mente,
sea-oxen one then drove,

360,25 diu die karrâschen zugen.
which the carts drew.

swen die gote dâ betrugen,
whomever the gods there deceived,

die drûf wârn gemachet,
which thereon were made,

des geloube was verswachet.
his faith was weakened.

Nu lât Terramêren rîten:
Now let Terramer ride:

hœret wie die êrsten strîten.
hear how the first-ones fight.

361,1 sîn helfe kumt in doch ze fruo.
his help comes to-them yet too early.

nu hœrt wer sölhe tât dâ tuo,
now hear who such deed there do,

daz man in drumbe prîse.
that one him for-it praise.

ob michs d'âventiure wîse,
if me-it the-adventure direct,

361,5 der sol ich nennen iu genuoc,
of-them shall I name to-you enough,

swer dâ sô hôhez herze truoc,
whoever there so high heart bore,

daz er sich prîse nâhte,
that he himself to-prize neared,

dô man diu mære brâhte
when one the tidings brought

uns in toufpæriu lant.
us into baptism-worthy lands.

wîp heten dar gesant 361,10
women had thither sent

ze bêder sît alsölhe wer,
on both sides such defense,

dâ von daz kristenlîche her
there from the Christian host

und diu fluot der Sarrazîne
and the flood of-the Saracens

enpfiengen hôhe pîne,
received high pain,

die sich sô für genâmen, 361,15
who themselves so before took,

dô der tôt sînen sâmen
when the death his seed

under si gesæte,
among them sowed,

daz man von ir tæte
that one of their deed

mit êren nu gesprechen mac.
with honor now speak may.

daz was in ein werder endes tac. 361,20
that was to-them a worthy end's day.

vil maneger kom zer tjoste für:
very many-a-one came to-the joust forth:

man sah ouch manegn an der kür,
one saw also many-a-one at the choice,

der ze muoten widr geworfen hât,
who to claim back thrown has,

daz er rebeite pontestât,
that he prepared onslaught,

361,25 daz der ganze poynder ûf in stach.
that the whole charge on him thrust.

etslîcher sus sîn sper zebrach,
some thus his spear broke,

der den puneyz sô volracte,
who the charge so fulfilled,

daz er sich selben stacte
that he himself self stuck

in die rîterschaft der heiden
into the knighthood of-the heathens

sô daz swert in die scheiden.
as the sword into the scabbard.

The First Clash

XXI

The Schetis and the king of Tandarnas meet Halzebier, whose men avenge Noupatris with reed spears, and Galafre, Eskalibon, and Thalimon; many of the Schetis's men fall, and Halzebier kills every Christian who rides at him. Tybalt and Ehmereiz ride at the margrave's star, their banners borne by Gyboez and Trohazzabe. Rennewart strikes horse and man alike, thinking the covered horses fight too. Tybalt, in snow-white salamander, jousts with Gandaluz of Champagne.

Diz kunden si ze bêder sît. 362,1
This made-known they on both sides.

sus samelierte sich der strît.
thus assembled itself the battle.

die tjostiure ûz fünf scharn
the jousters out-of five companies

und der schêtîs kom gevarn,
and the Schetis came faring,

und der künec von Tandarnas, 362,5
and the king of Tandarnas,

und swer dâ mit in beiden was,
and whoever there with them both was,

an den künec von Falfundê.
on the king of Falfunde.

Halzebiere was vor jâmer wê
to-Halzebier was for misery woe

um Pînels tôt von Ahsim.
for Pinel's death of Ahsim.

des manlîch her reit dâ bî im 362,10
whose manly host rode there by him

geflôrt mit maneger koste:
flowered with many-a cost:

der getouften tjoste
of-the baptized jousts

umb gelt wart von in genomn.
for payment were by them taken.

mit Halzebier was ze orse komn
with Halzebier was on horse come

362,15 der mêr, die tjoste ouch gerten,
of-the more, who joust also desired,

die Gyburge werten
who to-Gyburc granted

ze Oransche deheiner strîte:
at Orange no battles:

an des marcrâven kümfte zîte
at the margrave's coming's time

si dûhte, ir râche hête prîs.
them seemed, their vengeance had prize.

362,20 der künec Nöupatrîs
the king Noupatris

von Oraste Gentesîn
of Oraste Gentesin

wart mit speren rœrîn
was with spears reedy

manlîche dâ gerochen.
manly there avenged.

sô diu sper wârn zebrochen,
when the spears were broken,

362,25 der trunzûn schilt noch harnasch meit:
the truncheon shield nor armor avoided:

des rôres scherpfe beidiu sneit.
the reed's sharpness both cut.

swer solhe tjoste wolde urborn,
whoever such joust would earn,

der bedorfte wol der sporn,
he needed well the spurs,

und daz ûz dem kalopeyz
and that out-of the gallop

von rabîn wær sîn puneyz.
from gallop should-be his charge.

Des küneges her von Kânach 363,1
The king's host of Kanach

man sô bî Halzebiere sach,
one so by Halzebier saw,

ir strît tet den getouften wê.
their battle did to-the baptized woe.

ir hêrre, der künec Galafrê,
their lord, the king Galafre,

dem von Vivîanzes hant 363,5
to-whom from Vivianz's hand

sîn werlîch sterben wart erkant,
his warlike dying became known,

hôhe fürsten, sîne man,
high princes, his men,

die gedâhten nu dar an:
they thought now there on:

ir râche gap dâ sterbens lôn.
their vengeance gave there dying's reward.

von Sêres rois Eskalibôn, 363,10
of Seres king Eskalibon,

dem ouch der junge Vivîanz
to-whom also the young Vivianz

sîn leben nam ûf Alitschanz,
his life took on Alitschanz,

der wart mit maneger tjost geklagt,
he was with many-a joust lamented,

und ouch mit swerten, sô man sagt.
and also with swords, as one says.

363,15 die von Boctâne
those of Boctane

wol striten ûf dem plâne
well fought on the meadow

under Halzebieres vanen:
under Halzebier's banner:

sine dorfte niemen râche manen
them needed no-one of-vengeance remind

umb ir hêrren Thalimônen:
for their lord Thalimon:

363,20 sine kunden niemens schônen.
they could no-one spare.

do enphienc des schêtîses her
then received the Schetis's host

von den gesten über mer
from the guests over sea

grôzen kumber schiere:
great affliction soon:

der sînen soldiere
of-the his soldiers

363,25 und der massenî von Tandarnas
and of-the household of Tandarnas

wart vil gevellet ûf daz gras.
was many felled onto the grass.

Halzebier dâ selbe streit:
Halzebier there himself fought:

swaz der getouften im gereit,
whatever of-the baptized to-him rode,

die nâmn von sîner hende
they took from his hand

ûf den gotes solt ir ende.
on the God's pay their end.

Nu kom rois Tîbalt von Cler
Now came king Tibalt of Cler

mit wol geflôriertem her,
with well flowered host,

unt des sun von Todjerne.
and his son of Todjerne.

si kêrten dâ der sterne
they turned where the star

schein ûz des marcrâven vanen.
shone out-of the margrave's banner.

Ehmereiz begunde manen
Ehmereiz began to-remind

künege unde fürsten gar,
kings and princes wholly,

die dâ riten an sîner schar,
who there rode in his company,

daz si gedæhten an ir prîs,
that they should-think on their prize,

si kêrten an den markîs.
they turned on the marquis.

die stolzen Franzoyse
the proud Frenchmen

fürriten die Arâboyse,
out-rode the Arabs,

die zuo srîches vanen wârn geschart.
who to the-realm's banner were ranked.

der starke junge Rennewart
the strong young Rennewart

ûf der heiden orsen sach
on the heathens' horses saw

von pfellen manec tiwer dach.
of silks many-a costly roof.

Tybalt und die sîne,
Tybalt and the his-ones,

Ehmereizes Sarrazîne
Ehmereiz's Saracens

fuorten an ir lîben
bore on their bodies

364,20 des man danken sol den wîben.
of-what one thank shall the women.

bî Ehmereizes kursît
by Ehmereiz's surcoat

der heide glanz ins meien zît
the heath's radiance in-the May's time

mit touwe behenket
with dew hung

an prîse wære verkrenket:
in prize would-be weakened:

364,25 sô clâr was er gemachet,
so bright was it made,

daz die bluomen wærn verswachet.
that the flowers were weakened.

der pfellel hiez pôfûz.
the silk was-called pofuz.

al sîniu eier het ein strûz
all its eggs had an ostrich

derbî wol ûz gebrüetet,
there-by well out hatched,

wærns anders wol behüetet.
were-they otherwise well guarded.

365,1 Gybôez der schahteliur von Cler
Gyboez the castellan of Cler

pflac des vanen in Tybaldes her.
took-care of-the banner in Tybalt's host.

dô der gehôrte unde ersach
when he heard and saw

wie man dâ sluoc unde stach,
how one there struck and thrust,

in müete daz sîns hêrren schar 365,5
him troubled that his lord's company

niht streit vor den andern gar,
not fought before the others wholly,

wand er wol strît getorste tuon.
for he well battle dared do.

Trohazzabê von Karkassuon
Trohazzabe of Karkassun

Ehmereizes vanen fuorte,
Ehmereiz's banner led,

des herze nie geruorte 365,10
whose heart never touched

sölch site dâ von ein man verzagt:
such manner there from a man despairs:

der wart nie von im gesagt.
it was never of him told.

swelhes tages er keinen vînt sach,
whichever day he no enemy saw,

bî vriunden het er ungemach,
by friends had he discomfort,

sô si die vanen geneigten 365,15
when they the banners lowered

unt ze bêder sît erzeigten
and on both sides showed

die helde dar unde,
the heroes there among,

wer getorste und kunde
who dared and could

lîp und êre aldâ gewern
body and honor there grant

und ûf sîn selbes verch gezern. 365,20
and on his own life consume.

nu hœrt waz Rennewart nu tuo.
now hear what Rennewart now does.

wackerlîchen greif er zuo,
valiantly grasped he to,

er sluoc beidiu ross unt man,
he struck both horse and man,

wand er sich rehte niht versan
for he himself rightly not understood

365,25 gein wem erz solte wâgen:
against whom he-it should venture:

dô sô tiwer pfellel lâgen
when so costly silks lay

ûf der heiden râvîten,
on the heathens' chargers,

er wânde solde strîten
he thought should fight

mit den orsn als mit den liuten.
with the horses as with the people.

ine mac niht wol bediuten
I can not well explain

366,1 wie dâ wart gefohten,
how there was fought,

manec poynder geflohten
many-a charge twined

hurteclîchen in ein ander.
onrushingly into one another.

daz werc von salamander,
the work of salamander,

366,5 ist iht wîzers danne der snê,
(if)-is anything whiter than the snow,

het ich daz gehœret ê,
had I that heard before,

sô möht ich wol gelîchen dar
so might I well liken thereto

daz Tybalt an im hête gar.
what Tybalt on him had wholly.

salamander was sîns schildes dach,
salamander was his shield's roof,

swaz man an im obem îser sach, 366,10
whatever one on him above-the iron saw,

kursît und kovertiure:
surcoat and covering:

ân der wîbe stiure
without the women's aid

was sîn wâpenkleit mit kost.
was his arms-clothes with cost.

er was selbe ouch gein der tjost
he was himself also toward the joust

für komen ûf dem plân. 366,15
forth come on the meadow.

der grâve von Schampân,
the count of Champagne,

der hôch gemuote Schampânoys
the high spirited man-of-Champagne

kom gein dem milten Arâboys,
came toward the generous Arab,

Gandalûz der fürste rîche.
Gandaluz the prince rich.

mir ist gesaget, rîterlîche 366,20
to-me is told, knightly

wart dâ diu tjost von in getân,
was there the joust by them done,

des si bêde prîs müezen hân.
of-which they both prize may have.

Synagun's Charge

XXII

Tybalt's great charge has not fully arrived, but the men of his realm ride, hoping that Gyburc must still be their lady. Gyboez the castellan charges with the banner, and the realm's company is surrounded, while Ehmereiz is led out by his bridle before his men shield him. Synagun, generous and valiant, rides Passilivrier straight for the star on the margrave's banner, and Gyffleyz takes his joust. The hosts of six kings in his company avenge their dead lords.

innen des streit Ehmereiz.
meanwhile that fought Ehmereiz.

Tybaldes grôzer pungeiz
Tybalt's great charge

366,25 was niht vollecl îchen komn her nâch,
was not fully come hither after,

die den man rotte jach,
those to-whom one of-troop declared,

amazûre und eskelîre.
almansurs and eskeliers.

zwischen Wîzsant und Stîre
between Wissant and Styria

niht sô manec rîter wâpen tregt,
not so many-a knight arms bears,

sô Tybalt het ûf ze orse erwegt,
as Tybalt had up on horse stirred,

367,1 die von sîn eines ringe
who from his alone ring

riten ûf den gedinge
rode on the hope

daz Gyburc diu künegîn
that Gyburc the queen

dannoch ir vrouwe müese sîn,
still their lady must be,

daz si phant dar umbe erwurben
that they pledge there for should-win

oder bî ir hêrren ersturben.
or by their lord should-die.

nâch phande durch âventiur
after pledge for adventure

Gybôez der schahteliur
Gyboez the castellan

mit dem vanen punierte:
with the banner charged:

manlîch er kundewierte
manly he led-on

die nâch Gyburge striten,
those-who after Gyburc fought,

daz si mit hurte kômn geriten.
that they with onset came ridden.

si wânden daz rois Lôys
they thought that king Loys

dâ wære durch den markîs.
there were for the marquis.

dâ wart unverdrozzen
there was unwearied

durchriten und umbeslozzen
ridden-through and surrounded

von Sarrazîn des rîches schar.
by Saracens the realm's company.

sich samelierten dicke dar
themselves assembled often thither

aber die Franzoyse widr
again the Frenchmen back

und valten manegen rîter nidr.
and felled many-a knight down.

der herzoge Trohazzabê
the duke Trohazzabe

was an die Franzoyser ê
was on the Frenchmen before

mit Ehmereizes vanen komn.
with Ehmereiz's banner come.

dâ wart Ehmereiz genomn
there was Ehmereiz taken

367,25 in den zoum und dan geleitet ûz.
by the bridle and thence led out.

der tiure phellel pôfûz
the costly silk pofuz

gap gein der sunnen sölhez prehen,
gave toward the sun such sheen,

daz des küneges kumber muosen sehen
that the king's affliction must see

diu fluot der Sarrazîne:
the flood of-the Saracens:

doch beschutten in die sîne.
yet shielded him the his-ones.

368,1 Manec unverzaget kristen hant
Many-a undaunted Christian hand

dâ wurben umbe sölhiu pfant
there strove for such pledges

die Berhtram möhte machen quît
which Berhtram might make quit

dâ warp ouch Ehmereizes strît
there strove also Ehmereiz's battle

368,5 nâch phande umb die diu in gebar.
after pledge for her who him bore.

dô kom Synagûn mit schar,
then came Synagun with company,

der punjûr und der stanthart.
the attacker and the standard.

oug noch ôr nie innen wart
eye nor ear ever aware became

daz sîn herze ie'nphienge wanc,
that his heart ever-received wavering,

daz er gelernete den gedanc 368,10
that he learned the thought

der sich dem prîse virret.
which itself from-the prize distances.

er was des unverirret,
he was of-that unhindered,

sîn hant, sîn swert, sîn lanze
his hand, his sword, his lance

het im die drî schanze
had to-him the three stakes

dicke ertoppelt sêre, 368,15
often thrown-at-dice sorely,

und anders manec êre.
and otherwise many-a honor.

ein schanze daz was miltekeit,
one stake that was generosity,

diu ander ellen swâ er streit,
the other valor wherever he fought,

diu dritte manlîch güete.
the third manly goodness.

sus stuont sîn gemüete. 368,20
thus stood his spirit.

von im seit d'âventiure mier,
of him tells the-adventure me,

sîn ors hiez Passilivrier.
his horse was-called Passilivrier.

daz was snel und trachenvar,
that was quick and dragon-colored,

als im mit fiwers vanken gar
as to-him with fire's sparks wholly

368,25 gefurriert wæren sîniu mâl:
lined were its marks:

ez gienc mit sprungen sunder twâl
it went with leaps without delay

under im vor sîner schar.
under him before his company.

swelh wîp in hête dar
whichever woman him had thither

mit ir werschaft gesendet,
with her warranty sent,

ir bote was ungeschendet.
her messenger was undisgraced.

369,1 Von Bailîe Sînaguon,
Of Bailie Sinaguon,

der künec getorste wol getuon
the king dared well do

daz scharpfer strît ist noch benant:
what sharp battle is still named:

dâ für sîn manheit was bekant.
there for his manhood was known.

369,5 er kêrte ouch gein der herte,
he turned also toward the hardship,

dâ lîp und êre werte
where body and honor defended

und Gyburge minne
and Gyburc's love

und des landes gewinne
and the land's gains

der marcrâve als er kunde,
the margrave as he could,

369,10 und Arnalt von Gerunde:
and Arnalt of Gerunde:

die zwêne heten eine schar.
the two had one company.

Synagûn strebte allez dar
Synagun strove all thither

da der sterne mit sîm glaste
where the star with its radiance

sô rîlîchen vaste
so richly firmly

ûzes marcrâven vanen schein. 369,15
out-of-the margrave's banner shone.

dâ für habe daz iwer dehein,
there for have that of-you none,

daz ez der sterne wære
that it the star were

von dem man sagt daz mære,
of which one tells the tale,

der die drî künege leite:
which the three kings led:

dirre stern alhie bereite 369,20
this star here prepared

vil tjost die Sarrazîne.
many jousts for-the Saracens.

Synagûn, der manege pîne
Synagun, who many-a pain

durch wîbe grüezen dolte,
for women's greetings suffered,

ein tjost ze vorderst holte
a joust at-the foremost fetched

ûf Passilivrier: 369,25
on Passilivrier:

daz ors was sneller denne ein tier.
the horse was quicker than a beast.

ein grâve ûz Arnaldes lant
a count out-of Arnalt's land

(Gyffleyz was der genant)
(Gyffleyz was he named)

die tjost von dem künege nam
the joust from the king took

als ez in bêden wol gezam.
as it them both well befitted.

370,1 Dô Synagûn kom mit scharn
When Synagun came with companies

gein dem markyse gevarn,
toward the marquis faring,

bî der zweir schar houbetman
by of-the two company captain

wart sô mit rîterschaft getân,
was so with knighthood done,

370,5 dês got sol danken und diu wîp.
of-which God shall thank and the women.

manec hôchgemüetic lîp
many-a high-spirited body

und doch niht vor jâmer vrî,
and yet not of misery free,

die riten Synagûne bî,
they rode Synagun by,

die rehten jâmers tag erkurn
who right misery's day chose

370,10 dô si hêrrn und mâge verlurn.
when they lords and kinsmen lost.

daz selbe ouch dise klageten;
that same also these lamented;

dâ von si bejageten
there from they won

ze bêder sît noch flüste mêr
on both sides still loss more

und aber niwe herzesêr
and again new heart-sore

von den diez tuon getorsten. 370,15
from those who-it do dared.

man hôrt ûz manegen vorsten
one heard out-of many forests

den walt dâ sêre krachen.
the wood there sorely crack.

die sper kunden machen,
those-who spears could make,

die wæren nütze dâ gewesen:
they would-have useful there been:

si mugen ab sus vil baz genesen 370,20
they may however thus very better survive

dâ si die schefte schiften drîn:
where they the shafts fitted therein:

soltens in dem puneiz sîn,
should-they in the charge be,

ir wurde minr von in geworht.
of-them would-be less by them wrought.

manec rîter unervorht
many-a knight unafraid

ûz sehs künege landen 370,25
out-of six kings' lands

sich bewarten dâ vor schanden.
themselves guarded there from disgraces.

Synagûns geselleschaft
Synagun's fellowship

von manegem fürsten hête kraft,
from many-a prince had strength,

der flust an sîme hêrren kôs
who loss in his lord saw

und ouch sich selben nu verlôs.
and also himself self now lost.

371,1 Dâ tet vil scharpfer râche schîn
There made very sharp vengeance seen

daz her ûz Naroclîîn
the host out-of Narocliin

umbe ir hêrrn rois Tampastê:
for their lord king Tampaste:

und daz her ûz Falturmîê,
and the host out-of Falturmie,

371,5 daz Turpîûn brâhte dar,
which Turpiun brought thither,

wol streit in Sînagûnes schar.
well fought in Sinagun's company.

wol râchen Fausabrên aldâ
well avenged Fausabre there

die fürstn ûz Alamansurâ,
the princes out-of Alamansura,

den Terramêrs swester suon.
the Terramer's sister's son.

371,10 da getorste ein her wol râche tuon,
there dared a host well vengeance do,

des milten Turkandes
of-the generous Turkant

und des süezen Arfiklandes:
and of-the sweet Arfiklant:

von Turkânîe wâren die.
of Turkanie were they.

des sehsten künec ich nenne hie,
of-the sixth king I name here,

des her bî Synagûne ouch reit
whose host by Synagun also rode

und wol gein den getouften streit,
and well against the baptized fought,

von Ingalîe Poufemeiz,
of Ingalie Poufemeiz,

von dem dise âventiure weiz
of whom this adventure knows

daz sîn jugent, die wîle er lebte,
that his youth, the while he lived,

ie nâch hôhem prîse strebte.
ever after high prize strove.

Gyburc's Brothers

XXIII

Gyburc's ten brothers charge. Bernart of Brubant seizes Fabors by the bridle as a pledge for his son Bertram. The Persians avenge Arofel, and the turcopoles' bows chatter like storks in the nest. Poydjus of Griffane, king also at Friende, arrives with a great host, his banner borne by Tedalun, the forest-master of Lignaloe, and his company gleams with silk.

die getouften muosen kumber doln
the baptized must affliction suffer

und diu zweir slahte lôn erholn.
and the two kinds' reward earn.

die ir leben dannen brâhten,
those-who their life thence brought,

werdiu wîp in lôns gedâhten:
worthy women to-them of-reward thought:

die aber dâ nâmn ir ende,
those-who however there took their end,

die fuoren gein der hende
they went toward the hand

diu des soldes hât gewalt,
which of-the pay has might,

der für allen solt ist gezalt.
which before all pay is counted.

diu selbe hant ein voget ist
the same hand a protector is

unde ein scherm fürs tievels list.
and a shield against-the devil's cunning.

372,1 Ine mac niht wol benennen gar
I can not well name wholly

an den ruoft der heiden sunderschar,
at the cry of-the heathens' separate-companies,

waz si kreiierten
what they cried

sô si pungierten.
when they charged.

372,5 Munschoy wart ouch dâ niht verdagt.
Munschoy was also there not kept-silent.

nu kom manlîch und unverzagt
now came manly and undaunted

Gyburge bruoder alle zehn.
Gyburc's brothers all ten.

hôhe küneg nâch grôzem lêhn
high kings for great fief

reit bî Terramêrs kinden vil,
rode by Terramer's children many,

372,10 und esklîre an der fürsten zil,
and eskeliers at the princes' goal,

und emerâle ungezalt.
and emirs uncounted.

alrêrst nu donret der walt
first-of-all now thunders the forest

von lanzen krache und der sper.
from lances' crash and of-the spears.

dâ kom in galopeyze her
there came in gallop hither

von den zehen künegen jungen 372,15
from the ten kings young

manec storje umbetwungen
many-a troop unconstrained

von aller zageheite:
by all cowardice:

hôchmuot was ir geleite.
high-spirit was their escort.

Bernart von Brubant,
Bernart of Brubant,

der ie genendic was bekant, 372,20
who ever bold was known,

und Buove von Cumarzî,
and Buove of Cumarzi,

die riten einem vanen bî.
they rode a banner by.

Fâbors von Meckâ
Fabors of Mecca

kom für durch tjostieren dâ:
came forth for jousting there:

Glorjax, Malarz und Utreiz 372,25
Glorjax, Malarz and Utreiz

kom vor dem grôzen puneiz.
came before the great charge.

die geflôrten künege viere,
the flowered kings four,

iu enmöhte niemen schiere
to-you could no-one soon

ir zimierde benennen:
their crest name:

die muost man tiure erkennen.
it must one dearly know.

373,1 Der starke grâve Landrîs
The strong count Landris

bürt den vanen hôh durch sînen prîs.
raises the banner high for his prize.

der herzoge Bernart
the duke Bernart

mit grôzem poynder ungespart
with great charge unspared

373,5 kêrte gein den kinden:
turned toward the children:

er wolte gîsel vinden
he would hostage find

für sînen sun Berhtram.
for his son Berhtram.

die tjost von Fâbors er nam,
the joust from Fabors he took,

unde greif in in den zoum.
and seized him by the bridle.

373,10 daz ors truoc einen werden soum,
the horse bore a worthy load,

daz Bernart zôch an der hant:
which Bernart drew at the hand:

in dûhte, er hete gæbez pfant
him seemed, he had acceptable pledge

für sîne mâge und für den suon.
for his kinsmen and for the son.

waz mugen die Sarrazîn nu tuon,
what may the Saracens now do,

si beschüten Fâborsen? 373,15
they shield Fabors?

allez sîn flôrsen
all his flowering

ûf helme und ûf kursîte
on helm and on surcoat

wart von des poynders strîte
was by the charge's battle

mit swerten gar zerhouwen,
with swords wholly hewn,

er kouftz odz gæben vrouwen. 373,20
he bought-it or-it gave ladies.

hurtâ, wie die getouften
hurta, how the baptized

borgeten und verkouften
borrowed and sold

mangen wehsel âne tumbrel.
many-a exchange without scale.

etslîches wâge was sô snel,
some-one's balance was so quick,

daz sin sancte nidr unz in den tôt. 373,25
that it-them sank down until into the death.

ze bêder sît si dolten nôt,
on both sides they suffered distress,

Sarrazîne und ouch die kristen.
Saracens and also the Christians.

dane kunden niht gevristen
there could not protect

des werden Buoven hende
of-the worthy Buove's hands

der heiden hôch gebende.
the heathens' high head-band.

374,1 Diu kint sint dâ bestanden
The children are there attacked

von den die ûz banden
by those who out-of bonds

gerne lôsten Gybelîn,
gladly would-release Gybelin,

Berhtramen und Gaudîn,
Berhtram and Gaudin,

374,5 mit andern ir mâgen,
with other their kinsmen,

die dâ gevangen lâgen.
who there captured lay.

daz wart versuochet sêre.
that was tried sorely.

nu sult ir Terramêre
now shall you Terramer

danken, daz er ê beriet
thank, that he before provided

374,10 sîniu kint mit wer die niemen schiet
his children with defense which no-one parted

von in mit den swerten.
from them with the swords.

die selben ouch dâ gerten
the same also there desired

râche um daz in was getân.
vengeance for what to-them was done.

Arofel der Persân
Arofel the Persian

374,15 was in ûf Alitschanz erslagn.
was to-them on Alitschanz slain.

die sîne begunden in dâ klagn
the his-ones began him there to-lament

mit den ekkn und mit dem dône.
with the edges and with the tune.

ir krîe Samargône
their cry Samargone

in manegem poynder wart geschrît:
in many-a charge was cried:

Arofels wart in dem strît 374,20
of-Arofèl was in the battle

von den sînen manlîch gedâht,
by the his-ones manly thought,

der si selbe dicke hête brâht
who them himself often had brought

an die vînde werdeclîche.
on the enemies worthily.

ûz Arofels rîche
out-of Arofel's realm

vil fürsten dâ mit kreften sint: 374,25
many princes there with strength are:

sîn selbes darbten doch diu kint,
of-him self lacked yet the children,

wand er ir ander vater was.
for he their second father was.

weder starp noch genas
neither died nor survived

getriwer künec nie dehein,
faithful king never any,

den tages lieht ie überschein.
whom day's light ever over-shone.

Dâ wart manec helm versniten 375,1
There was many-a helm cut

von den die manlîche striten
by those who manly fought

bî Terramêrs kinden.
by Terramer's children.

sölch suochen unde vinden
such seeking and finding

375,5 was dâ ze bêder sît genuoc:
was there on both sides enough:

ein poynder stach, der ander sluoc.
a charge thrust, the other struck.

turkople wurdens ouch enein,
turcopoles became-of-it also agreed,

von in wart manec slehter zein
by them was many-a smooth shaft

durch den schuz unz an den phîl gezogn:
through the shot until to the arrowhead drawn:

375,10 da begunden snateren die bogn
there began to-chatter the bows

sô die storche im neste.
as the storks in-the nest.

dô der strît scharpf und veste
when the battle sharp and firm

was ûf dem plâne,
was on the meadow,

Poydjus von Griffâne
Poydjus of Griffane

375,15 dâ kom mit hers flüete
there came with host's flood

(die getouften got behüete!),
(the baptized God guard!),

der ouch künec dâ ze Frîende was:
who also king there at Friende was:

Tasmê, Trîande und Kaukasas
Tasme, Triande and Kaukasas

dienden sîner hende gar.
served his hand wholly.

sus kom mit krefteclîcher schar 375,20
thus came with mighty company

Terramêrs tohter sun.
Terramer's daughter's son.

sînen vanen fuorte Tedalûn,
his banner led Tedalun,

der burgrâve von Tasmê.
the burgrave of Tasme.

über den walt Lignalôê
over the forest Lignaloe

der selbe ouch forstmeister was: 375,25
the same also forest-master was:

er hete den slac an Kaukasas,
he had the felling on Kaukasas,

den zehndn an manger wilden habe.
the tenth on many-a wild goods.

swaz dâ goldes wart gezerret abe
whatever there of-gold was torn off

von der grîfen füezen,
from the griffins' feet,

daz kund im armuot büezen.
that could to-him poverty amend.

Dâ wart von Poydjuses schar 376,1
There was by Poydjus's company

daz velt wol überliuhtet gar
the field well over-lit wholly

von manegem pfellel tiure:
by many-a silk costly:

von sunnen noch ûz fiure
from sun nor out-of fire

dorfte grœzer blic niht gên. 376,5
needed greater gleam not go.

man moht an sîme her verstên
one could on his host understand

daz er dâ heime rîcheit phlac,
that he there at-home of-wealth took-care,

wand in grôze kosten ringe wac,
for him great costs lightly weighed,

Poydjus. der selbe truoc
Poydjus. the same bore

376,10 an sîme lîbe des genuoc,
on his body of-that enough,

daz ich der kost niht tar gesagen:
that I of-the cost not dare tell:

sus kan mîn armuot verzagen.
thus can my poverty despair.

ob ers geruocht, ein rîcher munt
if he-it deigned, a rich mouth

solt iu diz mære machen kunt,
should to-you this tale make known,

376,15 wie sunder was gezieret,
how separately was adorned,

mit kost al überwieret,
with cost all over-set,

daz dach ob sîme harnasch.
the roof above his armor.

ander kost dâ bî derlasch.
other cost there by was-extinguished.

Poydjus's Wealth

XXIV

Poydjus's helm is cut from anthrax, and his people's wealth would sink their horses if worn. Thesereiz's host, who once spared Gyburc at Orange, fights in his company, and Bertram's and Gybert's men receive them. Tedalun bears the beast ecidemon on the banner. The poet praises Vivianz, bright before God, whose death the Christians avenge, and Mile, whom Terramer slew.

von den füezen unz anz houbet,
from the feet until to-the head,

niemen mirz geloubet, 376,20
no-one me-it believes,

waz er hete an sîme lîbe.
what he had on his body.

ob im von guotem wîbe
if to-him from good woman

solh zimierde wart gesant,
such crest was sent,

ob daz gediende niht sîn hant,
if that served not his hand,

het er ir minne künde, 376,25
had he of-her love knowledge,

dâ mite erwarb er sünde,
there with won he sin,

tet er durh si niht sölhe tât
did he for her not such deed

die man noch für hôhez ellen hât.
which one still for high valor holds.

Poydjus der künec unervorht,
Poydjus the king unafraid,

sîn helm mit listen was geworht
his helm with cunning was wrought

377,1 ûz dem steine antraxe.
out-of the stone anthrax.

grôz koste ringe wac se,
great cost lightly weighed it,

sîn volc hôchmüetic unde gogel.
his people high-spirited and merry.

nu seht, ob funde ein antvogel
now see, if should-find a wild-duck

377,5 ze trinken in dem Bodemsê,
to drink in the Lake-of-Constance,

trünkern gar, daz tæt im wê.
should-drink-it wholly, that would-do to-him woe.

sus prüeve ich Poydjuses her,
thus reckon I Poydjus's host,

daz dar kom über daz fünfte mer:
which thither came over the fifth sea:

soltens alle ir rîcheit
should-they all their wealth

377,10 hân gelegt an ir wâpenkleit,
have laid on their arms-clothes,

sô möhten d'ors si niht getragn.
so might the-horses them not carry.

von Frîende hœr ich sagn,
of Friende hear I say,

swaz man in dem lande
whatever one in the land

der wazzer bekande,
of-the waters knew,

377,15 die dâ vliezent von Kaukasas,
which there flow from Kaukasas,

ieslîchez gefurrieret was
each lined was

mit edelen steinen maneger slaht:
with noble stones of-many kinds:

eteslîcher tagete bî der naht
some dawned by the night

mit sîme liehte daz er gap.
with its light which it gave.

maneger rîcheit urhap 377,20
of-many-a wealth beginning

het der künec von Griffâne:
had the king of Griffane:

guldîne muntâne
golden mountains

im dienden. stüende sô mîn muot,
to-him served. stood so my spirit,

ich möht ein loubînen huot
I might a leafy hat

wol erwerben inme Spehtshart, 377,25
well win in-the Spessart,

so der meie wære rehte bewart
when the May were rightly guarded

mit touwe und süezem lufte:
with dew and sweet air:

wer jæh mir des ze gufte?
who would-declare to-me of-that for boasting?

iht mêr daz Poydjusen wac,
anything more that to-Poydjus weighed,

swenne er grôzer koste phlac.
whenever he great cost practiced.

Ob sich der walt nu swende 378,1
If itself the forest now should-vanish

von den von Frîende,
from those of Friende,

von tjost ûf dem plâne,
from joust on the meadow,

und von den von Griffâne,
and from those of Griffane,

des hât ir rîcheit êre.
of-that has their wealth honor.

in truoc wol vor die lêre
them bore well before the teaching

grôz her daz zuo zin was geschart,
great host which thereto to-them was ranked,

vor aller zageheite bewart.
from all cowardice guarded.

die Gyburge ze Oransche vride
those-who to-Gyburc at Orange peace

gâbn, die ruorten hie diu lide:
gave, they stirred here the limbs:

si dûhte, ir strît hête prîs
them seemed, their battle had prize

nu gein der kumft des markîs.
now against the coming of-the marquis.

daz was Thesereizes her,
that was Thesereiz's host,

der ie gein schanden was ze wer,
who ever against disgraces was for defense,

unt dem diu minne nam den lîp.
and from-whom the love took the body.

noch solten gerne guotiu wîp
still should gladly good women

mit triwen âne wenken
with faithfulness without wavering

sîner werdekeit gedenken,
of-his worthiness think,

sît daz sîn herze nie verdrôz,
since that his heart never wearied,

sîn dienest wær gein in sô grôz, 378,20
his service were toward them so great,

daz vor andern sînn genôzen
that before other his peers

was gezilt und gestôzen
was aimed and thrust

sîn hôher prîs sô verre für:
his high prize so far forth:

bî sîner zît an lobes kür
by his time in praise's choice

man jach dem stolzen Latriseten 378,25
one declared to-the proud Latriset

daz er gewünne nie geweten
that he should-gain never yoke-mate

der im sô geziehen möhte
who to-him so pull might

dazz gein sînem prîse iht töhte.
that-it against his prize anything availed.

er vlôs ouch wîbe hulde
he lost also women's goodwill

nie mit valschlîcher schulde.
never with false guilt.

Durch rîcheit unde ouch sus durch ruom 379,1
For wealth and also thus for fame

ûz mangem wîten herzentuom
out-of many-a wide duchy

und ouch von maneger marke
and also from many-a march

Poydjus der starke
Poydjus the strong

manegen fürsten fuorte, 379,5
many-a prince led,

der her die hende ruorte
whose host the hands stirred

dô si kômen in den strît;
when they came into the battle;

des in nu widerwehsel gît
of-which them now exchange gives

Bertram und Gybert:
Bertram and Gybert:

379,10 die sint noch strîtes ungewert.
they are still of-battle ungranted.

hurtâ, waz in nu strîtes kumt!
hurta, what to-them now of-battle comes!

wie ze bêder sît dâ wart gevrumt
how on both sides there was made

trunzûne sprîzen in den luft,
truncheons splinter into the air,

durh wîbe lôn od sus durch guft!
for women's reward or thus for pride!

379,15 daz tâten tjostiure.
that did jousters.

weder vert noch hiure,
neither last-year nor this-year,

wil ich der wârheite jehen,
will I of-the truth declare,

sone hân ich ninder gesehen
so have I nowhere seen

sô manegen gezimierten man
so many-a crested man

379,20 sô guote rîterschaft getân.
so good knighthood done.

war umbe solt ich des verzagn?
what for should I of-that despair?

ich getarz als wol gesagn,
I dare-it as well tell,

sô si den strît getorsten tuon.
as they the battle dared do.

der goldes rîche Tedaluon,
the of-gold rich Tedaluon,

von Lignalôê der fôrehtier, 379,25
of Lignaloe the forester,

fuorte ecidemôn daz tier,
bore ecidemon the beast,

des Feyrafîz ze wâppen pflac:
which Feyrafiz as arms practiced:

in Poydjus vanen daz lac,
in Poydjus's banner that lay,

mit grôzer koste dar gesniten.
with great cost there cut.

der vane mit hurte kom geriten
the banner with onset came ridden

in des küenen Tedalûnes hant. 380,1
in the bold Tedalun's hand.

der warp nâch Gyburge umbe pfant,
he strove after Gyburc for pledge,

diu sînes hêrren muome was.
who of-his lord aunt was.

ze bêder sît wart ûfez gras
on both sides was onto-the grass

manec rîter dâ gevellet. 380,5
many-a knight there felled.

die schar hânt sich gesellet
the companies have themselves joined

mit hazze zein ander.
with hatred to-one another.

swer daz suocht, daz vander,
whoever that sought, that found-he,

ein puneiz slac, der ander stich.
a charge blow, the other thrust.

nâch Vivîanze wart gerich
after Vivianz was vengeance

von dem kristen her erzeiget,
by the Christian host shown,

der nimmer sô geveiget
who never so doomed

daz sîn lop müg ersterben.
that his praise may die.

swer sælde welle erwerben,
whoever fortune will win,

der sol dich êren, Vivîanz.
he shall thee honor, Vivianz.

vor got du bist lieht unde glanz.
before God thou art bright and radiant.

wie mich dîn tôt erbarmet,
how me thy death moves-to-pity,

swie doch nimer erwarmet
however yet never warms

dîn sêle in hellefiure!
thy soul in hell-fire!

sölh kumber ist dir tiure,
such affliction is to-thee rare,

du sun sîner swester,
thou son of-his sister,

Berhtrams von Berbester,
of-Berhtram of Berbester,

und des manlîchen Gybert.
and of-the manly Gybert.

des wart erklenget manec swert
of-that was made-ring many-a sword

von ir zweier massenîe.
by of-them two household.

hêrre und âmîe
lord and sweetheart

sölhes strîtes solten lônen,
such battle should reward,

op si triwe kunden schônen,
if they faithfulness could spare,

der dâ ze bêder sît geschach,
which there on both sides happened,

als uns diz mære wider jach.
as to-us this tale back declared.

Dâ lac vil sper zebrochen. 381,1
There lay many spears broken.

dâ wart ouch wol gerochen
there was also well avenged

an der selben wîle
at the same while

der clâre süeze Mîle
the bright sweet Mile

al nâch der heiden herzesêr, 381,5
all after the heathens' heart-sore,

den der hôhe rîche Terramêr
whom the high rich Terramer

mit der tjoste sluoc ûf Alyschans:
with the joust slew on Alyschans:

der was muomen sun Vivîans.
he was aunt's son of-Vivians.

Aropatin and Heimrich

XXV

Aropatin of Ganfassasche, a rook on his banner, charges with trumpets, drums, and flutes, and with the kings of Scandinavia and Ascalon falls on Heimrich of Narbonne. His men, who fight for women's reward as Heimrich counseled, receive Aropatin, Glorion, and Matribleiz and press them hard. The poet says the fighting outweighed Etzel's and Ermanaric's, mocks Witege's eighteen thousand helms, and says love and war both need wits.

si begiengen an den liuten,
they practiced on the people,

ob si stocke solten riuten,
if they stumps should clear,

sine dorften harter houwen niht.
they needed harder hew not.

den getouften henden man des giht,
to-the baptized hands one of-that declares,

von Frîende ab den gesten
from Friende off the guests

ir tiweren pfellel glesten
their costly silks' gleaming

manec swertes ekke aldâ begôz,
many-a sword's edge there watered,

dazz pluot über die blicke flôz:
that-the blood over the gleams flowed:

si wurdn almeistic rôt gevar.
they became almost red colored.

der getouften schûr nu kom mit schar,
the baptized's storm now came with company,

von Ganfassâsche Aropatîn.
of Ganfassasche Aropatin.

swaz junge und alt dâ mohten sîn 381,20
whatever young and old there might be

durh got und durh der wîbe lôn
for God and for the women's reward

und durh des sun von Narbôn,
and for the son of Narbonne,

wol hete Aropatîn gestritn
well would-have Aropatin fought

(mit sölher kraft er kom geritn)
(with such strength he came ridden)

al des marcrâven helfe. 381,25
all the margrave's help.

nu müeze in als Welfe,
now may him as Welf,

dô der Tüwingen ervaht,
when he Tübingen fought-out,

gelingen aller sîner maht:
succeed all his might:

sô scheit er dannen âne sige.
so parted he thence without victory.

alsus ich sîn mit wunsche phlige.
thus I of-him with wish take-care.

Ich wæne, alsus ergêt ez doch. 382,1
I think, thus goes it yet.

in sînem vanen stuont ein roch:
in his banner stood a rook:

daz bedûte sînen wîten grif,
that signified his wide grasp,

daz im diu erde unt diu schif
that to-him the earth and the ships

volleclîche gâben rîchen zins. 382,5
fully gave rich tribute.

zwischen Gêôn und Poynzaclîns
between Geon and Poynzaclins

diu lant wârn dem jungen
the lands were to-the young-one

dienstlîch gar betwungen;
service-like wholly constrained;

dar zuo sîn houbet krône
there to his head crown

382,10 vor manegem fürsten schône
before many-a prince fairly

von arde in Ganfassâsche truoc:
by nature in Ganfassasche bore:

des het er rîter dâ genuoc.
of-that had he knights there enough.

waz busîn vor im erklanc!
what trumpets before him resounded!

wie man vor im ûf mit künste swanc
how one before him up with skill swung

382,15 manec rotumbes mit zunel!
many-a drum with tongue!

dâ wârn ouch floytierre hel.
there were also flute-players loud.

sîn schar, des künec Aropatîn,
his company, of-the king Aropatin,

mit koste geflôret muoste sîn
with cost flowered must be

mit maneger sunderzierde.
with many-a separate-adornment.

382,20 in selben kondewierde
him self conducted

sîn manlîch herze und des gedanc,
his manly heart and its thought,

daz er nâch wîbe gruoze ranc:
that he after women's greeting wrestled:

er fuor ir lône ouch wol gelîch.
he went to-their reward also well alike.

nu was der alde Heimrîch
now was the old Heimrich

mit sîner krefteclîchen schar 382,25
with his mighty company

strîts dannoch erlâzen gar.
of-battle still released wholly.

Mit Aropatîne was aldâ
With Aropatin was there

der künec von Scandinâvîâ
the king of Scandinavia

und der künec von Ascalôn.
and the king of Ascalon.

die kômn an den von Narbôn,
they came on him of Narbonne,

des küenen marcrâven vatr. 383,1
the bold margrave's father.

die sîne gein dem strîte batr,
the his-ones toward the battle bade-he,

als ers ê dicke het ermant.
as he-them before often had reminded.

dâ von wart harnasch zetrant
there from was armor rent

mit tjost von maneger lanzen: 383,5
with joust from many-a lance:

vil schilde der ganzen
many shields of-the whole-ones

wurden dâ zerfüeret,
were there torn-apart,

manec helm alsô gerüeret
many-a helm so touched

daz diu swert derdurch klungen.
that the swords there-through rang.

383,10 Aropatîn den jungen
Aropatin the young

sus enpfiengen die von Narbôn,
thus received those of Narbonne,

und den stolzen künec Glorîôn,
and the proud king Glorion,

und den stæten Matribleiz,
and the steadfast Matribleiz,

mit manegem starken puneiz.
with many-a strong charge.

383,15 den von Ganfassâsche
to-him of Ganfassasche

Mahmeten karrâsche
Mahmet's cart

mac lîhte sîn ze verre:
may easily be too far:

seht ob in daz iht werre.
see if him that anything trouble.

dâ streich der alte Heimrîch
there stroked the old Heimrich

383,20 mit swerten den wiserîch,
with swords the young-shoot,

der im dicke was gewerbet.
which to-him often was striven-for.

der alte hete gerbet
the old-one had made-heir

sîne süne mit sölhen urborn:
his sons with such revenues:

sît er ze sune het erkorn
since he as son had chosen

383,25 einen andern denn die sîne,
an other than the his-ones,

des gâben unde nâmen pîne
of-that gave and took pain

in andern landen sîniu kint.
in other lands his children.

die von Ganfassâsche sint
those of Ganfassasche are

in kumber mit der mêrren kraft
in affliction with the greater strength

von Heimrîches geselleschaft.
of Heimrich's company.

Seht ob der rîche Aropatîn 384,1
See if the rich Aropatin

strîts gewert müge sîn.
of-battle granted may be.

er het ouch dâ besunder
he had also there separately

mit der zal der storje ein wunder.
with the number of-the troop a wonder.

sîn hôhez herze in lêrte 384,5
his high heart him taught

daz er selbe kêrte
that he himself turned

immer swâ diu herte was.
ever wherever the hardship was.

blanke bluomen und daz grüene gras
white flowers and the green grass

wurden rôt von sîner slâ.
became red from his track.

daz her ûz Scandinâvîâ 384,10
the host out-of Scandinavia

wol streit, und daz von Ascalôn.
well fought, and that of Ascalon.

man hôrt dâ manegen kraches dôn,
one heard there many-a crash's tune,

swa der grôze puneiz ergienc.
wherever the great charge happened.

swem dâ schilt ze halse hienc,
to-whom there shield to neck hung,

384,15 der in ze rehte fuorte
who it by right bore

durh den stoup unz in die huorte,
through the dust until into the onset,

schildes ampt er tet sîn reht.
shield's office he did its right.

ûf Alischanz dem velde sleht
on Alischanz the field level

sölh strît mit swerten geschach,
such battle with swords happened,

384,20 swaz man von Etzeln ie gesprach,
whatever one of Etzel ever spoke,

und ouch von Ermenrîche,
and also of Ermanaric,

ir strît wac ungelîche.
their battle weighed unequally.

ich hœr von Witegen dicke sagn
I hear of Witege often say

daz er eins tages habe durchslagn
that he one day have struck-through

384,25 ahtzehen tûsnt, als einen swamp,
eighteen thousand, as a sponge,

helme. der als manec lamp
helms. who as many-a lamb

gebunden für in trüege,
bound before him should-bear,

ob ers eins tages erslüege,
if he-them one day should-slay,

sô wær sîn strît harte snel,
so would-be his battle very quick,

ob halt beschoren wærn ir vel.
if even shorn were their skin.

Man sol dem strîte tuon sîn reht: 385,1
One shall to-the battle do its right:

dâ von diu mære werdent sleht.
there from the tales become plain.

wan urliuge und minne
for war and love

bedurfen beidiu sinne.
need both wits.

einz hât semfte unde leit, 385,5
one has ease and sorrow,

daz ander gar unsemftekeit.
the other wholly unease.

swer wîbe lôn ze reht erholt,
whoever women's reward by right earns,

eteswenne er grôzen kumber dolt:
sometimes he great affliction suffers:

ob denne der minne süeze
if then the love's sweetness

sölhen kumber büeze, 385,10
such affliction amend,

swâ der site wirt begangen,
wherever the manner becomes practiced,

dâ ist der minne solt enphangen.
there is the love's pay received.

Heimrîch der alde fürste
Heimrich the old prince

wol was in der getürste
well was in the daring

daz er den jungen minne riet. 385,15
that he to-the young love counseled.

mit sîme râte nie geschiet
with his counsel never parted

von wîbe gruoze werder man.
from women's greeting worthy man.

von den sînen wartz dâ sô getân,
by the his-ones became-it there so done,

solt ez ein keiser gelten,
should it an emperor pay,

385,20 sölhe soldier funde er selten,
such soldiers would-find he seldom,

die sich schüben in sô starke nôt
who themselves shoved into so strong distress

werlîche an der wîbe gebot.
warlike at the women's command.

dâ was gemezzen niht der vride.
there was measured not the peace.

die sîne'rswungen wol diu lide
the his-ones-swung well the limbs

385,25 gein maneger krî die man dâ schrei.
toward many-a cry which one there cried.

von Kizzingen ein turnei
of Kitzingen a tournament

het unhôhe aldâ gewegn:
had lightly there weighed:

man muoses dort anders pflegn
one must-it there otherwise practice

mit den ekken bluotvar.
with the edges blood-colored.

ze bêder sît die helde gar
on both sides the heroes wholly

386,1 âne gevaterschaft dâ sint.
without godfathership there are.

Josweiz and Poydwiz

XXVI

Josweiz, son of white Matusales and a Moorish mother, comes as one of five kings under a white swan with black beak and feet, angry that six companies fought before him. His host rescues his kinsman Ehmereiz and Tybalt from the French and Rennewart, whose pole has felled heathens in heaps and whose name the French now cry. Poydwiz of Raabs, angry to be sent after seven companies, rides in like a storm on the stalks, a jouster whose spears have wasted whole forests.

nu was Matusaleses kint,
now was Matusales's child,

der minne gerende Josweiz,
the of-love desiring Josweiz,

zorse komn. des puneiz
on-horse come. whose charge

was von maneger storje starc. 386,5
was from many-a troop strong.

beidiu heide unde sarc
both heath and coffin

wart getrett al gelîche.
was trodden all alike.

Matusales der rîche.
Matusales the rich.

mit kraft ûz sande sînen sun
with strength out sent his son

von Hippipotiticûn. 386,10
of Hippipotiticun.

ein fürste fuorte sînen vanen:
a prince led his banner:

dar inne sah man einen swanen,
there in saw one a swan,

gesniten mit kosteclîchem vlîz.
cut with costly diligence.

der swan was anderswâ al wîz,
the swan was elsewhere all white,

386,15 wan snabel und füeze rabenvar;
except beak and feet raven-colored;

durh daz, Matusales was gar
for that, Matusales was wholly

an velle unde an hâre blanc:
in skin and in hair white:

ein Mœrinne ûz Jetakranc
a Mooress out-of Jetakranc

Josweiz bî im gebar.
Josweiz by him bore.

386,20 der swan ist zweier slahte gevar:
the swan is of-two kinds colored:

alsô was ouch Josweizes art:
so was also Josweiz's nature:

durch daz die selben hervart
for that the same campaign

Josweizes dern swanen truoc,
of-Josweiz which-the swan bore,

und landes hêrrn mit im genuoc
and lands' lords with him enough

386,25 mit dem wâpen was bevangen.
with the arms were enclosed.

ze halse gehangen
to neck hung

zwelf fürsten sîne schilte
twelve princes his shields

truogen durch sîn milte,
bore for his generosity,

durch rîchtuom und durch edelkeit.
for wealth and for nobility.

selbe fümfte künege er dâ zuo reit.
himself fifth of-kings he there to rode.

Josweiz von Amatiste, 387,1
Josweiz of Amatiste,

mit kostlîchem liste
with costly cunning

was sîn schilt, sîn helm, sîn kursît.
was his shield, his helm, his surcoat.

diz mære giht daz gein dem strît
this tale declares that toward the battle

in twunge hôhiu minne. 387,5
him should-constrain high love.

het ich nu die sinne,
had I now the wits,

daz ich sîner clârheit, sîner jugent,
that I of-his brightness, of-his youth,

sîner milte und ander sîner tugent
of-his generosity and other his virtue

gespræche ir reht, sît âne vâr
should-speak their right, since without peril

sô stuonden sîner zîte jâr 387,10
so stood of-his time years

daz sîn herze was genendec!
that his heart was bold!

sîne schar ouch wârn unbendec:
his companies also were untamed:

ez wart sô sêr von in gestrebt.
it was so sorely by them striven.

ir decheiner doch bî mir nu lebt,
of-them none yet by me now lives,

dem ichz ze liebe kôse. 387,15
to-whom I-it for love should-tell.

der künec von Valpinôse
the king of Valpinose

mit den sînen ûz der schar dâ brach.
with the his-ones out-of the company there broke.

nâch dem künege man dô varen sach
after the king one then fare saw

von Janfûse Korsant.
of Janfuse Korsant.

387,20 nâch dem künec fuor al zehant
after the king went all at-once

von Nourîente Rubbûâl.
of Nouriente Rubbual.

nâch dem künege fuor dô sunder twâl
after the king went then without delay

der stolze künec Pohereiz
the proud king Pohereiz

mit krefteclîchem puneiz:
with mighty charge:

387,25 der was von Ethnîse
he was of Ethnise

und warp dâ wol nâch prîse.
and strove there well after prize.

dar nâch fuor dô Josweizes schar,
there after went then Josweiz's company,

al die sîn mit swerten bar:
all the his-ones with swords bare:

sît die tjoste wârn von in verlegn,
since the jousts were by them laid-aside,

der sper wolt ir decheiner phlegn.
of-the spears would of-them none take-care.

388,1 Josweizen müete sêre
Josweiz troubled sorely

daz er Terramêre
that he Terramer

gevolget hete, daz sehs schar
followed had, that six companies

vor im gestriten hêten gar.
before him fought had wholly.

mit zorne er fuor bî sînem vanen: 388,5
with wrath he went by his banner:

ob im man sah den tiweren swanen
above him one saw the costly swan

blicken wîz sô den snê.
gleam white as the snow.

er kêrte dâ Trohazzabê
he turned where Trohazzabe

ob Ehmereize was verladn.
above Ehmereiz was overladen.

dâ heten ungefüegen schadn 388,10
there had monstrous harm

die stolzen Franzoyse
the proud Frenchmen

gein Tybalde dem Arâboyse
against Tybalt the Arab

und gein Ehmereize begangen.
and against Ehmereiz committed.

Rennewart mit sîner stangen
Rennewart with his pole

sich selben het ergetzet, 388,15
himself self had compensated,

daz er dicke was geletzet
that he often was bereft

manger wirde in Francrîche.
of-many-a dignity in France.

er tet wol dem gelîche
he did well to-that alike

daz er der heiden hête haz.
that he of-the heathens had hatred.

swer im dâ zorse vor gesaz, 388,20
whoever to-him there on-horse before sat,

zeime hûfen er den sluoc.
into-a heap he him struck.

da beleip der heidenschaft genuoc
there remained of-the heathendom enough

tôt von Rennewartes hant.
dead by Rennewart's hand.

er warp niht anders umbe phant:
he strove not otherwise for pledge:

388,25 Berhtram was im sippe niht.
Berhtram was to-him kin not.

Rennewarten man dort siht
Rennewart one there sees

vor sînen schargenôzen.
before his company-peers.

mit starken slegen grôzen
with strong blows great

Franzoyser wurdn ouch niht gespart.
Frenchmen were also not spared.

si begunden schrîen Rennewart,
they began to-cry Rennewart,

389,1 si wolden fristen gerne ir lebn.
they would preserve gladly their life.

daz herzeichen was in gegebn,
the war-cry was to-them given,

dô si der markîs scharte
when them the marquis ranked

und des rîches vanen bewarte.
and the realm's banner guarded.

389,5 Franzoysen wart dâ kumber kunt.
to-Frenchmen became there affliction known.

wærens über Pitît punt
were-they over Pitit Punt

mit gemache heim gevarn,
with comfort home fared,

sone wærn si mit sô manegen scharn
so would-be they with so many companies

sô ungefuoge niht getrett.
so monstrously not trodden.

dâ wart Ehmereiz errett, 389,10
there was Ehmereiz rescued,

und rois Tybalt von Cler,
and king Tybalt of Cler,

von des stolzen Josweizes her.
by the proud Josweiz's host.

der soltz ouch pillîche tuon:
he should-it also rightly do:

Josweizes pasen tohter suon
Josweiz's aunt's daughter's son

was der künec Ehmereiz. 389,15
was the king Ehmereiz.

sîns rîchen mâges puneiz
of-his rich kinsman's charge

was im dâ ze staten komn.
was to-him there to avail come.

dâ wart gegeben und genomn
there was given and taken

donrs hurte als diu wolken rîz.
thunder's onset as the clouds tore.

nu kom von Raabs Poydwîz, 389,20
now came of Raabs Poydwiz,

der manlîch und der hôh gemuot:
the manly-one and the high spirited:

der fuorte manegen rîter guot.
he led many-a knight good.

wir hœren von sîm ellen jehen,
we hear of his valor declare,

er wart bî vînden nie gesehen,
he was by enemies never seen,

389,25 ern schiede ouch dan geprîset.
unless-he parted also thence praised.

manec tjost in hete gewîset
many-a joust him had directed

dâ sîn volliu hant wart lære.
where his full hand became empty.

zeinem forstære
as-a forester

kür ich ungerne sîne hant,
would-choose I unwillingly his hand,

sît der walt sô vor im verswant.
since the forest so before him vanished.

390,1 Man tuot von sînen tjosten kunt,
One makes of his jousts known,

der Swarzwalt und Virgunt
the Black-Forest and Virgunt

müesen dâ von œde lign.
must there from waste lie.

daz liegen solt ich hân verswign,
the lying should I have kept-silent,

390,5 beginnt etslîcher sprechen:
begins some-one to-speak:

wan lât der selbe brechen
why-not lets the same break

den walt einen andern man?
the forest an other man?

und habe er verre dort hin dan.
and have he far there away thence.

der künic Poydwîz von Raabs,
the king Poydwiz of Raabs,

390,10 weder stapfes noch drabs
neither of-step nor of-trot

kom er gevarn in den strît:
came he faring into the battle:

er fuor rehte als man dâ gît
he went right as one there gives

den orsen wunden mit den sporn.
to-the horses wounds with the spurs.

in was ûf Terramêren zorn,
to-him was on Terramer wrathful,

daz er in nâch siben scharn 390,15
that he him after seven companies

alrêrst nâch rîterschaft hiez varn.
first-of-all after knighthood bade fare.

er sprach 'het ich nie strît getân,
he spoke 'had I never battle done,

ich füer sô manegen werden man
I would-lead so many-a worthy man

ûz anderr künege rîchen,
out-of other kings' realms,

daz ich pillîchen 390,20
that I rightly

den buhurt solte hân erhabn.
the buhurt should have raised.

man darf mich harte wênic labn
one needs me very little refresh

nâch maneger quatschiure,
after many-a smashing,

die ich durh âventiure
which I for adventure

in dem puneiz solte hân genomn. 390,25
in the charge should have taken.

ich bin ze disem strîte komn
I am to this battle come

sô der schûr an die halme.'
as the storm to the stalks.'

von pusînen galme
from trumpets' blare

was vor im grôz gesnarren.
was before him great snarling.

dane kunde niht geharren
there could not wait

391,1 sîn vane mit grôzem kundewiers
his banner with great leading-on

kom gevarn ze triviers
came faring to crosswise

mit ungefüeger hers kraft
with monstrous host's strength

beneben an die rîterschaft,
alongside on the knighthood,

391,5 dâ mit strîte ê sêre was gekrîet
where with battle before sorely was cried

und noch enwederthalp geswîet.
and still on-neither-side ceased.

Marlanz Comes

XXVII

Poydwiz's three hosts drive Christians and heathens together into one pen, and the battle rolls like waves of the sea. The heathens multiply as if their host had borne young. Marlanz of Jericop arrives in splendor, as fair as Otto came after his consecration in Rome, waiting until those before him have hewn the way. Margot of Pozzidant rides in on a mare covered in iron and silk.

dâ was versperret niht diu biunt:
there was locked not the enclosure:

dâ wart der vîent und der vriunt
there was the enemy and the friend

mit volleclîcher huorte,
with full onset,

dâ Poydwîz in ruorte,
where Poydwiz them stirred,

vast ûf ein ander geschobn
firmly onto one another shoved

und manec puneiz enzwei geklobn.
and many-a charge in-two cloven.

dâ nam von Poydwîzes druc
there took from Poydwiz's thrust

al daz her sô grôzen ruc,
all the host so great jolt,

daz die kristen und die heiden gar
that the Christians and the heathens wholly

gedigen alle zeiner schar,
came all into-one company,

swaz ir dâ was ze bêder sît,
whatever of-them there was on both sides,

die wâppen truogen ime strît,
who arms bore in-the battle,

swaz man der dâ wesse,
whatever one of-them there knew,

als obs in einer presse
as if-they in a press

zesamne wærn getwungen,
together were forced,

die alte mit den jungen,
the old with the young,

rîch und arme über al.
rich and poor over all.

daz was ein wîter nôtstal,
that was a wide pen,

mit swerten verrigelet,
with swords bolted,

manec lebn [wart dâ] übersigelet
many-a life [was there] over-sealed

mit des tôdes hantveste.
with the death's charter.

von strîtes überleste
of battle's over-burden

dâ mohte maneger sprechen.
there could many-a-one speak.

dâ was slahen und stechen
there was striking and thrusting

392,1 und hurteclîchez dringen.
and onsetting pressing.

si kunden sich baz bringen
they could themselves better bring

zein ander denne ichz künne sagn:
to-one another than I-it can tell:

decheinen haz wil ich dem tragn,
no hatred will I to-him bear,

392,5 swerz iu baz nu künde.
whoever-it to-you better now make-known.

seht wie des meres ünde
see how the sea's waves

walgen ûf und ze tal:
roll up and to valley:

sus fuor der strît über al,
thus went the battle over all,

hie ûf slihte, dort ûf lê.
here on level, there on slope.

392,10 si dolten ach unde wê,
they suffered ah and woe,

die mit Poydwîz kômen in den strît,
who with Poydwiz came into the battle,

driu her den man vil prîses gît.
three hosts to-whom one much prize gives.

daz eine der künec Tenabruns
the one the king Tenabruns

brâhte ûz Liwes Nugruns:
brought out-of Liwes Nugruns:

des küneges her von Rankulat 392,15
the king's host of Rankulat

mit swerten hiew dâ manegen phat:
with swords hewed there many-a path:

und diu rîterschaft von Azagouc,
and the knighthood of Azagouc,

daz dritte her, niht râche louc
the third host, not vengeance lied

umb ir hêrrn den künec Rubîuon.
for their lord the king Rubiuon.

waz mugen die kristen liute tuon, 392,20
what may the Christian people do,

sine weren sich al die wîl si lebn?
unless-they defend themselves all the while they live?

got selbe mac in trôst wol gebn.
God himself may to-them comfort well give.

Poydwîz kom in alze vruo:
Poydwiz came to-them all-too early:

ir her nam ab und ninder zuo.
their host took off and nowhere to.

diu kristenheit sich rêrte, 392,25
the Christendom itself shed,

diu heidenschaft sich mêrte
the heathendom itself increased

ûf Alitschanz dem anger.
on Alitschanz the meadow.

ob ie her wart swanger,
if ever host became pregnant,

des möht man jehen der heiden schar:
of-that might one declare to-the heathens' company:

ob einiu de andern niht gebar,
if one the other not bore,
393,1 so ist wunder wanne in kœm diu fluot,
so is wonder whence to-them should-come the flood,
diu sô grôze rîterschaft dâ tuot.
which so great knighthood there does.
der strît begunde vellen
the battle began to-fell
etslîchem sînen gesellen,
to-some his companion,
393,5 disem den hêrren, dem den mâc.
to-this-one the lord, to-that-one the kinsman.
waz hers ze bêder sît dâ lac,
what of-host on both sides there lay,
die von dem strîte töuten!
those-who from the battle died!
wie si den orsen ströuten
how they for-the horses strewed
mit manegem gezimiertem man!
with many-a crested man!
393,10 diu wærns dâ heime wol erlân:
they would-be-of-it there at-home well spared:
dâ sint diu müeden ors vil vrô,
there are the weary horses very glad,
der wirfet undrs ein trucken strô.
to-whom throws-one under-them a dry straw.
waz wunder ors dâ nidr sign!
what of-wonder horses there down sank!
etslîchez wolde ûf fürsten lign,
some would on princes lie,
393,15 etslîchez ûf dem amazûr.
some on the almansur.

Poydwîz was nâchgebûr
Poydwiz was neighbor

dâ worden der kristenheit;
there become of-the Christendom;

mit den man ê doch vaste streit:
with whom one before yet firmly fought:

sîn strît si dorfte lützel müen.
his battle them needed little to-trouble.

nu alrêrst sah manz velt erblüen 393,20
now first-of-all saw one-the field bloom

mit rîterschaft der werden,
with knighthood of-the worthy,

als ob gâhes ûz der erden
as if hastily out-of the earth

wüehs ein krefteclîcher walt,
should-grow a mighty forest,

dar ûf touwec manecvalt
there on dewy manifold

sunder clâre blicke. 393,25
separate bright gleams.

breit lang und dicke
broad long and thick

kom diu schar des künec Marlanz
came the company of-the king Marlanz

von Jericop mit zierde glanz
of Jericop with adornment bright

und mit maneger sunderrotte.
and with many-a separate-troop.

dô der keiser Otte
when the emperor Otto

ze Rôme truoc die krône, 394,1
at Rome bore the crown,

kom er alsô schône
came he so fairly

gevarn nâch sîner wîhe,
faring after his consecration,

mîne volge ich dar zuo lîhe
my assent I there to lend

394,5 daz ich im gihe des wære genuoc.
that I to-him declare of-that were enough.

âvoy wie manegn rîter kluoc
avoy how many-a knight fine

der künec Marlanz brâhte!
the king Marlanz brought!

niht ze sêre er gâhte:
not too sorely he hastened:

in dûhte, er hete wol erbiten
him seemed, he had well awaited

394,10 der die vaste vor im striten:
of-those who firmly before him fought:

wie siz heten überhouwen,
how they-it had over-hewn,

daz wolt er gerne schouwen.
that would he gladly behold.

der zimmerman muoz warten
the carpenter must watch

wie er mit der barten
how he with the broadax

394,15 nâch der ackes müeze snîden:
after the ax must cut:

daz wolt ouch er niht vermîden.
that would also he not avoid.

Poydwîz al anders fuor:
Poydwiz all otherwise went:

er kunde wênic nâch der snuor
he could little after the line

houwen nâch ir marke.
hew after their mark.

ob der getouften sarke 394,20
whether the baptized's coffins

nu mit starken huofslegn
now with strong hoof-blows

iht wol getretet werden megn?
anything well trodden become may?

jâ für wâr, ê daz diu schar
yes for true, before that the company

mit ir poynder voldrucke gar,
with their charge press-through wholly,

des künec Marlanz von Jericop. 394,25
of-the king Marlanz of Jericop.

sîn manheit dâ gediente lop.
his manhood there deserved praise.

unsamfte ich mac der sunnen
ungently I may to-the sun

sô liehtes plickes gunnen,
so bright gleam grant,

alsô dâ heten die sîne
as there had the his-ones

von ir zimierde schîne
from their adornment's shine

ab ir tiuren pfellelmâlen. 395,1
off their costly silk-paintings.

niht langer wolde twâlen
not longer would delay

der künec von Orkeise:
the king of Orkeise:

der bezzerte die reise.
he bettered the expedition.

395,5 daz was Margot von Pozzidant,
that was Margot of Pozzidant,

den man gezimieret vant
whom one adorned found

ein jumenten rîten,
a mare ride,

dar ûf er wolde strîten,
there on he would fight,

mit îserkovertiur verdact.
with iron-covering covered.

395,10 ûf daz îsern was gestract
on the iron was stretched

ein phellel, des ir was ze vil.
a silk, of-which of-them was too much.

der orse muoter man niht wil
the horses' mother one not will

sô hie ze lande zieren:
so here in land adorn:

wir kunnen de ors punieren.
we can the horses charge.

The Horn-Skinned Men

XXVIII

Gorhant's men, on foot, with green horn for skin and steel clubs, beat on helms like carpenters. The Roman princes come to make Terramer answer for Vivianz and Mile if he would wear Rome's crown. The Christians sound six war-cries and rally as Rennewart lays on with his pole. The heathens' captain sits on Brahan as the battle turns toward the fountain where Vivianz lay dead. Over the Larkant, Kanabeus's son has bidden men on pain of the noose to ride beside the gods' carroches, though the gods give them feeble help.

Margot ein künec dar brâhte, 395,15
Margot a king thither brought,

dem daz niht versmâhte.
to-whom that not was-disdainful.

al des her âne ors dâ was:
all whose host without horse there was:

der hiez Gorhant von Ganjas:
he was-called Gorhant of Ganjas:

si wârn ab sneller sus ze fuoz.
they were however swifter thus on foot.

die tâten inme strîte buoz 395,20
they made in-the battle rid

des lebens manegen kristen man.
of-the life many-a Christian man.

niht ander wâpn si mohten hân:
no other weapons they might have:

ir vel was horn in grüenem schîn:
their skin was horn in green shine:

die truogen kolben stähelîn.
they bore clubs of-steel.

395,25 bî dem künege Margotte
with the king Margot

fuor diu hürnîn grôziu rotte:
went the horn-skinned great troop:

der was geschart zuo Marlanz.
he was ranked to Marlanz.

diu schar beleip niht langer ganz.
the company remained not longer whole.

Margot der verre komende dar,
Margot the far coming thither,

er unt die sîn punierten gar,
he and the his-ones charged wholly,

396,1 ê si den puneiz vollen tribn,
before they the charge fully drove,

dâ von daz velt begunde erbibn.
there from the field began to-quake.

nu kumt dem zwickel hie sîn schop,
now comes to-the wedge here its stuffing,

da der künec Marlanz von Jericop
where the king Marlanz of Jericop

396,5 mit hurteclîches poynders kraft
with onrushing charge's strength

sich stacte in die rîterschaft,
himself stuck into the knighthood,

dâ von diu swert erklungen.
there from the swords rang.

was ê dâ vil gedrungen,
was before there much thronged,

doch niwes gedranges phlâgen sie,
yet new thronging practiced they,

396,10 beide dise unde die.
both these and those.

bî rois Margot von Pozidant
with king Margot of Pozidant

streit daz her des künec Gorhant
fought the host of-the king Gorhant

mit den stähelînen kolben.
with the steel clubs.

die virste und die wolben
the ridge-beams and the vaults

begundens ûf die helme legn 396,15
began-they on the helms to-lay

mit starken ungefüegen slegn.
with strong monstrous blows.

ich hete ungerne hiute
I would-have unwillingly today

sölhe zimmerliute:
such carpenters:

ine möht in niht gelônen.
I might them not repay.

vil krîe ûz manegen dônen 396,20
many cries out-of many-a tones

si schriren ûz maneger sprâche.
they cried out-of many-a language.

nu mac die vart hinz Ache
now may the journey to Aachen

mit êren mîden Terramêr.
with honor avoid Terramer.

al meist die rœmschen fürsten hêr
all most the Roman princes lordly

sint gein im komn ûf Alitschanz. 396,25
are against him come on Alitschanz.

si woldn im künden, Vivîanz
they would to-him announce, Vivianz

und der edele Mîle wærn erslagn:
and the noble Mile were slain:

wolt er ze Rôme krône tragn,
would he at Rome crown wear,

sô solt er in daz rihten,
so should he to-them that make-right,

wolt er zir dienste phlihten.
would he to-their service pledge.

397,1 Von den hürnînen schalken
By the horn-skinned knaves

wart mit kolben dâ gewalken
was with clubs there fulled

vil manec werlîch rîter guot.
very many-a warlike knight good.

wie möht ein Bernhartshûser huot
how might a Bernhartshausen hat

397,5 harter ûf ein ander komn?
harder onto one another come?

des twanc si nôt: nu wart vernomn
to-that forced them distress: now was heard

von den kristen liuten über al
from the Christian people over all

sehs herzeichen lût erschal.
six war-cries loud resounded.

ein ir ruof was Narbôn:
one their cry was Narbonne:

397,10 sus hal dâ der ander dôn
thus rang there the second tone

durch koverunge, Brubant:
for recovery, Brubant:

der dritte ruof was benant
the third cry was named

den Franzoysen, Rennewart
to-the French, Rennewart

(harte kleine was der zart
(very little was the tenderness

der gein in dâ begangen was):
which toward him there practiced was):

der vierde ruof was Tandarnas,
the fourth cry was Tandarnas,

Berbester was der fümfte
Berbester was the fifth

gein Marlanzes kümfte:
against Marlanz's coming:

done moht diu schar des markîs
then could the company of-the marquis

vermîden niht decheinen wîs,
avoid not in-any way,

sine schrîten Muntschoye,
unless-they cried Muntschoye,

in gedrange als ein boye
in throng as-if a fetter

von îser wære umb si gesmit.
of iron were about them forged.

dâ wart mit swerten wol gewit.
there was with swords well widened.

die getouften kômen kûme
the baptized came barely

mit den ekken sô ze rûme,
with the edges so to room,

daz si sich samelierten:
that they themselves rallied:

die wol gezimierten
the well crested

ir brücke wârn übr bluotes furt,
their bridges were over blood's ford,

etslîchr ûz Terramêrs geburt.
some-one out-of Terramer's kin.

398,1 Die kristen sint zein ander komn.
The Christians are to-one another come.

was denne, hânt si schaden genomn?
what then, have they harm taken?

si suln ouch schaden erzeigen nuo.
they shall also harm show now.

dâ greif mit sîner stangen zuo
there gripped with his pole to

398,5 mit grôzen slegen Rennewart.
with great blows Rennewart.

die ê sunder wârn geschart,
those-who before apart were ranked,

nu bî ein ander vâhten:
now beside one another fought:

die krî zesamen si brâhten,
the cry together they brought,

und der druc den in brâht Poydwîz.
and the press which to-them brought Poydwiz.

398,10 maneger slahte sunderglîz
of-many-a kind separate-gleam

die kristen müete dicke:
the Christians troubled often:

der heiden pfellel blicke
the heathens' silk gleams

gein sunnen kunde vlokzen.
toward sun could flicker.

der strît begunde tokzen,
the battle began to-totter,

398,15 als ûf dem wâge tuot diu gans.
as on the water does the goose.

dâ muose daz velt Alitschans
there must the field Alitschans

mit bluote betouwen.
with blood bedew.

den hêrren und den vrouwen
to-the lords and to-the ladies

wart dâ wol gedienet beiden.
was there well served both.

der houbtman al der heiden 398,20
the captain of-all the heathens

nu saz ûf Brahâne.
now sat on Brahan.

gein der funtâne,
toward the fountain,

dâ bî Vivîanz lac tôt,
where beside Vivianz lay dead,

des endes sich der strît erbôt.
to-that end itself the battle offered.

nu was diu schar ûz manegem lant 398,25
now was the company out-of many-a land

über daz wazzer Larkant,
over the water Larkant,

und die karrâschen mit den goten.
and the carroches with the gods.

nu hete bî der wide geboten
now had by the noose commanded

des küenen Kanabêus barn,
of-the bold Kanabeus child,

si solden bî den goten varn,
they should beside the gods fare,

die dar zuo wârn geschaffet. 399,1
who there to were appointed.

si wurden des dâ gaffet:
they became of-that there gaped-at:

Mahumet und Kâhuon
Mahumet and Kahun

in mohten kranke helfe tuon,
to-them might feeble help do,

399,5 oder swaz man anderr gote dâ vant,
or whatever one of-other gods there found,

ez wære Apolle od Tervigant.
it were Apolle or Tervigant.

Terramer's Company

XXIX

The poet laments that Terramer now comes, and says he might well keep silent about the flood of his tenth company. Its many troops speak tongues that cannot understand one another. A thousand drums and eight hundred trumpets sound until the deep sea might boil, and his men wear crests of birds and beasts. Ektor of Salenie bears his banner high, and the heathens cry Cordes. The poet bids anyone who can tell of the fighting do so, with his leave.

ôwê daz er nu komen sol,
alas that he now come shall,

durch den diu sorclîchiu dol
through whom the sorrowful suffering

und daz angestlîche lîden
and the anxious enduring

399,10 die getouften niht wil mîden!
the baptized not will avoid!

nu mein ich Terramêren,
now mean I Terramer,

der wol nâch herzesêren
who well after heart's-sores

den getoufften kunde werben.
for-the baptized could strive.

lât sîn: ê daz si ersterben,
let be: before that they die,

399,15 er beginnt ouch schaden von in nemn,
he begins also harm from them to-take,

des jâmert und dar zuo muoz schemn
over-that grieves and there to must be-ashamed

sîn herze unde des gemüete.
his heart and his mind.

von sîner zehenden schar flüete
of his tenth company's flood

möht ich prüevens wol gedagn.
might I of-describing well be-silent.

doch müese er manegen zaphen tragn, 399,20
yet must he many-a tap bear,

der des regens zaher besunder
which the rain's drops separately

verschübe: daz wære ein wunder.
should-stop: that would-be a wonder.

sus aht ich den von Suntîn.
thus reckon I him of Suntin.

man mohte ietwederhalben sîn,
one might on-either-side of-him,

dar zuo vor im und hinden, 399,25
there to before him and behind,

vil grôzer storje vinden,
many great troops find,

mit der sprâche ein ander gar unkunt.
with the language one another wholly unknown.

dâ fuor manec sundermunt,
there went many-a separate-mouth,

der niht wesse waz der ander sprach,
which not knew what the other spoke,

ob er erge od güete jach.
whether he ill or good declared.

Ôwê kristen liute, 400,1
Alas Christian people,

guoter wîbe getriute,
good women's beloved,

und ir gruoz unde ir minne,
and their greeting and their love,

und die hœhern gewinne
and the higher gains

(ich mein die ruowe âne ende),
(I mean the rest without end),

wirt nu von maneger hende
becomes now by many-a hand

ûf iuch gestochen und geslagen!
on you stabbed and struck!

swer triwe hât, der solt iuch klagen.
whoever faithfulness has, he should you lament.

ir sît durh triwe in dirre nôt.
you are through faithfulness in this distress.

sît man von êrste iu strîten bôt,
since one from first to-you fighting offered,

daz was gar um sus gestritn:
that was wholly for nothing fought:

ir habt nu rehtes strîts erbitn.
you have now of-true battle waited-out.

hie kumt der von Tenabrî
here comes he of Tenabri

sînen goten nâhen bî.
to-his gods near by.

dâ wart geworfen und geslagn,
there was thrown and struck,

als ir mich ê hôrtet sagn,
as you me before heard say,

tûsent rottumbes
thousand drums

sleht, ir keiniu krumbes:
straight, of-them none crooked:

und aht hundert pusînen snar
and eight hundred trumpets' blare

man hôrte dâ mit krache gar. 400,20
one heard there with crash wholly.

von dem bibn und von dem schallen
from the quaking and from the din

möht daz tiefe mer erwallen.
might the deep sea boil-up.

ich mac wol sprechen swenn ich wil,
I may well say whenever I will,

von grôzer kost zimierde vil
of great cost crest much

dâ fuor in Terramêres schar: 400,25
there went in Terramer's company:

sô unde sus gevar
so and thus colored

maneger slahte kunder
of-many-a kind creature

nâch al dem merwunder
after all the sea-wonder

hetens ûf gemachet,
had-they up made,

an koste niht verswachet,
in cost not cheapened,

nâch vogelen und nâch tieren. 401,1
after birds and after beasts.

maneger slaht creigieren
of-many-a kind criers

si brâhten mit in in den sturm.
they brought with them in the storm.

der truoc den visch, der den wurm,
this-one bore the fish, that-one the worm,

ûf ir wâppenkleit gesnitn. 401,5
on their arms-dress cut.

diu schar mit kreften kom geritn
the company with strength came ridden

ûf Alitschanz dem plâne.
on Alitschanz the meadow.

al die stein gâmâne
all the stones cameo

sint niht sô manegen wîs gesehen,
are not so many-a way seen,

401,10 sô man zimierde muose jehen,
as one crest must declare,

die de minne gernden truogen.
which the love desiring bore.

die getouftens vil durchsluogen,
the baptized-of-it much struck-through,

swâ nâch ez gemachet was.
wherever after it made was.

nune dorfte der künec von Tandarnas
now needed the king of Tandarnas

401,15 und der pôver schêtîs
and the poor Schetis

niht für gâhen durch ir prîs:
not forward hasten for their prize:

swen ie sîn herze in strît getruoc,
whomever ever his heart into battle bore,

der fund dâ strîtes noch genuoc.
he found there of-battle still enough.

von Salenîe Ektor
of Salenie Ektor

401,20 fuorte den vanen hôhe enbor;
led the banner high aloft;

obs die getouften gerten,
if-it the baptized desired,

daz sin doch mit den swerten
that they-it yet with the swords

mohten niht erlangen.
might not reach.

mit stählînen spangen
with steel clasps

was der schaft vast umbeworht. 401,25
was the shaft firmly bound-around.

Ektor was unervorht,
Ektor was unafraid,

der künec von Salenîe.
the king of Salenie.

Terramêrs krîe
Terramer's cry

begunden rüefen Cordes.
began to-cry Cordes.

ôwê nu des mordes,
alas now of-the murder,

der dâ geschach ze bêder sît, 402,1
which there happened on both sides,

dô der vane kom in den strît,
when the banner came into the battle,

der brâhte den grôzen swertklanc.
which brought the great sword-clang.

dâ was von storjen manec gedranc
there was of troops many-a throng

gein dem strît durch für komn; 402,5
toward the battle through forth come;

die doch heten wol vernomn,
who yet had well heard,

swer die schar dâ bræche,
whoever the company there should-break,

mit der wide daz ræche
with the noose that should-avenge

Terramêrs gerihte.
Terramer's judgment.

402,10 dâ wart des tôdes phlihte
there became the death's share

in dem strîte wol bekant.
in the battle well known.

ze bêder sît si sazten phant
on both sides they set pledges

diu nimmer mugen werden quît
which never may become quit

vor der urteillîchen zît,
before the judgment time,

402,15 dâ al der werlde wirt ir lebn
when to-all the world becomes their life

wider anderstunt gegebn.
back a-second-time given.

dâ was manc sunder grâzen.
there was many-a separate shouting.

swer si kan an gelâzen
whoever them can on let-loose

als ez der rîterschefte gezem,
as it to-the knighthood befits,

402,20 mit mînem urloube er nem
with my leave he take

diz mære an sich mit worten,
this tale on himself with words,

ime gedrenge und an den orten
in-the press and at the edges

oder swâ die muotes rîchen riten,
or wherever the in-spirit rich rode,

wie wurde aldâ von den gestriten
how was there by them fought

nâch wîbe lôn und umb ir gruoz, 402,25
for women's reward and for their greeting,

und wie ein puneiz den andern muoz
and how one charge the other must

nâch koverunge werben.
after recovery seek.

swer nu lieze niht verderben
whoever now should-let not perish

dirre âventiure mære,
of-this adventure's tale,

deste holder ich dem wære.
the more-devoted I to-him would-be.

BOOK IX

Heimrich in the Press

XXX

The poet prays to the holy Gyburc. The heathens charge over the Larkant so hard the carroches and their gods are left alone; Kanliun of Lanzesardin follows his father rather than the gods, and Terramer floods the whole host. The six Christian banners are split apart. The old Heimrich grieves for his kin; his cassock bears a cross of three ends, the letter God gave the Israelites to write in lamb's blood, and he and his men cut such room that many troops would rather turn.

Ei Gîburc, heilic vrouwe, 403,1
Ah Giburc, holy lady,

dîn sælde mir die schouwe
thy fortune to-me the sight

noch füege, daz ich dich gesehe
yet may-arrange, that I thee see

aldâ mîn sêle ruowe jehe.
there-where my soul rest declares.

durh dînen prîs den süezen 403,5
for thy prize the sweet

wil ich noch fürbaz grüezen
will I yet further greet

dich selbn und die dich werten
thee thyself and those-who thee defended

sô daz si wol ernerten
so that they well saved

ir sêl vors tiuvels banden
their soul from-the devil's bonds

mit ellenthaften handen. 403,10
with valiant hands.

waz half nu Heimrîches kint
what helped now Heimrich's children

daz die sibene unde ir vater sint
that the seven and their father are

bî ein ander und diu kristen diet?
beside one another and the Christian people?

der grôze puneiz si doch schiet,
the great charge them yet parted,

und der starke krach der pusîn:
and the strong crash of-the trumpets:

und daz der tûsent muosen sîn,
and that of-them thousand must be,

rotumbes, die man dâ sluoc,
drums, which one there struck,

dâ von erwagete genuoc
there from quaked enough

Larkant daz wazzer und der plân,
Larkant the water and the plain,

als dâ der werde Gâwân
as there the worthy Gawan

an Lît marveile lac:
on Bed marvel lay:

sölhes bibens Alitschanz nu pflac.
such quaking Alitschanz now practiced.

man sah dâ wunder gogelen
one saw there wonder frolic

von tieren und von vogelen
of beasts and of birds

ûf manegem helme veste,
on many-a helm firm,

boum, zwî, unde ir este
tree, twig, and their branches

mit koste geflôrieret.
with cost flowered.

dâ kom gezimieret
there came crested

manec Sarrazîn durh wîbe lôn
many-a Saracen for women's reward

gein des sune von Narbôn
against that-one's son of Narbonne

(die was sneller, die was lazzer) 404,1
(this-one was swifter, that-one was slacker)

über Larkant daz wazzer.
over Larkant the water.

Hurtâ hurtâ hurte!
Hurta hurta hurte!

wie dâ ûz manegem furte
how there out-of many-a ford

manec sunderstorje strebete, 404,5
many-a separate-troop strove,

diu niht volleclîchen lebete
which not fully lived

unz ir der tac bræht die naht!
until to-it the day should-bring the night!

dâ kom diu ellenthaftiu maht.
there came the valiant might.

dô kêrte diu schar grôze
then turned the company great

gein manegem anebôze 404,10
against many-a anvil

den der touf het überdecket.
which the baptism had over-covered.

der puneiz wart volrecket,
the charge was fully-stretched,

von rabbîn mit den sporn getribn,
by gallop with the spurs driven,

daz die karrâschen eine belibn
that the carroches alone remained
und dar ûf die gote hêre.
and there on the gods lordly.
dâ fuor mit Terramêre
there went with Terramer
der künec von Lanzesardîn:
the king of Lanzesardin:
der liez die gote ouch eine sîn.
he let the gods also alone be.
daz was der werde Kanlîûn:
that was the worthy Kanliun:
dem vater volgete dâ der sun
to-the father followed there the son
michel gerner dan den goten.
much more-gladly than the gods.
der den Rîn und den Roten
whoever the Rhine and the Rhone
vierzehen naht verswalte
fourteen nights dammed-up
und den tam dervon schalte,
and the dam therefrom shoved,
dine gæbn sô grôzer güsse niht
they would-give so great floods not
alsô man Terramêre giht:
as one of-Terramer declares:
er umbefluot ot al daz her.
he over-flooded just all the host.
noch was diu kristenheit ze wer
still was the Christendom on defense
sô daz man von ir tât
so that one of their deed
den endes tac ze sprechen hât,
the end's day to speak has,

und dâ zwischen al der jâre zal: 405,1
and there between all the years' number:

sô grôz wart dâ der heiden val.
so great became there the heathens' fall.

Doch von ir überlaste
Yet from their over-burden

wart der puneiz sô vaste
was the charge so firmly

ûf manegem schœnen kastelân 405,5
on many-a fair castilian

alsô hurteclîch getân,
so onrushingly done,

daz die sehs vanen der kristenheit
that the six banners of-the Christendom

ieslîcher dâ besunder reit:
each there separately rode:

eteslîcher kleine gezoc behielt.
some little troop kept.

harte unglîche man si spielt 405,10
very unequally one them split

von ein ander mit gedrange.
from one another with throng.

sus si fuoren lange,
thus they fared long,

daz dâ manec getoufter man
that there many-a baptized man

ander warte muose hân,
other mark must have,

dan des vanen der im was benant. 405,15
than the banner which to-him was named.

wol werte ieslîch kristen hant,
well defended each Christian hand,

swâ der sehs vanen dechein
wherever of-the six banners any

ob im ime strîte erschein:
above him in-the battle appeared:

ir krîe ouch wârn gemeine.
their cries also were common.

405,20 Heimrîch al eine
Heimrich all alone

mich nu erbarmet sêre,
me now pities sorely,

daz die endelôsen êre
that the endless honor

sô tiwer sîn alter koufte
so dearly his old-age bought

und anderstunt sich toufte
and a-second-time itself baptized

405,25 sîn geslähte dâ in bluote.
his lineage there in blood.

wie was im dô ze muote,
how was to-him then at heart,

dâ sîniu kint und kinde kint
where his children and children's children

und er selbe in sölhen nœten sint,
and he himself in such distresses are,

dar zuo mâge unde man?
there to kinsmen and men?

sîn herze muose jâmer hân:
his heart must misery have:

406,1 bî dem jâmer was doch ellen.
beside the misery was yet valor.

in selbn und sîne gesellen
him himself and his companions

die sîne schilde truogen,
who his shields bore,

diene kunde niht genuogen,
them could not suffice,

swaz si der heiden valten. 406,5
whatever they of-the heathens felled.

an Heimrîch dem alten
on Heimrich the old

was von samît ein casagân:
was of samite a cassock:

ein pfellel drunde was getân,
a silk there-under was put,

îser unde palmât
iron and palmat

dâ zwischn gesteppet und genât, 406,10
there between quilted and sewn,

zwên hantschuoh des selben dran.
two gloves of-the same thereon.

ez muose ein kollier ouch hân,
it must a collar also have,

daz sich gein der kel zesamene vienc.
that itself toward the throat together closed.

der slitz unz ûf den gêren gienc.
the slit until up-to the gore went.

smârât und rubîn 406,15
emerald and ruby

daz wâren dran diu knöpfelîn,
that were thereon the little-buttons,

vor und hinden drûf sîn segn
before and behind thereon his blessing

(des wolt er im strîte phlegn),
(of-that would he in-the battle take-care),

gesniten ûz einem borten
cut out-of a braid

ein kriuce mit drîn orten, 406,20
a cross with three ends,

geschaffen sô der buochstap
made as the letter

den got den Israhêlen gap
which God to-the Israelites gave

mit dem lambe bluote
with the lamb's blood

ze schrîben durch die huote
to write for the protection

406,25 an bîstal unde an übertür.
on doorpost and on lintel.

dâ muost diu râche kêren für,
there must the vengeance turn past,

swâ man den selben buochstap vant,
wherever one the same letter found,

diu den schuldehaften was benant.
which for-the guilty was named.

wir hân mit wârheit daz vernumn,
we have with truth that heard,

daz kriuce was mit drîen drumn,
the cross was with three ends,

407,1 swie mangz dernâch gevieret sî,
however many-a-one thereafter four-cornered be,

da der meide sun unsanfte bî
where the maiden's son painfully on

was unz daz sîn mennischeit
was until that his manhood

durch uns den tôt dar an erleit.
for us the death there on suffered.

407,5 dem selben kriuce Heimrîch
to-the same cross Heimrich

ame kasagân ouch truoc gelîch
on-the cassock also bore alike

ûf einem brûnen samît,
on a brown samite,

do den überlästeclîchen strît
when the over-burdening battle

im brâhte sînes sunes sweher.
to-him brought his son's father-in-law.

iwer iegeslîchen hât diu heher 407,10
of-you each-one has the jay

an geschrîet ime walde:
at shrieked in-the forest:

alsô wart ouch dort der alde
so was also there the old-one

durch sînen strît beruofen.
for his battle cried-out.

er und die sîne schuofen
he and the his-ones made

sölhen rûm mit den swerten, 407,15
such room with the swords,

daz dâ manc storje gerten
that there many-a troop desired

balder von in ze kêren
sooner from them to turn

denne ir schaden dâ ze mêren.
than their harm there to increase.

Cernubile and Cliboris

XXXI

Cernubile of Ammirafel attacks Heimrich, who rides into battle with his ventail open, and Heimrich, avenging his daughter's son Vivianz, strikes him through the helm to the teeth. Bernart of Brubant slays Cliboris of Tananarke, Haropin's son, with Preciose, the sword of the king whom Charles slew, taken at Runzeval. Poydwiz, King Oukin's son, kills the burgrave Kiun of Beaveis and five French knights, and Heimrich the young drives him toward King Grohier's ring and kills him there, avenging his kinsman.

mit hurt dô brâhte ein tropel
with onset then brought a troop

407,20 Cernubilê von Ammirafel.
Cernubile of Ammirafel.

der selbe künec krône
the same king crown

von rotumbes dône
of drum's tone

truoc in wîtem rîche.
bore in wide realm.

der kom gein Heimrîche.
he came against Heimrich.

407,25 sô guoter rîterschaft er phlac:
so good knighthood he practiced:

in dûhte, er hete in einen sac
him seemed, he had in a sack

al die kristen wol verstricket.
all the Christians well ensnared.

mit den ekken wart verzwicket
with the edges was pinched-off

des selben küneges zuo komn.
of-the same king's on coming.

dâ wart grôz swerte klanc vernomn.
there was great swords' clang heard.

Dô kêrte der künec Cernubilê 408,1
Then turned the king Cernubile

gein dem der wîz sô den snê
against him who white as the snow

ime strîte truoc den bart,
in-the battle bore the beard,

mit der finteilen niht bewart.
with the ventail not guarded.

Heimrîch was undern ougen blôz: 408,5
Heimrich was under-the eyes bare:

diu barbier ez niht umbeslôz:
the beaver it not closed-around:

sîn helm et hete ein nasebant.
his helm just had a nose-band.

Cernubilê manc kriuce vant
Cernubile many-a cross found

gesniten ûf ir wæte,
cut on their garment,

die mit rîterlîcher tæte 408,10
who with knightly deed

sînem puneiz vor gehielten
to-his charge before held

und dâ manc houbet spielten,
and there many-a head split,

daz die zungen in den munden
that the tongues in the mouths

deheine krîe enkunden.
no cry could.

408,15 Mahumeten liez ers walten:
Mahumet let he-it rule:

dô kêrte gein dem alten
then turned against the old

mit sporen getribener huorte
with spurs driven onrush

Cernubilê. der fuorte
Cernubile. he bore

ûf helme unde ûf kursît
on helm and on surcoat

408,20 vil des durch minne gît
much of-what for love gives

ir vriunt diu werde vriundin.
to-her friend the worthy beloved.

holt er an prîse dâ gewin,
fetched he in prize there gain,

daz geschah im nimêr dâ nâch.
that happened to-him never there after.

sîner tohter sun dâ rach,
his daughter's son there avenged,

408,25 den clâren Vivîanzen,
the bright Vivianz,

Heimrîch an dem glanzen
Heimrich on the gleaming-one

der sô manec zimierde truoc.
who so many-a crest bore.

der von Narbôn den künec sluoc
he of Narbonne the king struck

durch den helm unz ûf die zene.
through the helm until up-to the teeth.

ob ich mich nu dar umbe sene,
if I myself now there for pine,

409,1 daz ist ein verre sippez klagn.
that is a far kindred lamenting.

die ir leben dannen solten tragn,
those-who their life thence should bear,

ob si nimer strîts gegerten
if they never battle desired

mit lanzen noch mit swerten,
with lances nor with swords,

die ze bêder sît dâ dolten nôt, 409,5
who on both sides there suffered distress,

si wærn doch alle sider tôt.
they were yet all since dead.

dô der künc Cernubilê
when the king Cernubile

was tôt gevellet ûf den klê,
was dead felled on the clover,

daz wart mit schaden gerochen:
that was with harm avenged:

verhouwen und durchstochen 409,10
hewn-up and pierced-through

wart von den sîn manc kristen lîp,
was by the his-ones many-a Christian body,

die dâ heime klageten werdiu wîp.
whom there at-home lamented worthy women.

Bernarten von Brubant
Bernart of Brubant

man noch bî Heimrîche vant:
one still beside Heimrich found:

bî sînem vater der beleip, 409,15
beside his father he remained,

do der grôze puneiz d'andern treip
when the great charge the-others drove

von im mit hurte krache.
from him with onset's crash.

nu kom vlokzende als ein trache
now came flickering as a dragon

Cliboris von Tananarke.
Cliboris of Tananarke.

409,20 ûf des helme was ein barke:
on his helm was a bark:

manc ander zimierde sîn
many-a other crest his

gap kostebæren sunderschîn:
gave costly separate-shine:

durchliuhtic edele steine,
translucent noble stones,

etslîcher niht ze kleine,
some not too small,

409,25 an gespunnenem golde hiengen,
on spun gold hung,

die gein sunnen blic begiengen,
which toward sun gleam practiced,

swenne imz houbt wolde wanken,
whenever to-him-the head would sway,

als ob im fiwers vanken
as if to-him of-fire sparks

flügen ûz dem munde
flew out-of the mouth

glüendic ob und unde.
glowing above and below.

410,1 Sus kom mit hurte Clyboris.
Thus came with onset Clyboris.

Bernart von Brubant was gewis,
Bernart of Brubant was certain,

er bræhte im sînen endes tac.
he would-bring to-him his end's day.

der getouften sô vil vor im lac
of-the baptized so many before him lay

beide erslagen unde wunt, 410,5
both slain and wounded,

solt ich se iu alle machen kunt,
should I them to-you all make known,

wer dâ tôt wart gevalt,
who there dead was felled,

wie der ander sînen mâc dâ galt,
how the one his kinsman there repaid,

wie der mit rotte kom gevarn,
how this-one with troop came faring,

wie der ander kunde niht gesparn 410,10
how the other could not spare

weder ors noch den man,
neither horse nor the man,

und wer dâ hôhen prîs gewan
and who there high prize gained

ime her an allen sîten,
in-the host on all sides,

solt ich ir sunder strîten
should I their separate fighting

bescheidenlîchen nennen, 410,15
distinctly name,

sô müese i'r vil bekennen.
so must I-of-them much acknowledge.

der künec von Tananarke dranc
the king of Tananarke pressed

an den von Brubant: hin er swanc
on him of Brubant: away he swung

ims helmes breiter danne ein hant,
to-him-of-the helm broader than a hand,

daz ez ûfem hersenier erwant. 410,20
that it on-the mail-hood stopped.

wær der halsperc niht dublîn,
were the hauberk not double,

ez müese aldâ sîn ende sîn.
it must there his end be.

Bernart zôch ûf ein swert
Bernart drew up a sword

(dem wârn sîn ekke bêde wert),
(to-it were its edges both worthy),

410,25 Precîôsen, daz der künic truoc,
Preciose, which the king bore,

den der keiser Karl sluoc.
whom the emperor Charles slew.

daz wart genomen ze Runzevâl:
that was taken at Runzeval:

dannen kom ez alsô lieht gemâl
thence came it so bright painted

mit den Franzoysen widr:
with the French back:

Bernharte wart ez sidr,
to-Bernhart came it since,

411,1 der manheit wol getorste tuon.
who manhood well dared do.

des wart des Haropînes suon
of-that was the Haropin's son

durch parken und durch helm erslagn.
through bark and through helm slain.

wîbe lôns enphâher solten klagn
women's reward's receivers should lament

411,5 sîner zimierde liehten glast.
his crest's bright gleam.

der clâre junge starke gast
the bright young strong stranger

underm orse tôt belac.
under-the horse dead lay.

in die barken gienc der bluotes wâc:
into the bark went the blood's wave:

swer marnær drinne wære gewesen,
whatever sailor therein had been,

der möhte unsanfte sîn genesen. 411,10
he might painfully have survived.

der sun des künec Oukîn
the son of-the king Oukin

Poydwîz tet ouch wol schîn
Poydwiz made also well show

daz er hête bejagt
that he had hunted-down

hôhen prîs dick unverzagt
high prize often undaunted

gein maneger tjoste mit den spern. 411,15
against many-a joust with the spears.

der kunde ouch mit dem swerte wern
he could also with the sword grant

des tôds Kîûn von Bêâveis
of-the death Kiun of Beaveis

und fünf rîter kurteis
and five knights courteous

Franzoyse sîner gesellen.
French of-his companions.

die begunder tôt dâ vellen 411,20
them began-he dead there to-fell

under d'ors ûfez gras,
under the-horses on-the grass,

dâ Heimrîch der junge was.
where Heimrich the young was.

mit zorn der an in ruorte:
with anger he at him touched:

er nam in für mit huorte,
he took him forth with onrush,

411,25 und kêrt in umbe schiere
and turned him around soon

gein dem künec Grôhiere,
toward the king Grohier,

durch des rinc für sîn gezelt:
through whose ring before his tent:

dâ gab er mit dem tôde gelt
there gave he with the death payment

umbe den burcgrâven Kîûn.
for the burgrave Kiun.

den rach Heimrîches sun
him avenged Heimrich's son

412,1 billîch: er was sîn mâc.
rightly: he was his kinsman.

The Captives Freed

XXXII

Poydwiz falls to the Schetis. Terramer himself fights and slays Milon of Nivers, and Rennewart avenges him by killing five kings. Halzebier's men retreat to their ships. Rennewart storms a bark, throws the heathens into the sea, and frees Bertram and seven of his kinsmen from their chains, sparing their unarmed warders. He arms the eight from the heathens he kills.

Poydwîz ouch tôt belac,
Poydwiz also dead lay,

der manlîche tiostiur.
the manly jouster.

durch hôhe minne ûf âventiur
for high love on adventure

412,5 brâhte er dicke sînen lîp.
brought he often his body.

sîne mâge und grôz gemuotiu wîp
his kinsmen and great minded women

mohten bî den zîten
might by the times

in manegen landen wîten
in many lands wide

sînes tôdes riwic sîn.
of-his death rueful be.

von Raabs rois Oukîn 412,10
of Raabs king Oukin

moht ouch Poydwîzen klagn,
might also Poydwiz lament,

sînen werden sun, von dem man sagn
his worthy son, of whom one say

muoz durch guote rîterschaft.
must for good knighthood.

waz half sîn grôziu hers kraft,
what helped his great host's strength,

die im sîn vater schuof ze wer, 412,15
which to-him his father made for defense,

mange sunderrotte, über mer?
many-a separate-troop, over sea?

ûz den het er sich erstriten,
out-of them had he himself fought-free,

daz er in ze verre was entriten.
that he from-them too far was ridden-away.

swer die sînen ie verkôs,
whoever the his-ones ever forsook,

der wart ouch etswenn sigelôs. 412,20
he became also sometimes victoryless.

daz in der schêtîs eine sluoc,
that him the Schetis alone slew,

daz kom dâ von. daz ors in truoc
that came there from. the horse him bore

durch den rinc des künec Grôhier.
through the ring of-the king Grohier.

dâ was im durch daz tehtier
there was to-him through the headstall

412,25 dez houbetstiudel ab geslagn:
the head-ring off struck:

ez mohte des zoumes niht getragn.
it might the bridle not bear.

des wart er umbe gewant
by-that was he around turned

von des schêtîses hant,
by the Schetis's hand,

daz er den rücke kêrte
that he the back turned

dem der in sterben lêrte.
to-him who him to-die taught.

413,1 Lâzâ klingen! waz dô swerte erklanc,
Let-it ring! what then of-swords rang,

und waz dâ fiwers ûz helmen spranc,
and what there of-fire out-of helms sprang,

dâ der vogt von Baldac
where the lord of Baldac

selbe strîtes sich bewac!
himself of-battle himself undertook!

413,5 der getorste unde mohte.
he dared and might.

lützel iemen daz getohte,
little anyone that availed,

daz er im gæbe gegenstrît.
that he to-him should-give counter-battle.

iedoch an der selben zît
yet at the same time

ein rîter unders rîches vanen
a knight under-the realm's banner

begunde die Franzoyse manen,
began the French to-urge,

und sînen friunt Rennewart.
and his friend Rennewart.

er nam daz ors ungespart
he took the horse unspared

mit den sporen sêre,
with the spurs sorely,

er rief gein Terramêre
he cried toward Terramer

'her an mich, alt grîser man!
'here at me, old grizzled man!

du hâst uns schaden vil getân:
thou hast to-us harm much done:

ich gib dir strît, sît du des gers.'
I give thee battle, since thou of-it desirest.'

grâve Milôn von Nivers
count Milon of Nivers

was der manlîche man genant.
was the manly man named.

des rîchen Terramêres hant
the rich Terramer's hand

imz leben ûzem verhe sneit.
to-him-the life out-of-the body cut.

diu tât was Rennewarte leit:
the deed was to-Rennewart grievous:

den dûhte der schade alze grôz
him seemed the harm all-too great

umb sînen werden schargenôz.
for his worthy comrade.

413,25 den rach er alsus schiere.
him avenged he thus soon.

er sluoc werder künege viere,
he slew worthy kings four,

Fabûren unde Samirant,
Fabur and Samirant,

Samûêln unde Oukidant.
Samuel and Oukidant.

winsterhalp an sîns vater schar
on-the-left at his father's company

nam er des fünften küneges war:
took he of-the fifth king heed:

414,1 der hiez Môrende:
he was-called Morende:

von Rennewartes hende
by Rennewart's hand

wart der selbe ouch tôt gevalt.
was the same also dead felled.

alsus er Milônen galt.
thus he Milon repaid.

414,5 von sînem ungefüegen glâz
from his monstrous gleam

huop sich vor im ein fîâz.
raised itself before him a flight.

des heres ûz Valfundê
of-the host out-of Valfunde

kêrt ein teil geime sê:
turned a part toward-the sea:

si mohten langer strîten niht.
they might longer fight not.

ir hêrren Halzebier man giht
their lord Halzebier one declares

daz er des tages mit sîner schar
that he of-the day with his company

alrêrst der vînde næme war,
first-of-all of-the enemies took heed,

daz er des sturmes begunde.
that he the storm began.

hie der müede, dort der wunde,
here the weary, there the wounded,

entwichen schône idoch mit wer
withdrew fairly yet with defense

hinz ir schiffen gein dem mer.
to their ships toward the sea.

nâch den was Rennewarte gâch:
after them was to-Rennewart haste:

des markîs volc im zogete nâch
the marquis's people to-him drew after

mit swertslegen unz an den stat,
with sword-blows until to the shore,

des er doch ir decheinen bat,
of-which he yet of-them none bade,

die Monschoye schrîten.
who Monschoye cried.

an den selben zîten
at the same times

der pfallenzgrâve Bertram
the count-palatine Bertram

daz herzeichen wol vernam
the war-cry well heard

in einer sentîne,
in a bilge,

und siben der mâge sîne,
and seven of-the kinsmen his,

dâ si gevangen lâgen
where they captive lay

und grôzes kumbers pflâgen.
and great affliction practiced.

Munschoye wart von in bekant.
Munschoye was by them known.

ir hüetær wârn von Nubîant.
their warders were of Nubiant.

415,1 Munschoye ouch si dort unden
Munschoye also they there below

schrîten, die gebunden.
cried, the bound-ones.

dô Rennewart der starke
when Rennewart the strong

kom dâ diu barke
came where the bark

415,5 vome kiele unz an den stat
from-the keel until to the shore

reichte, und er dar în getrat,
reached, and he there into stepped,

er schufft dâ manegen über bort.
he shoved there many-a-one over board.

si vluhen unz an des kieles ort,
they fled until to the keel's end,

etslîche unz in die sentîn:
some until into the bilge:

415,10 dâ wolten si genesen sîn.
there would they saved be.

er brach die dillen nâch in dan,
he broke the planks after them away,

unz er si gar her für gewan.
until he them wholly here forth gained.

Munschoye schriren dise ehte:
Munschoye cried these eight:

er marcte ir stimme rehte,
he marked their voice rightly,

daz si schrîten nâch der franze. 415,15
that they cried after the French-ways.

manec unsüeze schanze
many-a unsweet chance

wart getoppelt dâ der heidenschaft.
was diced there to-the heathendom.

er warf ir vil mit sîner kraft
he threw of-them many with his strength

al gewâpent in daz mer.
all armed into the sea.

harte kleine half ir wer. 415,20
very little helped their defense.

dô twanger die von Nubîant,
then forced-he those of Nubiant,

daz si sluzzen ûf diu bant,
that they unlocked up the bonds,

armîsen, îsenhalten.
arm-irons, iron-holds.

sus kund er zühte walten,
thus could he courtesy command,

daz er der hüetær keinen sluoc: 415,25
that he of-the warders none slew:

die heten angest doch genuoc.
they had fear yet enough.

aldâ wart ledic Gibelîn,
there became free Gibelin,

Bertram und Gaudîn,
Bertram and Gaudin,

Hûnas und Samsôn.
Hunas and Samson.

ir hüetære enpfiengen lôn
their warders received reward

416,1 dâ mit daz er den lîp in liez:
there with that he the life to-them left:

von arde ein zuht in daz hiez,
from nature a courtesy him that bade,

sît si âne wer dâ lâgen
since they without defense there lay

und swert noch pogen pflâgen.
and sword nor bow practiced.

416,5 dâ bliben die von Nubîant:
there remained those of Nubiant:

ûz durch die barken ûfez lant
out through the bark on-the land

dise ahte fürsten kêrten,
these eight princes turned,

die der heiden schaden mêrten,
who the heathens' harm increased,

Bertram und Gêrart,
Bertram and Gerart,

416,10 Hûwes unde Witschart,
Huwes and Witschart,

Sansôn unde Gaudîn,
Sanson and Gaudin,

Hûnas [von Sanctes] und Gibelîn.
Hunas [of Sanctes] and Gibelin.

ê die gewunnen harnasch,
before they won armor,

bî liehter sunnen dâ verlasch
by bright sun there quenched

416,15 manegem Sarrazîn sîn lieht.
to-many-a Saracen his light.

dise ähte mohten strîten nieht
these eight might fight not

ê daz in gap strîtes kleit
before that to-them gave battle's dress

der mit der stangen vor in streit.
he-who with the pole before them fought.

der sluoc der heiden dâ genuoc,
he slew of-the heathens there enough,

manegen der sölh harnasch truoc, 416,20
many-a-one who such armor bore,

sich möhte ein keiser wâpen drîn,
himself might an emperor arm therein,

swâ der im sturme solte sîn.
wherever he in-the storm should be.

dise ähte fürsten wol geborn,
these eight princes well born,

îsenhosen unde sporn,
iron-hose and spurs,

halsperge, helme unde swert, 416,25
hauberks, helms and swords,

der heten wel die helde wert.
of-them had choice the heroes worthy.

The Death of Halzebier

XXXIII

At Bertram's counsel Rennewart knocks knights from their horses to mount the eight. He drives his pole through Essere, whose horse goes to Gibelin. The eight find Halzebier weary from fighting all day; he kills Hunas of Sanctes before the seven fell him, and he dies without blemish. The margrave fights through the field. King Oukin sees the riderless horse of his son Poydwiz, laments him, and attacks the margrave, piercing his helm to a bloody wound.

niht wan orse in gebrast.
nothing but horses to-them lacked.

Rennwart wol schutte sînen ast:
Rennwart well shook his bough:

ich meine sîner stangen swanc,
I mean his pole's swing,

der ûf helmen unde ûf schilden klanc,
which on helms and on shields rang,

417,1 daz man und ors dar under starp.
that man and horse there under died.

do der orse dâ sô vil verdarp,
when of-the horses there so many perished,

daz widerriet im Bertram:
that advised-against to-him Bertram:

des fürsten rât er sus vernam.
the prince's counsel he thus heard.

417,5 'du solt die rîter stôzen,
'thou shalt the knights shove,

die gewâpendn und die blôzen,
the armed and the bare,

mit der stangen ûf die erden:
with the pole on the earth:

lâz uns der orse werden
let to-us of-the horses become

sô vil daz wir gerîten:
so many that we ride:

sô helfe wir dir strîten 417,10
so help we thee fight

ze orse baz dan ze fuoz.'
on horse better than on foot.'

'des râtes ich dir volgen muoz,'
'the counsel I thee follow must,'

sprach der junge Rennewart.
spoke the young Rennewart.

mit stôzen was dô ungespart
with shoving was then unspared

vil der Sarrazîne. 417,15
many of-the Saracens.

er dâhte 'ob ich die mîne
he thought 'if I the mine

ze orse möhte bringen,
to horse might bring,

die liezen swert erklingen.'
they would-let swords ring.'

swaz er dô rîter nider stiez,
whatever he then of-knights down shoved,

der guoten orse er dâ niht liez, 417,20
of-the good horses he there none left,

er zôh se disen ähten dan.
he drew them to-these eight away.

lantgrâf von Dürngen Herman
landgrave of Thuringia Herman

het in ouch lîhte ein ors gegebn.
would-have him also easily a horse given.

daz kunder wol al sîn lebn
that could-he well all his life

417,25 halt an sô grôzem strîte,
even at so great battle,

swa der gernde kom bezîte.
wherever the desiring-one came in-time.

der rede sî nu hie ein ort:
of-the speech be now here an end:

nu hœrt ouch wie si strîten dort.
now hear also how they fight there.

Esserê der emerâl
Essere the emir

mit zimierde lieht gemâl,
with crest bright painted,

418,1 ein fürste ûz Halzebieres her,
a prince out-of Halzebier's host,

der hielt mit rotte aldâ ze wer
he held with troop there on defense

dennoch unbetwungen.
still unforced.

Rennwart kom gedrungen,
Rennwart came pressing,

418,5 daz er in möht erlangen.
that he him might reach.

er stiez in mit der stangen
he shoved him with the pole

durch den lîp der wâpen truoc,
through the body which arms bore,

wol klâftern lanc: des was genuoc.
well fathoms long: of-that was enough.

des ors wart dô Gibelîn,
his horse became then Gibelin's,

dar ûf er manegen Sarrazîn 418,10
there on he many-a Saracen

verschriet. nu sint dise ähte
cut-down. now are these eight

ûz Willehalms geslähte
out-of Willehalm's lineage

ze orse und wol bereite:
on horse and well ready:

in den strît gap in geleite
into the battle gave to-them escort

ir niftl Alîzen soldier. 418,15
their niece Alize's soldier.

nu ersâhen si daz Halzebier
now saw they that Halzebier

vor in als ein eber vaht:
before them as a boar fought:

doch was sîn ellenthaftiu maht
yet was his valiant might

müede, wand er al den tac
weary, for he all the day

zors und ze fuoz der strîte pflac, 418,20
on-horse and on foot the battles practiced,

des noch sîn prîs hât lobes lôn.
for-which still his prize has praise's reward.

nu bekant in Sansôn
now knew him Sanson

bî dem schilt (des was doch wênic ganz):
by the shield (of-that was yet little whole):

dâ wart gerochen Vivîanz
there was avenged Vivianz

mit den swerten sêre, 418,25
with the swords sorely,

und daz er Terramêre
and that he to-Terramer

dise ähte gevangen gap.
these eight captive gave.

wan daz des sturmes urhap
except that the storm's beginning

des tages von sîner hant geschach,
of-the day from his hand happened,

si heten grœzer ungemach,
they would-have greater discomfort,

419,1 dise äht, von im gewunnen.
these eight, from him won.

des strîtes wart begunnen
the battle was begun

an den künec von Falfundê:
on the king of Falfunde:

si tâten im, er tet in wê.
they did to-him, he did to-them woe.

419,5 ey got daz dus verhanctes!
ah God that thou-it allowedst!

Hûnas von Sanctes
Hunas of Sanctes

lac vor sîner hende tôt.
lay before his hands dead.

von wunden harte grôze nôt
from wounds very great distress

die sibene enpfiengen, swaz der was,
the seven received, whatever of-them was,

419,10 ê daz si tôt ûfez gras
before that they dead on-the grass

den starken künec gevalten.
the strong king felled.

ime sweize muose erkalten
in-the sweat must grow-cold

sîn werder lîp, ê der erstarp,
his worthy body, before he died,

der ie nâch sölhem prîse warp
who ever after such prize strove

des andern künegen was ze vil. 419,15
which to-other kings was too much.

er stiez sô kostebæriu zil
he set so costly marks

mit manheit und mit milte,
with manhood and with generosity,

daz er durch nôt bevilte
that he through distress wearied

ander künege sîne genôze.
other kings his peers.

sus starp der schanden blôze 419,20
thus died the of-shame bare-one

ân alle missewende.
without any blemish.

man giht daz sîne hende
one declares that his hands

wol getorsten strîten unde geben,
well dared fight and give,

zuht mit triwen, al sîn leben
courtesy with faithfulness, all his life

al dise werdeclîchen site 419,25
all these worthy customs

unz an den tôt im wonten mite.
until at the death to-him dwelt with.

ûz sehs hern der er pflac
out-of six hosts which he led

manec fürste umb in gestreut lac,
many-a prince around him strewn lay,

die smorgens zuo zim wârn geschart.
who in-the-morning to him were ranked.

gerne het in Terramêr bewart.
gladly would-have him Terramer guarded.

420,1 Man hôrt dâ manege krîe.
One heard there many-a cry.

da ergienc ein temperîe,
there came-about a mixture,

als wir gemischet nennen.
as we mixed name.

man moht unsamft erkennen
one might painfully know

420,5 den getouften bî dem Sarrazîn.
the baptized from the Saracen.

Alitschanz muoz immer sælic sîn,
Alitschanz must ever blessed be,

sît ez sô manec bluot begôz,
since it so much blood poured-over,

daz ûz ir reinem verhe flôz,
that out-of their pure life flowed,

die vor gote sint genesen.
who before God are saved.

420,10 nu müez wir teilnüftic wesen
now may we sharing be

ir marter unde ir heilekeit!
of-their martyrdom and their holiness!

wol im der dâ sô gestreit,
well to-him who there so fought,

daz sîn sêle signunft enpfienc!
that his soul victory received!

sæleclîche ez dem ergienc.
blessedly it to-him came-about.

hurtâ, wie der markîs 420,15
hurta, how the marquis

den bêden leben warp dâ prîs,
for-the both lives won there prize,

dises kurzen lebens lobe,
this short life's praise,

und dem daz uns hôh ist obe!
and for-that which to-us high is above!

swâ die gezimierten
wherever the crested

ûf in punierten, 420,20
on him charged,

ungezalt valt er se nider.
uncounted felled he them down.

ez wart ouch Rennewarte sider
it came also to-Rennewart since

ein ors, hiez Lignmaredî.
a horse, called Lignmaredi.

daz lief mit lærem satel bî
that ran with empty saddle beside

dem künege Oukîne. 420,25
the king Oukin.

der mante al die sîne,
he urged all the his-ones,

er sprach 'ôwê wa ist Poydwîz,
he spoke 'alas where is Poydwiz,

an dem lac mîner vreuden vlîz?
on whom lay my joy's zeal?

hie kumt sîn ors, daz er reit,
here comes his horse, which he rode,

daz er mit sîner hant erstreit
which he with his hand won-by-fighting

vor dem berge ze Agremuntîn. 421,1
before the mountain at Agremuntin.

ouwê,' sprach er, 'sun mîn,
alas,' spoke he, 'son mine,

sol ich dich immer gesehen?
shall I thee ever see?

dîn vriunt dîn vînde müezen jehen
thy friends thy enemies must declare

421,5 daz dîn hant manegen sig ervaht.
that thy hand many-a victory fought-out.

dir was der sig ouch wol geslaht
to-thee was the victory also well inborn

von mir: ich wart nie sigelôs,
from me: I became never victoryless,

wan hiute, ob ich dich verlôs
except today, if I thee lost

gein dem Rômære Lôys.
against the Roman Loys.

421,10 ob die getouften dînen prîs
if the baptized thy prize

bekanten, in wære leit
knew, to-them would-be grievous

dîn sterben, ob si sicherheit
thy dying, if they surrender

kunnen nemen, unde op sie
can take, and if they

dîn tugent wisten. ich friesch nie
thy virtue knew. I heard never

421,15 dînen glîchen ûf der erden.
thy like on the earth.

ich muoz ertœtet werden,
I must killed become,

ichn versuoche war du sîst getân.'
unless-I try whither thou be put.'

sus kom der klagende grîse man
thus came the lamenting grizzled man

ûf den marcrâven gevarn.
on the margrave faring.

der kunde in dâ vor wol bewarn, 421,20
he could him there before well guard,

daz er dar nâch iht dorfte klagn.
that he there after anything needed lament.

doch wart sîn helm alsô durchslagn
yet was his helm so struck-through

von der Oukînes hant,
by the Oukin's hand,

daz man in bluotic dürkel vant,
that one him bloody pierced found,

swer in dar nâch wolte sehen. 421,25
whoever him there after would see.

der marcrâve muose jehen
the margrave must declare

daz in ein helt dâ bestuont,
that him a hero there attacked,

dem elliu wâfen wærn unkuont
to-whom all weapons were unknown

sînem verhe schadehaft.
to-his life harmful.

mit guoter kunst, mit starker kraft
with good skill, with strong strength

was al sîn harnasch geworht. 422,1
was all his armor wrought.

Purrel's Armor

XXXIV

The margrave strikes off Oukin's head. Three more kings arrive, and Rennewart, rested, sees the Christians give ground and comes to help, while Iwan of Roems carries the realm's banner. Purrel of Nubiant comes with his fourteen sons, his hauberk, shield, and helm made from the hides of the serpents neitun and muntunzel, which no weapon can pierce.

er was ouch selbe ie unervorht
he was also himself ever unafraid

in manegem sturme erkennet:
in many-a storm known:

sîn prîs was hôch genennet.
his prize was high named.

422,5 ûz der jugent in sîns alters tage
out-of the youth into his age's days

ranc sîn hant nâch dem bejage,
wrestled his hand after the winning,

mit milte, mit manlîcher tât,
with generosity, with manly deed,

dâ von man lop ze reden hât:
there from one praise to speak has:

sîn lîp nie zageheit erschrac.
his body never cowardice startled.

422,10 manegen ellenthaften slac
many-a valiant blow

enphienc von sîner werden hant
received from his worthy hand

der fürste ûz Provenzâlen lant.
the prince out-of Provençals' land.

Willehalm sich muose wern,
Willehalm himself must defend,

ob er den lîp dâ wolte ernern.
if he the life there would save.

Schoyûse wart geswenket, 422,15
Schoyuse was swung,

dâ der schilt was gehenket
where the shield was hung

bî des helmes snüere stricke.
by the helm's laces' cords.

si wâren bêdiu dicke,
they were both thick,

von palmât ein collier,
of palmat a collar,

von stahel ein veste hersenier. 422,20
of steel a firm mail-hood.

daz half niht al sîn herte:
that helped not all its hardness:

rehte als ein swankel gerte
right as a swaying switch

wart ez hin ab gehouwen.
was it away off hewn.

den lîp man mohte schouwen
the body one might behold

âne houbt im satel sîn. 422,25
without head in-the saddle his.

dâ viel dem künege Oukîn
there fell to-the king Oukin

dez houbet und der schilt ze tal,
the head and the shield to valley,

dar nâch der lîp über al
there after the body over all

underz ors ûf die molten.
under-the horse on the dust.

sus starp der umbescholten.
thus died the blameless-one.

423,1 Der künec Arestemeiz
The king Arestemeiz

und der künic von Belestigweiz
and the king of Belestigweiz

und der starke künec Haropîn
and the strong king Haropin

(die getorsten wol in sturme sîn)
(they dared well in storm be)

423,5 dô kômn mit rotte sunder.
then came with troop separate.

er moht dâ kiesen wunder,
he might there see wonder,

swerz müezic was ze schouwen.
whoever-it at-leisure was to behold.

ir her almeistic frouwen
their host mostly ladies

mit zimierde santen dar.
with crest sent thither.

423,10 der drîer künege, ir keines schar
of-the three kings, of-them none's company

was dennoch an die rîter komn:
was yet at the knights come:

dâ hete si Larkant von genomn,
there had them Larkant from taken,

manec enger furt, den si ritn:
many-a narrow ford, which they rode:

si kômn alrêrst nu dâ si stritn.
they came first-of-all now where they fought.

innen des ruowte ouch Rennewart. 423,15
meanwhile that rested also Rennewart.

ob sîn besenget junger bart
whether his singed young beard

mit sweize iht wære behangen,
with sweat anything were hung,

und ob in sîne stangen
and whether into his pole

wær inder swertes slac geschehen?
were anywhere sword's blow happened?

jâ, man mohte an ir wol sehen 423,20
yes, one might on it well see

daz dran diu stähelîniu bant
that thereon the steel bands

vonme drume unz an die hant
from-the end until to the hand

vaste wârn verschrôten.
firmly were cut-through.

man mohte se für die tôten
one might them for the dead

wol zeln, die daz tâten. 423,25
well count, who that did.

nu was der strît gerâten
now was the battle come

zeime alsô verrem rucke
to-a so far drawing-back

von der drîer künege drucke,
from the three kings' press,

daz sêre entweich diu kristenheit.
that sorely withdrew the Christendom.

diu tât was Rennewarte leit.
the deed was to-Rennewart grievous.

424,1 Der sah den wehsel an der diet:
He saw the change in the people:

swâ müediu schar ûz sturme schiet,
wherever weary company out-of storm parted,

sô kom manc ander mit kraft.
so came many-a other with strength.

sô vil was der heidenschaft,
so much was of-the heathendom,

424,5 daz nie geprüevet wart ir zal.
that never reckoned was their number.

manec hurte dâ sô lûte erhal,
many-a onset there so loud resounded,

dâ von daz kristenlîche her
there from the Christian host

begunde müeden an der wer.
began to-weary in the defense.

ze helfe kom in Rennewart.
to help came to-them Rennewart.

424,10 er kêrte hin dâ Gêrhart
he turned thither where Gerhart

wol vaht und die mâge sîn
well fought and the kinsmen his

gein dem starken künege Haropîn,
against the strong king Haropin,

dem alten Tananarkeys.
the old Tananarkeys.

zuo des burcrâven von Beâveys
to the burgrave's of Beaveys

424,15 rotte wâren si dâ komn.
troop were they there come.

die heten schaden ê genomn
they had harm before taken

an ir hêrrn, der was erslagn:
in their lord, he was slain:

si getorsten werdeclîche tragn
they dared worthily bear

noch sîne baniere.
still his banner.

Rennewart si schiere 424,20
Rennewart them soon

bekande, und daz des rîches vane
knew, and that the realm's banner

von in was entwichen dane
from them was withdrawn thence

durch dise geruoweten schar drî.
through these rested companies three.

Iwân von Roems ûz Normandî
Iwan of Roems out-of Normandy

was ders rîches vanen truoc. 424,25
was he-who-the realm's banner bore.

starc und manlîch genuoc
strong and manly enough

was des herze und al sîn lide.
was his heart and all his limbs.

er hete des tages âne vride
he had of-the day without peace

durch manege schar gedrungen,
through many-a company pressed,

dâ swert ûf im erklungen.
where swords on him rang.

Dô der Rennewarten sach, 425,1
When he Rennewart saw,

in dûht daz er nie ungemach
him seemed that he never discomfort

des tages in sturme enpfienge,
of-the day in storm should-receive,

swie ez dar nâch ergienge.
however it there after went.

425,5 sich koberten die getouften gar,
themselves recovered the baptized wholly,

und nâmen niwes schaden war.
and took of-new harm heed.

dô kom der künec von Nubîant,
then came the king of Nubiant,

sîner süne vierzehen erkant
of-his sons fourteen known

ze küngn in sundern landen.
as kings in separate lands.

425,10 die getouften rîter wânden
the baptized knights weened

daz dâ snîten rîter ûzem luft.
that there snowed knights out-of-the air.

sîn bart was grâwer dan der tuft,
his beard was grayer than the rime,

des alten künec Purrel.
of-the old king Purrel.

gezimiert manc rîter snel
crested many-a knight swift

425,15 geschart mit sînen sünen zuo riten.
ranked with his sons to rode.

si hânt noch umben wurf gestriten,
they have still for-the throw fought,

alle die getouften dâ.
all the baptized there.

was ir iht mêr anderswâ,
was of-them any more elsewhere,

diene sâhen sölhes kumbers niht,
they saw such affliction not,

425,20 als uns diz mære dannen giht.
as to-us this tale thereof declares.

des küneges schar von Nubîant
the king's company of Nubiant

was diu hinderst über Larkant.
was the hindmost over Larkant.

nu ist der schûr gar her für:
now is the shower wholly here forth:

got waldes an der siges kür.
God rule-it in the victory's choice.

Purrel der künec rîche 425,25
Purrel the king rich

was gewâpent wunderlîche.
was armed wondrously.

sîn halsperc einer hiute was,
his hauberk of-a hide was,

der hâr schein grüener dan daz gras
whose hair shone greener than the grass

daz stêt bî der wisen zûn.
which stands beside the meadow's fence.

der wurm hiez neitûn,
the worm was-called neitun,

dâ diu hût was ab geschunden: 426,1
whence the hide was off flayed:

diu was sô hert erfunden
it was so hard found

in glîcher art dem adamas.
in like kind to-the adamant.

ein schilt ouch drûz gemachet was,
a shield also therefrom made was,

an allen orten veste, 426,5
at all ends firm,

immer ein der beste
ever one the best

der ûz der schar kom vînden bî.
which out-of the company came to-enemies near.

smârât und achmardî,
emerald and achmardi,

der beider grüene was ein niht
of-them both green was a nothing

426,10 gein der grüene als man dem schilde giht.
against the green as one of-the shield declares.

ein ander wurm hiez muntunzel,
an other worm was-called muntunzel,

dar ûz dem künec Purrel
there out-of to-the king Purrel

ein helm was erziuget.
a helm was produced.

diz mære uns niht betriuget:
this tale us not deceives:

426,15 daz sult ir hân für ungelogn,
that shall you have for unlied,

reht alsô die regenbogen
right as the rainbows

in vier slahte blicke gevar
in four kinds' gleams colored

was des selben wurmes hâr.
was of-the same worm's hair.

als was sîn swarte ouch innen.
so was its skin also inside.

426,20 dine kunde niht gewinnen
it could not win

weder schuz noch slac noch stich:
neither shot nor blow nor thrust:

der künec mohte trœsten sich
the king might comfort himself

daz er âne wunden
that he without wounds

belibe zallen stunden
should-remain at-all hours

swenn er dar under wære. 426,25
whenever he there under were.

niht ze dicke, niht ze swære
not too thick, not too heavy

wârn die selben wurmes hiute.
were the same worm's hides.

ez wâren spæhe liute,
they were cunning people,

die worhten sölhe sarwât,
who wrought such armor,

der man ûf dem Sande wênic hât.
of-which one on the Sand little has.

Rennewart's Pole Breaks

XXXV

Purrel's sons charge, and Purrel kills five Christians. Rennewart swings his pole against Purrel's green shield and rainbow helm with such force that the pole bursts, though the serpent armor holds and Purrel's horse falls dead beneath him. Rennewart fights on with his fists until Gibelin bids him draw his sword, which he finds light and praises. Both hosts fight hard over Purrel, and the field runs red.

Sus kom der künec Purrel 427,1
Thus came the king Purrel

mit maneger pusînen hel:
with many-a trumpet clear:

über al daz her der schal derdôz.
over all the host the din thundered.

die getouften durch nôt verdrôz
the baptized through distress wearied

sô maneger niwen starken schar. 427,5
so of-many new strong companies.

sich samelierten aber gar
themselves rallied again wholly

ir sehs vanen zein ander.
their six banners to-one another.

Purrels sun Alexander
Purrel's son Alexander

und ein sîn sun Bargîs
and one his son Bargis

427,10 und Purrel selbe wârn gewis,
and Purrel himself were certain,

in wære der sig behalten.
to-them were the victory kept.

die jungen vor dem alten
the young before the old

alle vierzehene sprancten.
all fourteen spurred.

ob werdiu wîp des dancten
if worthy women of-it thanked

427,15 den die ir leben dan
those who their life away

brâhten, daz was guot getân,
brought, that was well done,

dienten si nâch minne:
served they for love:

sô het ich zir gewinne
so would-have I to-their gains

unsanfte dâ gepflihtet.
painfully there pledged.

427,20 si wurden des berihtet,
they were of-that instructed,

wie man in stürmen dienen muoz
how one in storms serve must

hôhe minne und den werden gruoz.
high love and the worthy greeting.

Purrel dâ mohte schouwen
Purrel there might behold

sîniu kint verhouwen,
his children hewn-up,

und ander sînes heres vil. 427,25
and other of-his host much.

diu gebot an sölhem topelspil
the bids at such dice-game

kund er wol strîchen unde legn:
could he well stroke and lay:

er was mit stichen und mit slegn
he was with thrusts and with blows

ûz der jugende unz in sîn alter komn:
out-of the youth until into his age come:

sperkraches het er vil vernomn.
of-spear-cracking had he much heard.

Gein der rehten manheite 428,1
Toward the right manhood

sîn herze im gap geleite.
his heart to-him gave escort.

swâ man des vil von künegen sagt,
wherever one of-that much of kings says,

dâ wirt armmannes tât verdagt.
there becomes poor-man's deed passed-over.

arme rîter solten strîten: 428,5
poor knights should fight:

ein künec wol möhte bîten,
a king well might wait,

unz er vernæm diu mære,
until he should-hear the tidings,

wie der furt versichert wære.
how the ford secured were.

der Baligânes tohter man
the Baligan's daughter's man

Purrel ie hôhen prîs gewan,
Purrel ever high prize gained,

swenn er mit dem swerte
whenever he with the sword

strît enpfienc und strîtes werte.
battle received and battle granted.

nu wart er wol innen des,
now became he well aware of-that,

daz ein sîn sun Palprimes
that one his son Palprimes

gein des rîches vanen kumber leit:
against the realm's banner affliction suffered:

der fuort sô tiweriu wâpenkleit,
he bore so costly arms-dress,

daz man ûz maneger schar
that one out-of many-a company

nam sîner zimierde war.
took of-his crest heed.

Purrels ors mit hurt in truoc
Purrel's horse with onset him bore

dem sune ze helfe, dâ er sluoc
to-the son to help, where he slew

Kîûnen von Munsurel,
Kiun of Munsurel,

und Remôn, des lop was hel,
and Remon, whose praise was clear,

ûz Daniu den barûn.
out-of Daniu the baron.

sus beschutter sînen sun.
thus sheltered-he his son.

dâ lag ouch tôt von sîner hant 428,25
there lay also dead by his hand

der werde ûz Purdel Girant.
the worthy-one out-of Purdel Girant.

von Poytowe Anshelm lac dâ tôt.
of Poytowe Anshelm lay there dead.

des vater leit die selben nôt:
whose father suffered the same distress:

der hiez Hûc von Lunzel.
he was-called Huc of Lunzel.

die fünve sluoc dâ Purrel.
the five slew there Purrel.

Noch grœzer schade von im geschach. 429,1
Still greater harm by him happened.

den künec von Nubîant man sach
the king of Nubiant one saw

eine strâze houwen durch daz wal.
a street hew through the slaughter-field.

der getouften viel sô vil ze tal,
of-the baptized fell so many to valley,

daz wîter rûm umb in wart. 429,5
that wide room around him became.

in den rinc spranc Rennewart,
into the ring sprang Rennewart,

daz er die stangen möht erbürn:
that he the pole might lift:

man begunde ouch sîne slâ dâ spürn.
one began also his track there to-trace.

dô reit der künec Purrel
then rode the king Purrel

starc küene unde snel 429,10
strong bold and swift

ein ors, gewâpent ûf den huof,
a horse, armed on the hoof,

daz dicke hurteclîchen schuof
which often onrushingly made

sînen willen swenners gerte.
his will whenever-he-it desired.

Rennewart in werte
Rennewart him granted

429,15 noch mêr denn er im schuldic was.
still more than he to-him owing was.

gein dem schilte grüener dann ein gras
against the shield greener than a grass

diu stange hôhe wart erzogn:
the pole high was drawn:

der helm gelîchte dem regenbogn:
the helm resembled the rainbow:

dâ wart ungesmeichet
there was unflatteringly

429,20 helm und schilt erreichet
helm and shield reached

mit eime alsô starken swanc,
with a so strong swing,

daz diu stange gar zerspranc.
that the pole wholly burst.

ob der trunzûn swære
whether the stump heavy

ûf in den luft iht wære?
up in the air anything were?

429,25 jâ: duo der sich nider liez,
yes: when it itself down let,

durch den helm er einen rîter stiez.
through the helm it a knight shoved.

Purrelle erkracheten gar diu lit.
to-Purrel cracked wholly the limbs.

Kîûn von Munlêûn der smit
Kiun of Munleun the smith

mit vlîze worht die stangen:
with diligence wrought the pole:

doch zebrâsten gar ir spangen.
yet burst wholly its clasps.

Wan daz harnasch würmîn, 430,1
Except-for the armor of-worm,

der künec Purrel müeste sîn
the king Purrel must be

von dem slage gar zerstobn:
by the blow wholly scattered:

sîne friunt diu wâppen mohten lobn.
his friends the arms might praise.

seht ob er drûf iht dolte nôt: 430,5
see whether he thereupon anything suffered distress:

des einen slags daz ors lac tôt,
from-the one blow the horse lay dead,

und der künec lac unversunnen.
and the king lay senseless.

schiere kom gerunnen
soon came running

ûz munde ûz ôren unde ûz nasen
out-of mouth out-of ears and out-of nose

daz macht al rôt den grüenen wasen. 430,10
what made all red the green turf.

mit der fiuste Rennewart dô streit,
with the fist Rennewart then fought,

swaz Purrels hers im gereit.
whatever Purrel's host to-him rode.

mit der fiuste vaht er fürbaz:
with the fist fought he further:

sîns edelen swertes er vergaz
his noble sword he forgot
430,15 in der scheiden an der sîten.
in the sheath at the side.
irn gesâht nie fiuste strîten
you saw never fists fight
manlîcher dan daz sîn.
more-manly than that his.
zuo zim hurte Gibelîn
to him hurtled Gibelin
ûf dem ors daz Esserê
on the horse which from-Essere
430,20 ime sturme was genomen ê:
in-the storm was taken before:
der bat in zucken daz swert.
he bade him draw the sword.
der bet er schiere was gewert.
of-the request he soon was granted.
hurtâ, wie daz versuochet wart!
hurta, how that tried was!
vor sînen ekken ungespart
before its edges unspared
430,25 beleip dô harnasch unde man.
remained then armor and man.
swelher im dâ niht entran,
whichever him there not escaped,
des leben muoste sîn ein pfant.
whose life must be a pledge.
er warf ez umbe in der hant,
he threw it around in the hand,
er lobt im valze und ekken sîn,
he praised to-it groove and edges its,

er sprach ‘diu starke stange mîn
he spoke ‘the strong pole mine

was mir ein teil ze swære: 431,1
was to-me a part too heavy:

du bist lîht und doch strîtpære.’
thou art light and yet battle-worthy.’

obem künege Purrel geschach
above-the king Purrel happened

ze bêder sît grôz ungemach,
on both sides great discomfort,

den kristen und den heiden. 431,5
to-the Christians and to-the heathens.

da ergienc von in beiden
there came-about from them both

hurteclîchez kriegen.
onrushing warring.

si liezen gêre vliegen
they let javelins fly

mit anderem ir geschôze.
with other their missiles.

von getouften bluotes flôze 431,10
from baptized blood’s flood

und von den werden tôten
and from the worthy dead

daz velt begunde rôten.
the field began to-redden.

Purrels her reit âne sper,
Purrel’s host rode without spear,

wan die durch der minne ger
except those-who for the love’s desire

dâ wol getubieret riten. 431,15
there well caparisoned rode.

etslîcher hât noch dâ gebiten,
some has still there waited,

wie sîn vrouwe künne lônen:
how his lady can reward:

irne kunde niht geschônen
of-them could not spare

Rennewart, dem ouch nâch minne
Rennewart, to-whom also after love

431,20 stuonden sîner freuden sinne.
stood his joy's senses.

The Heathens Give Way

XXXVI

Purrel is carried off to the sea, and Synagun rescues his sons. Rennewart slays Golliam, and Bernart kills Ektor, so that the admiral's banner falls. The poet reflects on the Roman crown, which no crown equals, and on Terramer, mightiest of the heathens, yet weaker than the Highest. The heathen kings flee, though some, such as Fabors, Kanliun, and Ehmereiz, cover the retreat.

Purrel der grîse künec alt
Purrel the grizzled king old

wart dan getragen mit gewalt
was thence borne with force

ze fuoze von den sînen.
on foot by the his-ones.

si liezen dâ wol schînen
they let there well show

431,25 daz si wâren unverzagt.
that they were undaunted.

ûf sîme schilte, ist uns gesagt,
on his shield, is to-us said,

truog in manec rîter wunt
bore him many-a knight wounded

anz mer ûf einen tragmunt
to-the sea on a transport

verre über ein heide.
far over a heath.

si sâhen an im leide.
they saw on him sorrow.

Der rîche ellende 432,1
The rich exile

hete dâ mit sîner hende
had there with his hand

sînem alter prîs errungen.
for-his old-age prize won.

die vierzehen jungen,
the fourteen young-ones,

des künegs süne von Nubîant, 432,5
the king's sons of Nubiant,

ir neve Sînagûn dô vant
their nephew Sinagun then found

vil nâch si umbe gekêret.
very near them about turned.

si wârn alsô versêret:
they were so wounded:

wær er mit sîner müeden schar
were he with his weary company

ûf sînem orse trachenvar 432,10
on his horse dragon-colored

in niht ze helfe zuo geriten,
to-them not to help to ridden,

si heten Franzoyse überstriten.
they would-have the-French outfought.

dô sah der rîche Terramêr
then saw the rich Terramer

an sînen mâgen herzesêr.
on his kinsmen heart-sore.

der begunde al die sîne manen.
he began all the his-ones to-urge.

wol truoc des admirâtes vanen
well bore the admiral's banner

von Salenîe Ektor.
of Salenie Ektor.

Poydjus sah ê dâ vor
Poydjus saw before there before

daz Halzebier was erslagn:
that Halzebier was slain:

daz begunder Terramêre sagn,
that began-he to-Terramer to-tell,

der mêr noch schaden dâ vernam.
who more still harm there heard.

Rennewart sluoc Gollîam
Rennewart slew Golliam

den künec von Belestigweiz.
the king of Belestigweiz.

mangem hurteclîchen puneiz
many-a onrushing charge

Rennewart dâ vor gestuont.
Rennewart there before withstood.

von im wart Gybôez ouch wuont,
by him was Gyboez also wounded,

der werde burcrâve ûz Cler.
the worthy burgrave out-of Cler.

da entweich Tybalt und al des her.
there withdrew Tybalt and all his host.

von Karkassûn Trohazzabê
of Karkassun Trohazzabe

geflohen hete wênec ê,
fled had little before,

der Ehmereizes vanen truoc, 433,1
who Ehmereiz's banner bore,

unz er resach daz dâ sluoc
until he saw that there slew

der herzoge Bernart
the duke Bernart

Ektor, der ie bewart
Ektor, who ever guarded

was vor aller zageheit. 433,5
was from all cowardice.

des wart diu schumpfentiure breit,
by-that became the discomfiture broad,

dô der vane dernider lac,
when the banner down lay,

den der vogt von Baldac
which the lord of Baldac

bevalh dem künege Ektor.
entrusted to-the king Ektor.

des rîches vane swebt enbor: 433,10
the realm's banner hovers aloft:

als tet der vane von Brubant,
so did the banner of Brubant,

den Landrîs fuorte an der hant:
which Landris bore in the hand:

hôh was der Provenzâle vane,
high was the Provençal's banner,

dâ der stern von golde ane
where the star of gold on

lac der rîcheit gelîch: 433,15
lay to-the wealth like:

sînem vann, des alten Heimrîch,
to-his banner, of-the old Heimrich,

und dem vanen von Tandarnas,
and to-the banner of Tandarnas,

dâ der schêtîs under was,
where the Schetis under was,

den fünf vanen wol gelanc
to-the five banners well succeeded

433,20 gein mangem kumber der si twanc.
against many-a affliction which them forced.

Bertram und Gybert,
Bertram and Gybert,

der zweier vanen manec swert
of-the two banners many-a sword

volgete nâch bluotvar:
followed after blood-colored:

Terramêrs kinde schar
Terramer's children's company

433,25 wart von in umbe gewant.
was by them around turned.

waz half sîn her ûz manegem lant?
what helped his host out-of many-a land?

die muosen mit im lîden nôt.
they must with him suffer distress.

der heiden strîtes herte tôt
the heathens' battle's hardness dead

was, Poydwîz und Halzebier.
was, Poydwiz and Halzebier.

dâ flôch manc edel soldier.
there fled many-a noble soldier.

434,1 Swer den keiserlîchen namen hât,
Whoever the imperial name has,

den die heiden nennent admirât,
which the heathens name admiral,

derst ouch vogt ze Baldac.
he-is also lord at Baldac.

Terramêr der beider pflac,
Terramer of-them both held,

er was vogt und admirât. 434,5
he was lord and admiral.

seht waz man rœmschem keiser lât
see what one to-Roman emperor leaves

ze Rôme an rœmscher phahte.
at Rome by Roman law.

hôch mit hôher ahte
high with high esteem

hât rœmisch krôn vor ûz den strît,
has Roman crown above all the strife,

daz ir niht ebenhiuze gît: 434,10
that to-it none equal gives:

sô scharpf ist rœmisch krône ervorht.
so sharply is Roman crown feared.

swaz anderr krône sint geworht,
whatever other crowns are wrought,

die ûf getouften houbten sint,
which on baptized heads are,

ir aller kraft gein dirre ein wint
their all strength against this a wind

ist: sine mugens et niht getuon. 434,15
is: they may-it just not do.

als het der Kanabêus suon
so had the Kanabeus's son

hœhe übr alle dheidenschaft
height over all the-heathendom

beidiu von arde und ouch von kraft,
both from nature and also from strength,

und diu erbeschaft von Baligân
and the heritage from Baligan

434,20 het im gemachet undertân
had to-him made subject

vil künege dienstlîche.
many kings serviceably.

wær er noch als rîche,
were he still as rich,

dennoch hât mêr Altissimus.
still has more Altissimus.

der schuof iz in dem strîte alsus:
he made it in the battle thus:

434,25 swaz amazûre und eskelîr
whatever almansurs and eskeliers

dâ wârn mit dem von Muntespîr,
there were with him of Muntespir,

al sîne künege und emerâl
all his kings and emirs

mit schumpfentiure vonme wal
with discomfiture from-the slaughter-field

muosen flühtic rîten
must fleeing ride

mit flust an allen sîten.
with loss on all sides.

435,1 Ir sælekeit si mêrten,
Their blessedness they increased,

mit den swerten umbe kêrten
with the swords around turned

die kristen al die heidenschaft.
the Christians all the heathendom.

der verren und der nâhen kraft,
of-the far and of-the near strength,

435,5 dâ für wil ichz hân erkant,
there for will I-it have known,

mit der wârheit diu gotes hant
with the truth the God's hand

des gap die besten stiure.
to-that gave the best help.

manlîcher schumpfentiure
manly discomfiture

nie geschah in manegen jâren.
never happened in many years.

sus wurben die dâ wâren 435,10
thus strove those-who there were

verdecket mit der toufe,
covered with the baptism,

so der edele vorloufe,
as the noble lead-runner,

der sîner verte niht verzagt
which of-its course not despairs

und ungeschütet nâch jagt,
and unshaken after hunts,

swenn er geswimmet durch den wâc. 435,15
whenever it swims through the wave.

dennoch manc koberunge lac
still many-a recovery lay

an der rîterschaft der Sarrazîn.
in the knighthood of-the Saracens.

dâ tet wol ûf der flühte schîn
there made well on the flight shine

Fâbors und Kanlîûn
Fabors and Kanliun

und Ehmereiz Tybaldes sun, 435,20
and Ehmereiz Tybalt's son,

daz si wol kobern kunden.
that they well recover could.

swâ si bekumbert funden
wherever they troubled found

bêde ir mâge unde ir man,
both their kinsmen and their men,

alsô hulfen si den dan,
so helped they them away,

435,25 dês ir rîterschaft hât êre.
of-that their knighthood has honor.

dannoch hardierten sêre
still harried sorely

die getouften et mit kalopeiz.
the baptized just with gallop.

möht ir volleclîcher puneiz
might their full charge

ûf den wunden orsen sîn getân,
on the wounded horses be done,

sô wær dâ pfandes mêr verlân.
so would-be there of-pledge more let.

The Flight

XXXVII

Terramer flees on Brahan. The heathens break toward the mountains, the sea, and the moor, and the river Larkant runs red. Ships stand three miles along the shore, and kings must sail them themselves. Josweiz withdraws without shame, Terramer turns to fight before embarking, and Synagun, Ehmereiz, and others hold the defense. Rennewart comes after on foot and sees his old father hold firm, and the margrave and the princes press after the fleeing host.

Hin flôch der admirât 436,1
Away fled the admiral

(des was et dô kein ander rât)
(of-that was just then no other counsel)

ûf sînem ors Brahâne.
on his horse Brahan.

gein der muntâne
toward the mountain

kêrte sînes hers genuoc, 436,5
turned of-his host enough,

des man sît dâ vil ersluoc;
of-whom one since there many slew;

etlîche ouch gein des meres stade.
some also toward the sea's shore.

al gewâpent hin zem bade
all armed away to-the bath

man manegen fürsten kêren sach,
one many-a prince turn saw,

des hant nie questen gebrach. 436,10
whose hand never of-whisks lacked.

etlîche fluhen ouch in daz muor.
some fled also into the moor.

manc sîdîn gezeltsnuor
many-a silken tent-cord

wart ûf der slâ enzwei getrett.
was on the track in-two trodden.

dâ wart man und ors gewett
there was man and horse waded

436,15 in dem wazzer Larkant.
in the water Larkant.

dennoch dâ manc getouftiu hant
still there many-a baptized hand

vant vil werlîchen strît:
found very warlike battle:

wan swâ die lücken wâren wît,
for wherever the gaps were wide,

daz si durch mohten brechen,
that they through might break,

436,20 slahen unde stechen
striking and stabbing

was under Josweizes vanen,
was under Josweiz's banner,

des hôh gemuoten, der den swanen
the high minded, who the swan

truoc in vanen unde ûf schilte.
bore in banner and on shield.

der werde künec milte
the worthy king generous

436,25 muose abem furte entwîchen,
must off-the ford withdraw,

doch unlasterlîchen.
yet unshamefully.

werlîche er dicke kêrte,
warlike he often turned,

sînen prîs er hôch gemêrte:
his prize he highly increased:

er beschutte manegen Sarrazîn,
he sheltered many-a Saracen,

der dâ beliben müeste sîn.
who there remained must be.

Der sehs herzeichen ruof, 437,1
The six war-cries' calling,

die man smorgens den getouften schuof,
which one in-the-morning for-the baptized made,

wart etswâ nu vergezzen,
was somewhere now forgotten,

dô mit swerten was gemezzen
when with swords was measured

diu schumpfentiur sô wît, sô grôz. 437,5
the discomfiture so wide, so great.

man hôrt dâ mangen niwen dôz:
one heard there many-a new din:

swannen ie der man was benant,
whence ever the man was named,

alsô schrei er al zehant
so cried he at once

in fürten unde ûf plâne.
in fords and on meadow.

Gandalûz von Schampâne 437,10
Gandaluz of Champagne

und die sîne schrîten Provîs.
and the his-ones cried Provis.

Jofreit von Sâlîs
Jofreit of Salis

ouch sîner krîe niht vergaz.
also his cry not forgot.

Iper unde Arraz
Iper and Arraz

schrîten Flæminge: 437,15
cried Flemings:

manges swertes klinge
many-a sword's blade

erklanc sô man die krîe schrei.
rang as one the cry cried.

vaste ûf der slâ Nanzei
firmly on the track Nanzei

schrîten Lohreine.
cried Lorrainers.

al über die sarcsteine,
all over the coffin-stones,

dâ die gehêrten lâgen,
where the glorified lay,

die ze himele ruowe pflâgen,
who in heaven rest had,

mit swerten an den furt gement
with swords at the ford driven

wart manc esklîr, der ungewent
was many-a eskelier, who unaccustomed

was daz er fliehen solte.
was that he flee should.

der admirât nu dolte
the admiral now suffered

von den rœmschen fürsten schande.
from the Roman princes shame.

sîne künege ûz mangem lande,
his kings out-of many-a land,

man swuor dâ bî ir hulde niht,
one swore there by their goodwill not,

als uns diz mære dannen giht.
as to-us this tale thereof declares.

Von hêrren von mâgen beiden 438,1
From lords from kinsmen both

schiet ân urloup manec heiden
parted without leave many-a heathen

von strîtes überlaste.
from battle's over-burden.

volleclîche lanc drî raste
fully long three miles

ein kiel am andern stuont, 438,5
one keel by-the other stood,

urssier, kocken, tragamuont,
horse-ships, cogs, transports,

die kleinen und die grôzen,
the small and the great,

mit baniern überstôzen.
with banners bedecked.

swa der rotte anker hêten grunt,
wherever of-the troop anchors had ground,

daz tet ir banier schône kunt. 438,10
that made their banner fairly known.

etslîche nâmn unkunden rûm,
some took unknown room,

swenn si durh den frischen pflûm
whenever they through the fresh river

fluhen unz an den salzsê.
fled until to the salt-sea.

swer begreif die barken ê,
whoever seized the bark first,

der beite sînes bruoder niht. 438,15
he awaited his brother not.

etslîchem esklîr man noch giht,
of-some eskelier one still declares,

er vrâgte wênic mære
he asked little tidings

umb sînen marnære.
about his sailor.

dâ muosen künege selbe varn,
there must kings themselves fare,

438,20 wolten si den lîp bewarn,
would they the body guard,

etslîche ân segel ûf gezogn.
some without sail up drawn.

sîner manheit was umbetrogn
of-his manhood was undeceived

al der heiden admirât,
all the heathens' admiral,

der werlîche genkert hât
who warlike turned-against has

438,25 vor sîner schiffunge an dem mer.
before his embarking at the sea.

ich sag iu wer dâ hielt ze wer.
I tell you who there held on defense.

Synagûn und Ehmereiz,
Synagun and Ehmereiz,

Prûanz und Utreiz,
Pruanz and Utreiz,

Iseret und Malatons,
Iseret and Malatons,

Marjadox und Malacrons.
Marjadox and Malacrons.

439,1 Ê truogen vörhen rôtiu mâl:
Before bore trout red marks:

rôt wurden vische über al
red became fish over all

von dem strîte in Larkant.
from the battle in Larkant.

ouch wart der Provenzâlen lant
also became the Provençals' land

von manger flühteclîchen schar 439,5
from many-a fleeing company

ûf der slâ al rôt gevar
on the track all red colored

alsô der berc Tahenmunt.
as the mountain Tahenmunt.

dâ vlôch manc rîter sêre wunt,
there fled many-a knight sorely wounded,

verhouwen durch sîn harnasch.
hewn through his armor.

Rennewart kom durch den pfasch 439,10
Rennewart came through the path

ze fuoz geheistiert her nâch,
on foot hastened here after,

dâ er mit manger rotte sach
where he with many-a troop saw

sînen vater den alten
his father the old

der jugent gelîche halten
to-the youth alike hold

mit unverzagetem muote. 439,15
with undaunted spirit.

meister Hildebrands vrou Uote
master Hildebrand's lady Uote

mit triwen nie gebeite baz,
with faithfulness never waited better,

denn er tet maneger storje naz
than he made many-a troop's wet

mit bluote begozzen.
with blood poured-over.

439,20 werlîch und unverdrozzen
warlike and untiring

hielt der vogt von Baldac.
held the lord of Baldac.

hie der stich, dort der slac,
here the thrust, there the blow,

swenne ie der niwen storje stôz
whenever ever the new troop's shove

sich hurteclîchen în geslôz,
itself onrushingly in closed,

439,25 sus kom daz kristenlîche kumn.
thus came the Christian coming.

ich mags wol jehen ûf die frumn:
I may-it well declare on the brave:

ine mag iu von den zagen
I may you of the cowards

an dirre unmuoze niht gesagen.
at this toil not tell.

ich sage et von getürste,
I tell just of daring,

wie der Provenzâle fürste,
how the Provençals' prince,

440,1 Willehalm der markîs,
Willehalm the marquis,

und sîne helfær wurben prîs:
and his helpers strove-for prize:

der kom mit manegem Franzoys.
he came with many-a Frenchman.

der herzoge ûz Vermendoys
the duke out-of Vermendoys

440,5 und der herzoge Bernart,
and the duke Bernart,

sîn bruoder, kom ûf der vart
his brother, came on the way

mit heller stimme nâch gejagt,
with clear voice after hunted,

und Buove der unverzagt,
and Buove the undaunted,

der lantgrâve ûz Comarzî.
the landgrave out-of Comarzi.

dem jaget dô aller næhste bî 440,10
to-him hunted then all nearest beside

des alten Heimrîches vane.
the old Heimrich's banner.

nu was der heidenschefte bane
now was the heathendom's path

von huofslegen sô wît erkant,
from hoof-strokes so wide known,

daz man si kuntlîche vant.
that one it plainly found.

Terramer Wounded

XXXVIII

The Christian banners follow the Saracens through the ford. The margrave presses toward Terramer, who bears Kahun on a griffin as Baligan did. Terramer strikes him through the helm, worse than Oukin had, and Schoyuse cuts Terramer through all his armor. Rennewart kills his brother Kanliun, neither knowing the other, and four kings more. The battle ends in flight, Terramer laid sorely wounded on his ship. Tedalun kills Gandaluz of Champagne, and Rennewart slays Tedalun.

des küneges vane von Tandarnas
the king's banner of Tandarnas

alrêrst ûz den getouften was
first-of-all out-of the baptized was

durch den furt nâch den Sarrazîn.
through the ford after the Saracens.

Bertram und Gibelîn
Bertram and Gibelin

erhiewen d'êrsten lücken.
hewed the-first gaps.

lâzâ nâher tücken!
let-it nearer dart!

waz man baniere und vanen sach
what one of-banners and of-flags saw

ûf der slâ zogen nâch!
on the track draw after!

die sehs vanen der kristenheit,
the six banners of-the Christendom,

etswâ gezart, etswâ niht breit,
somewhere torn, somewhere not broad,

nu gar durch fürte wâren.
now wholly through fords were.

ir gefriescht in manegen jâren
you heard in many years

sô hert enpfâhn, sô sûrez komn,
so hard receiving, so sour coming,

als ze bêder sît dâ wart vernomn
as on both sides there was heard

von Terramêrs tragamunt.
by Terramer's transport.

des wart manc rîter ungesunt.
by-that became many-a knight unsound.

Der marcrâve nu niht des lât, 441,1
The margrave now not of-that leaves,

ern dringe et gein dem admirât:
unless-he press just toward the admiral:

daz riet sîns herzen gebot.
that counseled his heart's command.

nu sah er Kâhûn den got
now saw he Kahun the god

ûf eime grîfen gemâl 441,5
on a griffin painted

als in Baligân ze Runzevâl
as him Baligan at Roncevaux

gein dem keiser Karle truoc:
against the emperor Charles bore:

Terramêres schilt genuoc
Terramer's shield enough

was dennoch mêr gehêret.
was still more glorified.

des wart manc helt versêret, 441,10
by-that was many-a hero wounded,

do der marcrâve diu wâpen kôs,
when the margrave the arms saw,

dar under Baligân verlôs
there under Baligan lost

den lîp, und Palprimes sîn sun.
the life, and Palprimes his son.

ir werder got Kâhûn
their worthy god Kahun

441,15 ûf ir schilte den grîfen reit,
on their shields the griffin rode,

dar unde ouch Terramêr hie streit.
there under also Terramer here fought.

im wârn diu wâpen wol geslaht:
to-him were the arms well inborn:

er erbt ir rîcheit unde ir maht.
he inherited their wealth and their might.

Volatîn mit sporn betwungen
Volatin with spurs forced

441,20 wart dâ vil swerte erklungen.
was there many swords sounded.

vil künege ûz der heiden her
many kings out-of the heathens' host

wârn vor ir admirât ze wer,
were before their admiral on defense,

etslîch sîn kint unt manec sîn mâc.
some his child and many-a his kinsman.

hie vome stich, dort vonme slac
here from-the thrust, there from-the blow

441,25 geschach dâ vil der wunden:
happened there many of-the wounds:

siech wurden die gesunden.
sick became the sound.

dâ was diu ruowe strenge:
there was the rest strict:

von maneger hurte enge
from many-a onset narrow

wart ûf dem wîten plâne.
became on the wide meadow.

Terramêr ûf Brahâne
Terramer on Brahan

mit volleclîcher huorte 442,1
with full onrush

an den marcrâven ruorte:
at the margrave touched:

er sluog in durch den helm sîn
he struck him through the helm his

noch sêrre denne in Oukîn
still more-sorely than him Oukin

dâ vor hete verhouwen. 442,5
there before had hewn-up.

man moht ouch dâ nâch schouwen
one might also there after behold

daz dâ sêre wart zetrant
that there sorely was rent

der halsperc ûz Jaszerant.
the hauberk out-of Jaszerant.

durch den grîfen und durch Kâhûn
through the griffin and through Kahun

wunt wart Kanabêus sun, 442,10
wounded became Kanabeus's son,

der edele hôhe recke.
the noble high warrior.

diu Schoyjûsen ecke
the Schoyjuse's edge

in durch al sîn harnasch sneit.
him through all his armor cut.

den strît mit hurte underreit
the battle with onset rode-between

442,15 der künec von Lanzesardîn:
the king of Lanzesardin:

Canlîûn tet dâ wol schîn
Canliun made there well show

daz er sînen vater sach
that he his father saw

ungern in sölhem ungemach.
unwillingly in such discomfort.

an den kom dô Rennewart:
at him came then Rennewart:

442,20 des was der bruoder ungespart:
of-that was the brother unspared:

von dem wart Canlîûn erslagn.
by him was Canliun slain.

sine kunden niht ein ander sagn
they could not to-one another tell

von deheiner künde ê.
of any acquaintance before.

Rennwart den künec Gibûê
Rennwart the king Gibue

442,25 unz ûf den swertvezzel schriet.
until on the sword-belt cut.

durch al der sarringe niet
through all the ring-mail's rivets

er sluoc den künec Malakîn.
he struck the king Malakin.

Câdor muose der vierde sîn:
Cador must the fourth be:

und dem jungen künec Tampastê
and to-the young king Tampaste

tet er ouch mit dem tôde wê.
did he also with the death woe.

des vater sluoc ouch Vivîanz 443,1
whose father slew also Vivianz

in dem êrsten sturme ûf Alischanz.
in the first storm on Alischanz.

Wie diu fluht dô geriet!
How the flight then went!

wie daz kint von sîme vater schiet!
how the child from his father parted!

wie schiet der vater vonme kint! 443,5
how parted the father from-the child!

seht wie den stoup der starke wint
see how the dust the strong wind

her und dar zetrîbe.
hither and thither drives-apart.

wer dâ schiet von dem lîbe,
who there parted from the body,

wer dâ ze ors ze scheffe entran,
who there on horse to ship escaped,

über al ich des niht kan 443,10
over all I of-that not can

iuch zeim ende bringen
you to-an end bring

und die nennen sunderlingen.
and them name separately.

wan der admirât wart sêre wunt
except the admiral was sorely wounded

geleit ûf sînen tragamunt,
laid on his transport,

der nie mêr schumphentiur enphienc. 443,15
who never more discomfiture received.

hœrt wer mit im ûz sturme gienc.
hear who with him out-of storm went.

von Bailîe Sînagûn,
of Bailie Sinagun,

und Bargis Purelles sun,
and Bargis Purel's son,

und des bruoder Tenebreiz.
and whose brother Tenebreiz.

443,20 gefurriert was ir sweiz.
furred was their sweat.

an diu schef truoc manc rîter guot
to the ships bore many-a knight good

geparriert sweiz unde bluot:
parti-colored sweat and blood:

diu kleider wurden dâ gesniten.
the clothes were there cut.

dâ wart niht langer dô gebiten,
there was not longer then waited,

443,25 mit fluht ein ende nam der strît.
with flight an end took the battle.

daz klagete al sîne kumenden zît
that lamented all his coming time

Terramêr der werde.
Terramer the worthy.

sus schiet von rœmscher erde
thus parted from Roman earth

der dâ vor dicke ûf Rôme sprach
he-who there before often on Rome spoke

ê daz diu schumpfentiure geschach.
before that the discomfiture happened.

444,1 Der goldes rîche Tedalûn
The of-gold rich Tedalun

und Terramêrs tohter sun
and Terramer's daughter's son

Poydjus von Frîende,
Poydjus of Friende,

ieweder sîne hende
each his hands

ûf der fluht geruorten sô wol, 444,5
on the flight stirred so well,

von ir verhe enphienc den zol
from their body received the toll

dennoch manec getoufter soldier.
still many-a baptized soldier.

ecidemôn daz tier
ecidemon the beast

in Poydjuses vanen lac:
in Poydjus's banner lay:

dô Tedalûn der flühte pflac, 444,10
when Tedalun the flight practiced,

er wolte des vanen niht langer pflegn
he would of-the banner not longer take-care

ûf sînen flühteclîchen wegn:
on his fleeing ways:

der tiure pfellel von Trîant,
the costly silk of Triant,

den Tedalûn fuort an der hant,
which Tedalun bore in the hand,

und der schaft lign alôê, 444,15
and the shaft wood of-aloes,

und daz sper geworht in Thasmê,
and the spear wrought in Thasme,

dâ mit enpfienc Gandalûz
there with received Gandaluz

eine sölhe tjost, sîns pluotes fluz
a such joust, his blood's flow

den tiuren pfellel gar begôz.
the costly silk wholly poured-over.

diu tjost wart hurteclîch sô grôz, 444,20
the joust became onrushingly so great,

dâ von der Champôneys lac tôt.
there from the Champagner lay dead.

daz selbe gelt hin wider bôt
the same payment back again offered

Rennwart der unverzagete
Rennwart the undaunted

ze fuoz snellîchen jagete,
on foot swiftly hunted,

444,25 Tedalûnen er resluoc,
Tedalun he slew,

der ime sturm manlîche truoc
who in-the storm manfully bore

sînes swestersunes vanen.
of-his sister's-son banner.

do begund er Poydjusen manen
then began he Poydjus to-urge

daz er wider kêrte an in.
that he back turned at him.

des tet er niht: daz lêrt in sin.
of-that did he not: that taught him sense.

The Spoils

XXXIX

The margrave has won the victory at great cost, and Rennewart sees the loss of the prince of Champagne. Men search the field for fathers and brothers. Bernart of Brubant blows a horn louder than Roland's Olifant. The poor grow rich from the heathens' camp, which holds wonders of food and drink from India to Arabia. Many drink away their sorrows until each thinks himself the only hero, and that night the heathen gods have little power on the field.

Rennwart den grôzen schaden sach, 445,1
Rennwart the great harm saw,

der an dem fürsten dâ geschach,
which on the prince there happened,

ûz Schampân dem gêrten,
out-of Champagne the honored-one,

und wie die sînen mêrten
and how the his-ones increased

ob im den jâmer alsô grôz. 445,5
over him the misery so great.

wart ie jâmer des genôz,
became ever misery of-that peer,

daz muost vil ougen arnen,
that must many eyes pay-for,

und ir herzen sich des warnen,
and their hearts themselves of-that prepare,

vil wazzers dar ze lîhen,
much water thither to lend,

und der vreuden sich verzîhen. 445,10
and the joy themselves renounce.

swâ sô werder tôte læge,
wherever so worthy dead-one should-lie,

wer dâ lachens pflæge?
who there of-laughing would-practice?

ungern ich iemen des dâ zige.
unwillingly I anyone of-that there would-accuse.

der marcrâve hete den sige
the margrave had the victory

445,15 mit grôzem schaden errungen
with great harm wrestled-won

und jâmers dâ betwungen
and with-misery there forced

manec getouftez herze.
many-a baptized heart.

der kristenlîche smerze
the Christian pain

was in sîn her geteilet.
was into his host divided.

445,20 vil wundn noch ungeheilet
many wounds still unhealed

die sînen fuorten ûfez wal.
the his-ones bore on-the slaughter-field.

dâ heten siuftebæren schal
there had sigh-bearing din

die minren und die mêrren.
the lesser and the greater.

het ich einen hêrren,
had I a lord,

445,25 vor sîme hazze selten vrî,
from his hatred seldom free,

ob ich im sturme wær dâ bî
if I in-the storm were there beside

dâ der sînen lîp verlüre,
where he his life should-lose,

ob man mich sæhe in jâmers küre,
if one me saw in misery's choice,

des müese ich trüglîche jehen:
of-that must I deceitfully declare:

daz moht aldâ niht geschehen.
that might there not happen.

Dâ was gewunnen und verlorn. 446,1
There was won and lost.

etslîche heten vreude erkorn:
some had joy chosen:

sô heten die andern jâmers hort.
so had the others misery's hoard.

daz was der site hie unt dort
that was the custom here and there

an den selben zîten 446,5
at the same times

ime her an allen sîten.
in-the host on all sides.

swen dâ leben liez der tôt,
whomever there live let the death,

swie grôz wart anders dâ des nôt,
however great became otherwise there his distress,

der hete sich selben funden.
he had himself self found.

ieslîcher sînen kunden 446,10
each his acquaintance

suochte ûf dem wal und ûf der slâ.
sought on the slaughter-field and on the track.

sô vant er sînen vater dâ,
so found he his father there,

sô vant der sînen bruoder hie:
so found that-one his brother here:

des pflâgen dise unde die:
of-that practiced these and those:

sô vant der herre sînen man. 446,15
so found the lord his man.

mêr vindet der wol suochen kan,
more finds he-who well seek can,

denn der suochens sich bewigt
than he-who of-seeking himself gives-up

und durch sîn trâcheit stille ligt.
and through his sloth still lies.

ob nu gar mîne sinne
if now wholly my senses

446,20 solten sprechen von gewinne,
should speak of gain,

waz manger rîcheit dâ bestuont,
what many-a wealth there remained,

mir wær diu zal dannoch unkuont.
to-me were the number still unknown.

dâ wurden de armen rîche,
there became the poor rich,

die dâ tâten dem gelîche
who there did to-that alike

446,25 daz si nemen wolten
that they take would

als si billîche solten.
as they rightly should.

der rîche, der arme, dirre unt der
the rich, the poor, this-one and that-one

vant mêr dan nâch sîns herzen ger.
found more than after his heart's desire.

ine bin niht derz iu sunder zelt,
I am not he-who-it to-you separately counts,

waz ieslîch hant dâ hât gewelt.
what each hand there has chosen.

Bernhart von Brubant 447,1
Bernhart of Brubant

blies ein horn, daz Olifant
blew a horn, that Olifant

an Ruolandes munde
at Roland's mouth

nie ze keiner stunde
never at any hour

an decheiner stat sô lûte erhal. 447,5
in any place so loud resounded.

daz kristen her het ûf dem wal
the Christian host had on the slaughter-field

beide freude unde klage.
both joy and lament.

nu was diu sunne an dem tage
now was the sun on the day

harte sêr ze tal gesigen,
very sorely to valley sunk,

manc getouftiu sêl hin ûf gestigen: 447,10
many-a baptized soul thither up climbed:

ez begunde et nâhen der naht.
it began just to-near the night.

wer in die spîse hête brâht
who to-them the food had brought

an manegem ringe schône?
in many-a ring fairly?

die von Samargône:
those of Samargone:

ûz Indyâ, von Trîant 447,15
out-of India, of Triant

man wunder dâ von spîse vant,
one wonder there of food found,

vil spîse ûz Alamansurâ:
much food out-of Alamansura:

vil spîse ûz Kânach vant man dâ,
much food out-of Kanach found one there,

vil spîse brâht ûz Suntîn:
much food brought out-of Suntin:

447,20 dâ muose ouch mêr der spîse sîn
there must also more of-the food be

von Todjerne und von Arâbî.
from Todjerne and from Arabia.

ob rœmscher keiser wæren drî,
if Roman emperors were three,

ieslîcher mit sunderher,
each with separate-host,

die heten vollecliche zer
they would-have fully provision

447,25 dâ funden ûf ir reise.
there found on their expedition.

vil spîse ûz Orkeise,
much food out-of Orkeise,

vil spîse ûz Adramahût.
much food out-of Adramahut.

dâ wart manec verhouwen hût
there was many-a hewn hide

mit unkunder spîse erschobn.
with unknown food stuffed.

sölhe herberge kunde ich lobn,
such lodging could I praise,

448,1 swenn ichz gerne tæte,
whenever I-it gladly should-do,

dâ ich funde alsölh geræte.
where I found all-such provision.

ine mac niht geben sundernamn
I may not give separate-names

ir spîse, dem wilden und dem zamn,
to-their food, to-the wild and to-the tame,

und ir trinken maneger slahte 448,5
and to-their drink of-many-a kind

von kostenlîcher ahte,
of costly esteem,

môraz, wîn, sinôpel.
moraz, wine, sinopel.

Kipper und Vinepôpel
Kipper and Vinepopel

hânt sô guoter trinken niht gewalt
have so good drink not power

als si dâ funden manecvalt. 448,10
as they there found manifold.

geleschet nâch der hitze
quenched after the heat

wart dâ maneger, daz sîn witze
was there many-a-one, that his wit

niht gein Salomône wac.
not against Solomon weighed.

dâ was ir naht unde ir tac
there was their night and their day

unglîch an der arbeit. 448,15
unlike in the toil.

etslîcher tranc daz gar sîn leit
some drank that wholly his sorrow

mit liebe nam ein ende.
with joy took an end.

swaz al der heiden hende
whatever all the heathens' hands

ime sturme heten im getân,
in-the storm had to-him done,

diu klage muost ein ende hân: 448,20
the lament must an end have:

in dûhte er hete si alle erslagn,
him seemed he had them all slain,

und daz alle helde zagn
and that all heroes cowards

wærn, wan sîn eines herze.
were, except his alone heart.

sîn selbes wunden smerze
his own wounds' pain

448,25 was im reht ein meien tou.
was to-him rightly a May's dew.

weder der noch dirre in rou,
neither that-one nor this-one him rued,

ez wær sîn vater oder sîn mâc:
it were his father or his kinsman:

ern ruochte wer dâ tôt belac,
he-not cared who there dead lay,

ern ruochte ouch wer dâ lebte.
he-not cared also who there lived.

sus der nâch prîse strebte.
thus he-who after prize strove.

449,1 Die de wirtschaft dâ besâzen,
Those-who the hospitality there occupied,

den was almeistic lâzen
to-them was mostly letting-blood

zer âdr od sus zem verhe.
at-the vein or thus at-the body.

vant man dâ rede twerhe,
found one there speech crosswise,

449,5 diu wart smorgens lîhte sleht.
it became in-the-morning easily straight.

dâ hete der hêrre und der kneht
there had the lord and the servant

so genuoc daz in niht gebrach.
so enough that to-them nothing lacked.

daz was en tiuschen guot gemach:
that was in German good ease:

en franzoys hetens eise.
in French had-they ease.

hie der kurteise
here the courteous

und dort der ungehofte man,
and there the uncourtly man,

ieslîcher dâ genuoc gewan
each there enough gained

von rîcheit die si funden.
of wealth which they found.

etslîcher grôze wunden
some great wounds

ahte als einer brâmen kraz.
reckoned as a bramble's scratch.

die heiden von ir koufschaz
the heathens of their merchandise

heten vil gegebn ze zolle.
had much given as toll.

ir werder got Apolle,
their worthy god Apolle,

wolt er zürnen, unde ir admirât,
would he be-angry, and their admiral,

des heten dise guoten rât,
of-that had these good counsel,

swenne si ir hulde enbæren,
whenever they their goodwill lacked,

ob si in ir hazze wæren.
whether they in their hatred were.

Mahumet und Tervigant,
Mahumet and Tervigant,

Kâhûn, swie si wârn genant,
Kahun, however they were named,

al der heidenschefte gote,
all the heathendom's gods,

ûf dem wal die naht wart zir gebote
on the slaughter-field the night was at-their command

lützel dâ gestanden.
little there stood.

in toufpæren landen
in baptism-bearing lands

hânt si halt noch vil kleinen prîs:
have they even still very little prize:

in diende ouch wênc der markîs.
to-them served also little the marquis.

The Margrave's Lament

XL

Jesus gives the margrave Gyburc and the land, and Mile is avenged. The poet asks whether it is sin to slay like cattle those who never received baptism, and calls it great sin, since they are God's handiwork. At dawn the Christian dead are gathered, the poor buried and the noble embalmed with balsam to be carried home. The princes prepare to move camp, and the margrave laments that he cannot find Rennewart, who saved his land and his kin.

Jêsus mit der hœhsten hant
Jesus with the highest hand

die clâren Gyburc und daz lant
the bright Gyburc and the land

im des tages im sturme gap:
to-him of-the day in-the storm gave:

er brâht den prîs unz in sîn grap,
he brought the prize until into his grave,

daz er nimmer mêr wart sigelôs,
that he never more became victoryless,

sît er ûf Alitschanz verlôs
since he on Alitschanz lost

Vivîanzen sîner swester kint,
Vivianz his sister's child,

und der mêr die noch vor gote sint
and of-them more who still before God are

die endelôsen wîle.
the endless while.

sîner swester sun Mîle 450,10
his sister's son Mile

wart wol gerochen an dem tage.
was well avenged on the day.

maneger zunge sprâche klage
of-many-a tongue languages lament

da'rwurben vil ze klagenne
there-won much to lament

und dâ heime nôt ze sagenne.
and there at-home distress to tell.

die nie toufes künde 450,15
those-who never of-baptism knowledge

enpfiengen, ist daz sünde,
received, is that sin,

daz man die sluoc alsam ein vihe?
that one them slew like a cattle?

grôzer sünde ich drumbe gihe:
great sin I for-it declare:

ez ist gar gotes hantgetât,
it is wholly God's handiwork,

zwuo und sibenzec sprâche, die er hât. 450,20
two and seventy languages, which he has.

der admirât Terramêr
the admiral Terramer

mit manegem rîchem künege hêr
with many-a rich king lordly

wolte bringen al die sprâche
would bring all the languages

ûf den stuol hinz Ache
on the throne to Aachen

450,25 und dane ze Rôme füeren.
and thence to Rome lead.

si kundenz anders rüeren
they could-it otherwise stir

mit den ecken, die daz werten
with the edges, who that defended

und ûf ir verch sô zerten
and on their life so spent

dês nu ir sêle sint vil lieht:
of-that now their souls are very bright:

sine ahtent ûf kumber niht.
they reckon on affliction not.

451,1 Smorgens do ez begunde tagen,
In-the-morning when it began to-dawn,

an manegen hûfen getragen
on many heaps borne

wart diu reine kristenlîche diet,
was the pure Christian people,

den ir sælde daz geriet
to-whom their fortune that counseled

451,5 daz si ime sturme ir lîp verlurn.
that they in-the storm their life lost.

die hôhen sie sunder kurn.
the high-ones they apart chose.

der fürste, der grâve, der barûn,
the prince, the count, the baron,

swer durch Heimrîches sun
whoever for Heimrich's son

dâ was belegen ame rê,
there was laid-low on-the bier,

ir necheines sêl wirt nimmer wê. 451,10
of-them any's soul becomes never woe.

die armen wurden dâ begrabn,
the poor were there buried,

und die edelen ûf pâre gehabn,
and the noble on bier held,

die si ze lande wolten
whom they to land would

füeren. waz si dolten
lead. what they suffered

jâmers, dô man schouwen 451,15
of-misery, when one behold

si muose alsô verhouwen!
them must so hewn-up!

swâ man sach ir wunden,
wherever one saw their wounds,

die wurden an den stunden
they were in the hours

mit balsem gestiuret:
with balsam supplied:

rîchiu pflaster wol getiuret, 451,20
rich plasters well enhanced,

müzzel und zerbenzerî,
muscat and zerbenzeri,

arômât und amber was derbî.
aromatics and amber was thereby.

swâ der pflaster keinez lac,
wherever of-the plasters any lay,

dâ was immer süezer smac.
there was ever sweet smell.

451,25 der balsem lât si fûlen niht:
the balsam lets them rot not:

swelhe lîch man sô besiht,
whatever corpse one so beholds,

gebalsemt fleisch hût unde bein,
balsamed flesh hide and bone,

den sint tûsent jâr al ein,
to-them are thousand years all one,

als ob si læge d'êrsten naht.
as if it lay the-first night.

sölh art hât balsemlîchiu maht.
such nature has balsamic might.

452,1 Die fürsten und ir hôhen man
The princes and their high men

sich bereiten umb ein kêren dan
themselves prepared for a turning away

mit gemeinem râte.
with common counsel.

si zogten niht ze drâte:
they drew not too quickly:

452,5 ir tagereise was niht lanc.
their day's-journey was not long.

etslîchen manec wunde twanc
some many-a wound forced

samfte dan ze rîten.
gently away to ride.

wer solt dâ langer bîten?
who should there longer wait?

si muosen dannen scheiden.
they must thence part.

452,10 jâ lac sô vil der heiden
yes lay so many of-the heathens

dâ der sturm was geschehen:
where the storm was happened:

si muosen anderswâ besehen
they must elsewhere look-for

herberge ein lützel dannen baz,
lodging a little thence better,

dâ wær von bluote niht sô naz.
where were of blood not so wet.

der fürste ûz Provenzâlen lant 452,15
the prince out-of Provençals' land

klagete sêr daz er niht vant
lamented sorely that he not found

sînen vriunt Rennewart:
his friend Rennewart:

im was leit diu dannenvart.
to-him was grievous the going-away.

er sprach 'in hân noch niht vernumn
he spoke 'I have still not heard

war mîn zeswiu hant sî kumn. 452,20
where my right hand be come.

ich mein in der ze bêder sît
I mean him who on both sides

den prîs behielt, dô diu zît
the prize kept, when the time

kom und der urteillîche tac,
came and the judgment's day,

daz ich von im des siges pflac,
that I from him the victory had,

und von der hœhsten hende. 452,25
and from the highest hand.

alrêrst mîn ellende
first-of-all my exile

ist grœzer denne ich wære aldâ
is greater than I were there

in der stat ze Siglimessâ
in the city at Siglimessa

und dan verkouft ze Thasmê.
and then sold at Thasme.

mirst hie vor jâmer als wê.
to-me-is here for misery so woe.

453,1 Ey starker lîp, clâriu jugent,
Ah strong body, bright youth,

wil mich dîn manlîchiu tugent
(if)-will me thy manly virtue

und dîn süez einvaltekeit
and thy sweet simplicity

und dîn prîs hôh unde breit
and thy prize high and broad

453,5 dir niht dienen lâzen,
to-thee not serve let,

sô bin ich der verwâzen.
so am I the accursed.

hât dich der tôt von mir getân?
has thee the death from me done?

soltu nu niht mîn dienest hân,
shalt-thou now not my service have,

und al daz teilen mac mîn hant?
and all that share may my hand?

453,10 wan du'rvæhte mir diz lant,
except-for thou-hadst-won for-me this land,

du behabtes hie mîn selbes lîp
thou kept here my own body

und Gyburge daz clâre wîp.
and Gyburc the bright woman.

wan dîn ellen ûz erkorn,
except-for thy valor out chosen,

mîn alter vater wære verlorn:
my old father would-be lost:

453,15 ieslîch mîn helfære,
each my helper,

wan du, verloren wære,
except thou, lost were,

al mîne mâge und mîne bruoder.
all my kinsmen and my brothers.

du wære mînes kieles ruoder
thou wert my keel's rudder

und der rehte segelwint,
and the right sail-wind,

dâ von al Heimrîches kint 453,20
there from all Heimrich's children

hânt gankert rœmische erde.
have anchored Roman earth.

in alsô hôhem werde
in so high worth

kom nie mannes prîs geswebt
came never man's prize hovering

bî der diet diu hiute lebt.
among the people who today lives.

du machtes mîne mâge quît. 453,25
thou madest my kinsmen quit.

du væhte an der selben zît
thou foughtest at the same time

ûf dem mere und ûf dem lande.
on the sea and on the land.

mîn triwe het des schande,
my faithfulness had of-that shame,

ob niht mîn herze kunde klagn
if not my heart could lament

und der munt nâch dir von flüste sagn.
and the mouth after thee of loss tell.

Du bræht der Franzoyser her 454,1
Thou broughtest the Frenchmen's host

mir ze helfe um die gotes wer,
to-me to help for the God's defense,

die ûf der fluht wârn gesehen.
who on the flight were seen.

ich mac wol dînem ellen jehen
I may well to-thy valor declare

454,5 daz alle getouften liute
that all baptized people

dich solten klagen hiute
thee should lament today

und dich fürbaz klagen al die zît
and thee further lament all the time

die got der werlt ze lebenne gît.
which God to-the world to live gives.

du hâst dem toufe prîs bejagt.
thou hast for-the baptism prize hunted-down.

454,10 vil manegiu jâr man noch sagt
very many years one still says

wie du væhte ûf Alitschanz.
how thou foughtest on Alitschanz.

Mîle unde Vivîanz,
Mile and Vivianz,

duo ich iuch und al mîn her verlôs,
when I you and all my host lost,

sô grôze flust ich dâ niht kôs.
so great loss I there not saw.

Bernart's Rebuke

XLI

The margrave prays that his loss be his hell-burning and God guard him at the Judgment. He counts it greater than Charles's loss of Roland, Olivier, and Turpin, and recalls that the troubled once found help at his hand. Bernart of Brubant rebukes him for weeping like a woman and a child: Rennewart freed Bertram and seven princes from irons, and they must seek him and a cleaner camp. If he is taken, twenty or more captive lords are pledges, and the margrave should claim every captive heathen as a pledge for his land.

got, hât dîn erbärme kraft, 454,15
God, (if)-has thy mercy strength,

al d'engele in ir geselleschaft
all the-angels in their company

müezen mîne flust erkennen.
may my loss know.

diz sî mîn hellebrennen,
this be my hell-burning,

daz diu sêle mîn decheine nôt
that the soul mine no distress

fürbaz enpfâhe, sît mir tôt 454,20
further may-receive, since to-me dead

des lîbes vreude ist immer mêr.
of-the body joy is ever more.

Altissimus, sît sölhiu sêr
Altissimus, since such sores

mir hânt gegebn die heiden,
to-me have given the heathens,

nu bewar mich vor dem scheiden
now guard me from the parting

von dir am urteillîchen tage, 454,25
from thee on-the judgment's day,

und vor der endelôsen klage
and from the endless lament

der du niht pfligest ze wenden.
which thou not art-wont to turn.

dîn erbarme müeze senden
thy mercy may send

mir sô trôstlîchen trôst,
to-me so comforting comfort,

des diu sêle ûz banden werde erlôst.
by-which the soul out-of bonds become released.

455,1 Man mag an mîme helme sehen
One may on my helm see

daz ime sturme ist geschehen
that in-the storm is happened

ûf mich manc ellenthafter slac:
on me many-a valiant blow:

ouwê daz ich niht tôt belac
alas that I not dead lay

455,5 von des admirâtes handen!
by the admiral's hands!

do der keiser Ruolanden
when the emperor Roland

verlôs von Marssiljen her,
lost through Marssilje's host,

und Oliviern der wol ze wer
and Olivier who well on defense

was, und [der] bischof Turpîn,
was, and [the] bishop Turpin,

455,10 noch ist diu flust grœzer mîn.
still is the loss greater mine.

ist mich von Karle ûf erborn
is to-me from Charles up born

daz ich sus vil hân verlorn?
that I thus much have lost?

der was mîn hêrre und niht mîn mâc,
he was my lord and not my kinsman,

dechein sîn sippe an mir lac:
no his kinship on me lay:

von wem ist mich ûf gerbet
from whom is to-me up inherited

daz ich bin sus verderbet?
that I am thus ruined?

waz touc mir nu fürsten name?
what avails to-me now prince's name?

mîn tôtiu vreude, niht diu lame,
my dead joy, not the lame-one,

ime herzen ist verswunden.
in-the heart is vanished.

die vremden und die kunden,
the strangers and the acquaintances,

von den bin ich gunêret,
by them am I dishonored,

sît mir sus ist verkêret
since to-me thus is turned

al mîns hôhen muotes kraft.
all my high spirit's strength.

manec trûrec man kumberhaft
many-a sorrowful man troubled

hie vreude enpfienc von mîner hant,
here joy received from my hand,

dô ich der Provenzâlen lant
when I the Provençals' land

mit grôzen vreuden hie besaz:
with great joys here possessed:

jâ dorfte ninder fürbaz
yes needed nowhere further

der kumberhafte ellende,
the troubled exile,

niht wan gein mîner hende.
not but toward my hand.

456,1 Mîner flust maht du dich schamn,
Of-my loss mayest thou thyself be-ashamed,

der meide kint. in dîme namn
the maiden's child. in thy name

was mîn verch, mîn habe geveilet.
was my life, my possessions offered-for-sale.

diu lücke ist ungeheilet,
the gap is unhealed,

456,5 die mir jâmer durchez herze schôz.
which to-me misery through-the heart shot.

stêt dîn tugent vor wanke blôz,
(if)-stands thy virtue of wavering bare,

du solt an mir niht wenken
thou shalt on me not waver

und mîne flust bedenken,
and my loss consider,

sît entwarf dîn selbes hant
since designed thy own hand

456,10 daz der vriunt vriundinne vant
that the friend a-beloved found

an dem arme sîn durch minne.
on the arm his for love.

reht manlîche sinne
right manly senses

dienent ûf wîplîchen lôn.
serve on womanly reward.

manegen sperkraches dôn
many-a spear-crack's tone

hân ich gehôrt umb ein wîp, 456,15
have I heard for a woman,

diu nu leider mînen lîp
who now alas my body

mac dirre flust ergetzen niht:
may for-this loss compensate not:

mîn herze iedoch ir minne giht.
my heart yet her love declares.

wan dîn helfe unde ir trôst,
except-for thy help and her comfort,

ich wære immer unrelôst 456,20
I were ever unreleased

vor jâmers gebende:
from misery's bonds:

aller künege hende
all kings' hands

möhten mit ir rîcheit
might with their wealth

niht erwenden mir mîn leit.'
not turn-away to-me my sorrow.'

dô der fluz sînr ougen regen 456,25
when the flow of-his eyes' rain

het der zäher sô vil gephlegen
had of-the tears so many had

daz ir zal was umbekant,
that their number was unknown,

dô kom Bernart von Brubant:
then came Bernart of Brubant:

der strâfte in unde nam in abe
he rebuked him and took him off

von sîner grôzen ungehabe.
from his great ill-bearing.

457,1 Do der herzoge in trûrec sach,
When the duke him sorrowful saw,

zem marcrâven er dô sprach
to-the margrave he then spoke

‘du bist niht Heimrîches suon,
‘thou art not Heimrich’s son,

wiltu nâch wîbes siten tuon.
wilt-thou after woman’s customs do.

457,5 grôz schade bedarf genendekeit.
great harm needs boldness.

über al diz her wirt ze breit
over all this host becomes too broad

der jâmer durch dich einen,
the misery through thee alone,

wiltu hie selbe weinen,
wilt-thou here thyself weep,

reht als ein kint nâch der brust.
right as a child after the breast.

457,10 süeze vinden, manege sûre flust,
sweet finding, many-a sour loss,

niht anders erbes muge wir hân.
not other heritage may we have.

du selp sibende starker man,
thou thyself seventh strong man,

an den sô hôher art ist schîn,
on whom so high nature is seen,

wir müezen landes hêrren sîn:
we must land’s lords be:

457,15 wer liez uns lant und lande hort
who left us land and land’s hoard

âne bluot und swertes ort?
without blood and sword’s point?

Tybaldes lant und des wîp
Tybalt's land and his woman

du hâst; dar umbe manegen lîp
thou hast; there for many-a body

noch gein uns wâgen sol sîn vâr.
still against us wager shall his peril.

du weist wol, über sehs jâr 457,20
thou knowest well, over six years

sprach al der heiden admirât
spoke all the heathens' admiral

sîn samenunge, diu nu hât
his gathering, which now has

unser verch hie niht gespart.
our life here not spared.

um dînen vriwent Rennewart
for thy friend Rennewart

mirz herze und d'ougen jâmerc sint: 457,25
to-me-the heart and the-eyes sorrowful are:

wand errlôste ouch mir mîn kint,
for he-released also for-me my child,

den pfallenzgrâven Bertram,
the count-palatine Bertram,

und siben fürsten er dâ nam
and seven princes he there took

in prîsûn ûz îsernbant,
in prison out-of iron-band,

aldâ er si beslozzen vant.
where he them locked-in found.

Der rîche, der arme, ietweder giht, 458,1
The rich, the poor, each declares,

unser leger sî hie enwiht.
our camp be here nothing.

wol ûf, herbergen von dem wal.
well up, lodge from the slaughter-field.

wir sulen an bergen unde an tal
we shall on mountains and in valley

458,5 Rennwarten suochen heizen,
Rennwart seek bid,

und ûf schœnem velde erbeizen,
and on fair field dismount,

dâ niht sô vil der tôten lige.
where not so many of-the dead lie.

wir hân mit schaden disen sige
we have with harm this victory

errungen gein der überkraft
wrestled-won against the over-strength

458,10 an stolzer werden heidenschaft.
on proud worthy heathendom.

nu haben manlîchen muot!
now have manly spirit!

nâch dem gelîch denn maneger tuot,
after that alike than many-a-one does,

den hie vil kumbers twinget
whom here much affliction forces

und ouch mit jâmer ringet.
and also with misery wrestles.

458,15 wa ervaht ie fürste dîn genôz
where fought-out ever prince thy peer

schumpfentiure alsô grôz?
discomfiture so great?

diu ist sît Adâmes zît
it is since Adam's time

alsô breit und alsô wît
so broad and so wide

an decheiner stat vor uns geschehen.
in no place before us happened.

wir muosen halt die heiden sehen 458,20
we must even the heathens see

ûf ir fluht gar unverzagt:
on their flight wholly undaunted:

waz ob uns ûf dem nâhjagt
what if to-us on the pursuit

Rennwart ist ab gevangen?
Rennwart is off captured?

ist ez im sus ergangen,
(if)-is it to-him thus gone,

da engegen hab wir gæbez pfant. 458,25
there against have we current pledge.

gevangen ist in Larkant
captured is in Larkant

der künec von Scandinâvîâ,
the king of Scandinavia,

der wol ze wer hielt aldâ.
who well on defense held there.

wir hân zweinzic ode mêr
we have twenty or more

hôher künege und fürsten hêr,
high kings and princes lordly,

der etslîcher ist sô wert, 459,1
of-whom some is so worthy,

des Terramêr hin wider gert:
whom Terramer back again desires:

gein den wirt Rennewart wol quît.
against them becomes Rennewart well quit.

nu soltu werben (des ist zît)
now shalt-thou strive (of-that is time)

daz man dir antwurte 459,5
that one to-thee hand-over

die ûf velde unde in furte,
those-who on field and in ford,

ûf dem mer in al den schiffen,
on the sea in all the ships,

der heiden sî begriffen.
of-the heathens be seized.

ze scherme dîme lande
for protection to-thy land

459,10 soltu gern alsölher pfande.
shalt-thou desire all-such pledges.

gich, dun wellst ir schatzes niht.
declare, thou want of-their treasure not.

ieslîch fürste hie wol siht
each prince here well sees

welch nôt dich darzuo dwinge.
which distress thee thereto forces.

nu rît an alle ir ringe.
now ride to all their rings.

459,15 dîn vater und die bruoder dîn
thy father and the brothers thine

sulen mit dir an der rede sîn:
shall with thee in the speech be:

wir hân ir doch daz mêrre teil.
we have of-them yet the greater part.

nu wis mit andæhte geil:
now be with devotion glad:

got hât dich hie wol gêret
God has thee here well honored

459,20 und dînen prîs gemêret.'
and thy prize increased.'

The Captives

XLII

The margrave answers Bernart that this victory is a defeat in his heart, his second day of loss after Alischans, but that a captain must seem glad. The princes surrender their captives, twenty-five lords of lands among them. He honors Matribleiz as kinsman to his wife and asks him to find and name the slain kings, so that none is left to wolves and ravens and Gyburc's kin are embalmed and laid on royal biers as if each had died in his own realm. Matribleiz falls at his feet and thanks him.

Willalm an Bernarten sach:
Willalm at Bernart looked:

zem herzogen er dô sprach
to-the duke he then spoke

'got weiz wol waz er hât getân.
'God knows well what he has done.

nu geloube, manlîch wîser man,
now believe, manly wise man,

ob du sîst sô gehiure, 459,25
if thou be so gentle,

dirre sige mir schumpfentiure
this victory to-me discomfiture

hât ervohten in dem herzen mîn,
has fought-out in the heart mine,

sît ich guoter vriunt muoz âne sîn,
since I of-good friends must without be,

an den al mîn vreude lac.
on whom all my joy lay.

ôwê tag, und ander tac!
alas day, and second day!

Ein tac, dô mir Vivîans 460,1
One day, when to-me Vivians

wart erslagen ûf Alischans,
was slain on Alischans,

selbe sibende fürste, und al mîn her,
himself seventh prince, and all my host,

wan daz ich selbe entreit mit wer.
except that I myself escaped with defense.

460,5 mîn bestiu helfe aldâ beleip.
my best help there remained.

diu grôze flust mich dar zuo treip
the great loss me there to drove

daz ich dîne genâde suochte,
that I thy grace sought,

und maneges der des ruochte
and of-many-a-one who of-that cared

daz er sîn triwe erkante
that he his faithfulness acknowledged

460,10 und in mîn helfe ernante.
and him my help named.

gestern was mîn ander tac.
yesterday was my second day.

von den heiden ich wol sprechen mac,
of the heathens I well say may,

daz mîn vreude ist verzinset dran,
that my joy is paid-as-interest thereon,

swaz der mîn herze ie gewan.
whatever of-it my heart ever gained.

460,15 iedoch stêt ez mir alsô:
yet stands it to-me so:

ich muoz gebâren als ich vrô
I must bear-myself as-if I glad

sî, des ich leider niht enbin.
be, which I alas not am.

ez ist des houbtmannes sin,
it is the captain's sense,

daz er genendeclîche lebe
that he boldly may-live

und sîme volke trœsten gebe. 460,20
and to-his people comfort may-give.

du solt mit mir rîten
thou shalt with me ride

inz her an allen sîten.
into-the host on all sides.

sô nu geherberget wirt,
when now lodged becomes,

ich getrûwe im wol daz niht verbirt
I trust to-him well that not refrains

keins ringes hêrre, erne gebe 460,25
of-any ring lord, unless-he give

mir swaz heidenschaft dran lebe.'
to-me whatever of-heathendom therein lives.'

si riten unde erwurben gar
they rode and obtained wholly

swaz ûz al der heiden schar
whatever out-of all the heathens' company

der hôhen dâ gevangen was,
of-the high-ones there captured was,

daz mans im brâhte ûf bluomen gras
that one-it to-him brought on flowers' grass

für Heimrîches preimerûn: 461,1
before Heimrich's pavilion:

der behielt se sîme sun.
he kept them for-his son.

Willehalm der markîs
Willehalm the marquis

moht des jehen für hôhen prîs:
might of-that declare for high prize:

er het ze sînen handen
he had at his hands

swaz ûz al der heiden landen
whatever out-of all the heathens' lands

der hôhen was gevangen dâ.
of-the high-ones was captured there.

der künec von Scandinâvîâ
the king of Scandinavia

was wol von sîner tugende erkant.
was well for his virtue known.

al der heiden sunderlant
all the heathens' separate-lands

behalten heten ninder wîp,
kept had nowhere a-woman,

diu ie sô kürlîchen lîp
who ever so choice body

sît Even zît gebære.
since Eve's time should-bear.

daz wârn von dem diu mære.
that were of him the tidings.

der marcrâf nam des sicherheit:
the margrave took of-him surrender:

die andern wurden al bereit
the others were all ready

beslozzen în îsernbant.
locked into iron-band.

ze landes hêrren ir bekant
as land's lords of-them known

warn fünf und zweinzec mit der zal.
were five and twenty by the number.

dô si entwichen von dem wal,
when they withdrew from the slaughter-field,

si wârn ergriffen an dem mer
they were seized at the sea

bî ir admirâtes wer.
by their admiral's defense.

mit zuht des marcrâven munt
with courtesy the margrave's mouth

sprach 'mir ist ein dinc wol kunt
spoke 'to-me is one thing well known

an iu, künec Matribleiz, 461,25
of you, king Matribleiz,

daz ich die wâren sippe weiz
that I the true kinship know

zwischen iu und dem wîbe mîn:
between you and the woman mine:

durch si sult ir hie gêret sîn
for her shall you here honored be

von allen den diechs mag erbiten.
by all those whom-I may obtain.

ir habt mit werdeclîchen siten
you have with worthy customs

iwer zît gelebt sô schône, 462,1
your time lived so fairly,

daz nie houbt under krône
that never head under crown

ob küneges herzen wart erkant,
above king's heart was known,

den beiden vor ûz wære benant
to-whom both before out were named

sô manec hôhlîcher prîs. 462,5
so many-a lofty prize.

ich mag iuch lobn in allen wîs,
I may you praise in all ways,

zer manheit und zer triuwe,
for-the manhood and for-the faithfulness,

und zer milte ân riuwe,
and for-the generosity without rue,

und zer stæte diu niht wenken kan.
and for-the constancy which not waver can.

462,10 ich künd iu, wol gelobter man,
I make-known to-you, well praised man,

mînen willen, des ich bite:
my will, of-which I ask:

ich getrûwe iu wol, ir sît dermite.
I trust you well, you are therewith.

nemt dirre gevangen liute ein teil,
take of-these captive people a part,

die ûf ir eit und ûf ir heil
who on their oath and on their salvation

462,15 niht wan die rehten wârheit sagen,
nothing but the right truth say,

swaz hie künege lige erslagen,
whatever here of-kings lie slain,

daz ir die suochet ûz dem wal
that you them seek out-of the slaughter-field

und rehte nennet über al
and rightly name over all

beide ir namen unde ir lant.
both their names and their land.

462,20 die sol man heben al zehant
them shall one lift all at-once

schône von der erden,
fairly from the earth,

daz se iht ze teile werden
that they at-all as share become

decheime wolf, decheime rabn.
to-no wolf, to-no raven.

wir sulen si werdeclîcher habn
we shall them more-worthily have

durch die diu von in ist erborn: 462,25
for her who from them is born:

swaz Gyburg mâge ist hie verlorn,
whatever Gyburg's kinsmen is here lost,

die sol man arômâten,
them shall one embalm,

mit balsem wol berâten,
with balsam well provided,

und bâren küneclîche,
and bier royally,

als ob in sîme rîche
as if in his realm

dâ heime ieslîcher wære tôt.' 463,1
there at-home each were dead.'

Matribleiz zehant sich bôt
Matribleiz at-once himself offered

ze tal gein sînen fuozen nider.
to valley toward his feet down.

der wart schier ûf gehaben sider.
he was soon up lifted since.

dô danct er dem markîs, 463,5
then thanked he the marquis,

und sprach alsô, daz al sîn prîs
and spoke so, that all his prize

mit der tât wære beslozzen,
with the deed were locked-in,

und sîn triwe mit lobe begozzen,
and his faithfulness with praise poured-over,

des sîn sælde immer blüete
of-which his fortune ever should-bloom

und sîn unverswigeniu güete. 463,10
and his unconcealed goodness.

Matribleiz Sent Home

XLIII

Matribleiz says that had the heathens defended themselves better, more would have been saved; he was never born for flight and was taken fighting. The margrave tells of a pavilion with twenty-three crowned dead on biers and gives balsam, mules, and men to bear the dead kings to Terramer, whom he would serve in all things but forsaking God, his baptism, and his wife. He commends Matribleiz to God and sends him with an escort and the dead kings out of Provence.

Matribleiz sprach aber mêr
Matribleiz spoke again more

'unser wer und unser gote hêr
'our defense and our gods lordly

half niht, wirn müesen unverholen
helped not, unless-we must unconcealed

die wâren schumpfentiure dolen.
the true discomfiture suffer.

463,15 daz unser fluht ie wart gesehen,
that our flight ever was seen,

des mac mîn herze unsanfte jehen.
of-that may my heart painfully declare.

mîn werder got Kâhûn wol weiz,
my worthy god Kahun well knows,

sîn dienstman Matribleiz
his service-man Matribleiz

wart zer fluht nie geborn:
was for-the flight never born:

463,20 ich was ie wol zer wer erkorn,
I was ever well for-the defense chosen,

giht es daz getoufte her.
declares it the baptized host.

ich wart ergriffen an der wer
I was seized in the defense

und in Larkant gedrungen,
and into Larkant pressed,

der fluht gar unbetwungen.
to-the flight wholly unforced.

mîn eines rüemen hilfet niht, 463,25
my alone boasting helps not,

sît man mich hie gevangen siht.
since one me here captive sees.

het wir uns alle baz gewert,
had we ourselves all better defended,

des wære der heiden mêr ernert,
then would-be of-the heathens more saved,

und der admirât sô hinnen kumn,
and the admiral so hence come,

daz im niht prîses wære genumn.'
that from-him no prize were taken.'

Der marcrâve tet im kunt 464,1
The margrave made to-him known

um einen senlîchen funt,
of a longing find,

den er hete funden
which he had found

'dô was überwunden
'then was overcome

an dem mer der Kanabêus suon. 464,5
at the sea the Kanabeus's son.

swer dô mit nemen iht wolde tuon,
whoever then with taking anything would do,

daz tet wol ieslîch kristen hant.
that did well each Christian hand.

an sîme ringe ich stênde vant
at his ring I standing found

ein preimerûn hôh unde wît
a pavilion high and wide

464,10 gar von blankem samît.
wholly of white samite.

ûz der heiden ê ein priester grâ
out-of the heathens' law a priest gray

was dar under meister dâ.
was there under master there.

ich was durch mînen helm versnitn:
I was through my helm cut:

al tewende ich drunder kom geritn,
all dying I there-under came ridden,

464,15 niht durh nemens vâre.
not for taking's intent.

ich vant drî und zweinzec bâre,
I found three and twenty biers,

als manegen tôten künec dâ ligen,
as many dead kings there lie,

gekrœnt. ir namen sint unverswigen:
crowned. their names are unconcealed:

ze ende ieslîcher bâre drum
at end each bier's end

464,20 hât ir epitafîum
has their epitaph

an breiten tavelen, die sint golt.
on broad tablets, which are gold.

ich geloube im wol, er wære in holt,
I believe him well, he were to-them devoted,

swer die koste durch si gap.
whoever the cost for them gave.

dar an was ieslîch buochstap
there on was each letter

mit edelen steinen verwiert, 464,25
with noble stones inlaid,

al die bâre wol geziert.
all the biers well adorned.

man list dâ kuntlîche
one reads there plainly

ir namen unde ir rîche,
their names and their realms,

wannen ieslîcher was erborn,
whence each was born,

und wie er hât den lîp verlorn.
and how he has the life lost.

Mich gerou daz ich dar under was. 465,1
Me rued that I there under was.

idoch ein teil ich dâ las,
yet a part I there read,

und vrâgte den priester mære,
and asked the priest tidings,

von wem diu koste wære.
from whom the cost were.

des jah er ûf den admirât. 465,5
of-that declared he on the admiral.

mîn van ez dâ beschirmet hât:
my banner it there sheltered has:

den hiez ich stôzen derfür,
it bade I shove there-before,

und bat sîn pflegen, daz iht verlür
and bade of-it take-care, that not lose

der priester dar unde.
the priest there under.

sölh vinden schuof mîn wunde. 465,10
such finding made my wound.

ich sach dâ manec balsemvaz.
I saw there many-a balsam-vessel.

hêr künec, ich sagez iu umbe daz:
lord king, I tell-it to-you for that:

ob wir balsem sulen hân,
if we balsam shall have,

den sol iu der priester lân,
it shall to-you the priest leave,

465,15 und dar zuo swaz dar under sî:
and there to whatever there under be:

daz sî der pflege vor mir nu vrî.
that be of-the care from me now free.

nu füert die tôten werden
now lead the dead worthy-ones

von der toufpæren erden,
from the baptism-bearing earth,

dâ man si schône nach ir ê
where one them fairly after their law

465,20 bestate. ich sol iu schaffen ê
may-bury. I shall for-you make before

starke mûle die si tragen,
strong mules which them bear,

künege die hie sint erslagen;
kings who here are slain;

und liute die der bâre pflegn,
and people who of-the biers take-care,

ûf brükke, in furte, und an den wegn.
on bridge, in ford, and on the ways.

465,25 ob irs geruochet unde gert,
if you-it deign and desire,

sô sît noch mêr von mir gewert.
so be still more by me granted.

ir sult hie unbetwungen sîn.
you shall here unforced be.

sprechet selbe: swaz ist mîn,
speak yourself: whatever is mine,

daz sult ir nemen al bereit.
that shall you take all ready.

sît ledec iwer sicherheit.
be free of-your surrender.

Hêr künec, als ich iuch ê bat, 466,1
Lord king, as I you before bade,

nu rîtet ûf die walstat
now ride on the battlefield

und ûf die bluotvarwen slâ.
and on the blood-colored track.

swaz ir künege vindet dâ,
whatever you of-kings find there,

die bringet Terramêre, 466,5
them bring to-Terramer,

der die grôzen überkêre
who the great overturn

tet âne mîne schulde,
did without my guilt,

des genâde und des hulde
whose grace and whose goodwill

ich gerne gediende, torst ichs biten,
I gladly would-serve, dared I-it ask,

swie er gebüte, wan mit den siten 466,10
however he commanded, except with the customs

daz ich den hœhsten got verküre
that I the highest god should-forswear

und daz ich mînen touf verlüre
and that I my baptism should-lose

und wider gæb mîn clârez wîp.
and back should-give my bright woman.

für wâr ich liez ê manegen lîp
for true I let before many-a body

466,15 verhouwen als ist hie gesehen.
hewn-up as is here seen.

hêr künec, ir muget im dort wol jehen,
lord king, you may to-him there well declare,

ich ensendes im durch forhte niht,
I send-them to-him for fear not,

swaz man hie tôter künege siht:
whatever one here of-dead kings sees:

ich êre dermit et sînen art,
I honor therewith just his kind,

466,20 des mir ze kürzwîle wart
from-which to-me for pastime came

an mînem arme ein süezez teil,
on my arm a sweet part,

dâ von ich trûric unde geil
there from I sorrowful and glad

sît dicke wart, sô kom der tac
since often became, so came the day

daz Tybalt gein mir strîtes pflac.
that Tybalt against me battle practiced.

466,25 vor dem möht ich hie wol genesen,
before him might I here well survive,

swenn ze Baldac wolte wesen
whenever at Baldac would be

bî dem bâruc der admirât,
beside the baruc the admiral,

der mich nu hie gesuochet hât.
who me now here sought has.

ich bevilh iuch, künec Matribleiz,
I commend you, king Matribleiz,

dem der der sterne zal weiz
to-him who of-the stars number knows

unt der uns gap des mânen schîn. 467,1
and who to-us gave the moon's shine.

dem müezet ir bevolhen sîn,
to-him may you commended be,

daz er iuch bring ze Gaheviez.
that he you bring to Gaheviez.

iwer herze tugende nie verliez.'
your heart virtues never forsook.'

der marcrâf guot geleite dan 467,5
the margrave good escort thence

gap dem hôch gelopten man,
gave to-the highly praised man,

und swaz man tôter künege vant.
and whatever one of-dead kings found.

sus rûmt er Provenzâlen lant.
thus left he Provençals' land.

WOLFRAM VON ESCHENBACH

Titurel

Titurel Gives Up the Grail

I

Old Titurel, too weak now to bear arms, recalls the jousts and love of his youth and says his line must inherit true love with faithfulness. The grail came to him by an angel's message, and its lord must be chaste. He gives the grail and its crown to his son Frimutel, whom he took from knighthood, and praises Frimutel's five children: Anfortas, Trevrezent, Schoysiane, Herzeloude, and Urrepanse de Schoyen. Knights and ladies hear him, and grief shows on the templars.

Dô sich der starke Tyturel mohte gerüeren, 1
When himself the strong Tyturel might stir,

er getorste wol sich selben unt die sîne in sturme gefüeren:
he dared well himself self and the his-ones into storm lead:

sît sprach er in alter 'ich lerne
later spoke he in age 'I learn

daz ich schaft muoz lâzen: des phlac ich etwenne schône und gerne.
that I shaft must leave: of-that practiced I once fairly and gladly.

Möht ich getragen wâppen,' sprach der genende, 2
Might I bear arms,' spoke the bold-one,

'des solt der luft sîn gêret von spers krache ûz mîner hende:
'then should the air be honored from spear's crash out-of my hand:

sprîzen gæben schate vor der sunnen.
splinters would-give shade before the sun.

vil zimierde ist ûf helmen von mînes swertes eke enbrunnen.
much crest is on helms from my sword's edge kindled.

3 Obe ich von hôher minne ie trôst enphienge,
If I from high love ever comfort received,

und op der minnen süeze ie sælden kraft an mir begienge,
and if the love's sweetness ever fortune's power on me performed,

wart mir ie gruoz von minneclîchem wîbe,
became to-me ever greeting from lovely woman,

daz ist nu gar verwildet mînem seneden klagendem lîbe.
that is now wholly grown-wild to-my yearning lamenting body.

4 Mîn sælde, mîn kiusche, mit sinnen mîn stæte,
My fortune, my chastity, with senses my constancy,

und op mîn hant mit gâbe oder in sturme ie hôhen prîs getæte,
and if my hand with gift or in storm ever high prize did,

daz mac niht mîn junger art verderben:
that may not my young kind ruin:

jâ muoz al mîn geslähte immer wâre minn mit triwen erben.
yes must all my lineage ever true love with faithfulness inherit.

5 Ich weiz wol, swen wîplîchez lachen enphæhet,
I know well, whomever womanly laughing receives,

daz imêre kiusche unde stætekeit dem herzen næhet.
that to-him-honor chastity and constancy to-the heart nears.

diu zwei kunnen sich dâ niht gevirren,
the two can themselves there not remove,

wan mit dem tôde al eine: anders kan daz niemen verirren.
except with the death all alone: otherwise can that no-one hinder.

Dô ich den grâl enphienc von der botschefte 6
When I the grail received from the message

die mir der engel hêre … enbôt mit sîner hôhen krefte,
which to-me the angel lordly (lacuna) announced with his high strength,

dâ vant ich geschriben al mîn orden.
there found I written all my order.

diu gâbe was vor mir nie menneschlîcher hende worden.
the gift was before me never to-human hands become.

Des grâles hêrre muoz sîn kiusche unde reine. 7
The grail's lord must be chaste and pure.

ôwê, süezer sun Frimutel, ich hân niht wan dich al eine
alas, sweet son Frimutel, I have nothing but thee all alone

mîner kinde hie behabet dem grâle.
of-my children here kept for-the grail.

nu enphâch des grâles krône und den grâl, mîn sun der lieht gemâle.
now receive the grail's crown and the grail, my son the brightly painted.

Sun, du hâst bî dînen zîten schiltes ambet 8
Son, thou hast in thy times shield's office

geurbort hurteclîchen. dîn rat was aldâ verklambet:
practiced onrushingly. thy counsel was there clamped:

ûz der rîterschaft muos ich dich ziehen.
out-of the knighthood must I thee draw.

nu wer dich, sun, al eine: mîn kraft diu wil uns beiden enphliehen.
now defend thyself, son, all alone: my strength it will from-us both flee.

9 Got hât dich, sun, berâten fünf werder kinde:
God has thee, son, provided with-five worthy children:

diu sint och hie dem grâle ein vil sælec werdez ingesinde.
they are also here to-the grail a very blessed worthy household.

Anfortas und Trevrezent der snelle,
Anfortas and Trevrezent the quick,

ich mac geleben daz ir prîs wirt vor anderm prîse der helle.
I may live-to-see that their prize becomes before other prize the clear.

10 Dîn tohter Schoysîâne in ir herze besliuzet
Thy daughter Schoysiane in her heart encloses

sô vil der guoten dinge, dês diu werlt an sælden geniuzet:
so many of-the good things, of-which the world in fortune enjoys:

Herzelöude hât den selben willen:
Herzeloude has the same will:

Urrepanse de schoyen lop mac ander lop niht gestillen.'
Urrepanse de Schoyen's praise may other praise not still.'

11 Dise rede hôrten rîter unde frouwen.
This speech heard knights and ladies.

man mohte an templeisen manges herzen jâmer schouwen,
one might on templars many-a heart's misery behold,

die er dicke brâhte ûz manger herte,
whom he often brought out-of many-a hardship,

swenn er den grâl mit sîner hant und mit ir helfe rîterlîchen werte.
whenever he the grail with his hand and with their help knightly defended.

Schoysiane and the Birth of Sigune

II

Frimutel holds the grail at Muntsalvatsche. Schoysiane, wooed by many kings, marries Kiot of Katelangen at the costliest feast in years. She dies bearing a daughter, so that Kiot's joy is divided by grief, and kings come to her burial. He asks his brother, King Tampunteire, from whom he holds his land, to grant it to the child, and renounces sword and shield; his brother Manfilot does the same. The child is baptized Sigune; Schoysiane was the first to bear the grail.

Sus was der starke Titurel worden der swache, 12
Thus was the strong Titurel become the weak-one,

beidiu von grôzem alter und von siecheite ungemache.
both from great age and from sickness's discomfort.

Frimutel besaz dâ werdeclîche
Frimutel possessed there worthily

den grâl ûf Muntsalvâtsche: daz was der wunsch ob irdeschem rîche.
the grail on Muntsalvatsche: that was the wish above earthly realm.

Dem wâren sîner tohter zwuo von den jâren, 13
To-him were of-his daughters two of the years,

daz si gein hôher minne an vriundes arm volwahsen wâren.
that they toward high love on friend's arm full-grown were.

Schoysîânen minne schône gerte
Schoysiane's love fairly desired

vil künge ûz mangen landen; des si doch einen fürsten gewerte.
many kings out-of many lands; of-which she yet one prince granted.

14 Kîôt ûz Katelangen erwarp Schoysîânen.
Kiot out-of Katelangen won Schoysiane.

schœner maget wart nie gesehen sît noch ê
fairer maid was never seen since nor ere

bî sunnen noch bî mânen.
by sun nor by moon.

ouch het er manger tugende genozzen:
also had he of-many virtues profited:

sîn herze was gein hôhem prîs ie der kost und der tât unverdrozzen.
his heart was toward high prize ever of-the cost and of-the deed untiring.

15 Si wart im schône brâht und rîlîche enphangen.
She was to-him fairly brought and richly received.

der künec Tampunteire, sîn bruoder, kom ouch ze Katelangen.
the king Tampunteire, his brother, came also to Katelangen.

rîche fürsten ungezalt dâ wâren:
rich princes uncounted there were:

sô kosteclîche hôchgezît gesach noch nie man bî mangen jâren.
so costly feast saw still never one in many years.

16 Kîôt, des landes hêrre, prîs het erworben
Kiot, the land's lord, prize had won

mit milte und ouch mit ellen: sîn tât was vil unverdorben,
with generosity and also with valor: his deed was very unspoiled,

swâ man hurteclîche solte strîten
wherever one onrushingly should fight

unde ouch durch der wîbe lôn gezimieret gein der tjoste rîten.
and also for the women's reward crested toward the joust ride.

Gewan ie fürste lieber wîp, waz der dolte 17
Won ever prince dearer woman, what he suffered

der herzenlîchen wünne, als ez diu minne an in bêden wolte!
of-the heartfelt bliss, as it the love on them both would!

ôwê des, nu nâhet im sîn trûren.
alas of-that, now nears to-him his sorrow.

sus nimet diu werlt ein ende:
thus takes the world an end:

unser aller süeze am orte ie muoz sûren.
our all sweetness at-the end ever must sour.

Sîn wîp in ze rehter zît gewerte eins kindes. 18
His woman him at right time granted a child.

daz mich got erlâze in mînem hûs eins solhen ingesindes,
that me God may-spare in my house of-a such household,

daz ich alsô tiure müese gelten!
that I so dearly must pay!

die wîle ich hân die sinne, sô wirt es von mir gewünschet selten.
the while I have the senses, so becomes it by me wished seldom.

Diu süeze Schoysîâne, diu clâre und diu stæte, 19
The sweet Schoysiane, the bright and the constant,

gebar mit tôde eine tohter diu vil sælden hæte.
bore with death a daughter who much fortune had.

an der wart elliu magtlîch êre enstanden:
in her was all maidenly honor arisen:

diu phlac sô vil triuwen, die man von
she had so full troth, as one of

ir noch saget in manegen landen.
her yet says in many lands.

20 Sus was des fürsten leit mit liebe underscheiden:
Thus was the prince's sorrow with joy divided:

sîn jungiu tohter lebte, ir muoter tôt, daz heter an in beiden.
his young daughter lived, her mother dead, that had-he in them both.

Schoysîânen tôt half im ûz borgen
Schoysiane's death helped him out borrow

die flust an rehten fröuden und gewin immer mêre an den sorgen.
the loss in true joys and gain ever more in the cares.

21 Do bevalch man die frouwen mit jâmer der erden.
Then commended one the lady with misery to-the earth.

si muose gearômâtet und gebalsmet ê schône werden:
she must spiced and balsamed before fairly be:

durch daz man lange muose mit ir bîten.
through that one long must with her wait.

vil künge unde fürsten kom dar zer lîchlege an allen sîten.
many kings and princes came thither to-the burial on all sides.

22 Der fürste hête sîn lant von Tampunteire,
The prince had his land from Tampunteire,

von sînem bruoder, dem künc, den man dâ hiez von Pelrapeire.
from his brother, the king, whom one there called of Pelrapeire.

sîner kleinen tohter bat erz lîhen:
for-his little daughter bade he-it grant:

er begunde sich des swertes, helmes unde schiltes verzîhen.
he began himself of-the sword, helm and shield to-renounce.

Der herzoge Manfilôt sach vil leide 23
The duke Manfilot saw much sorrow

an sînem werden bruoder: daz was ein sûriu ougenweide.
on his worthy brother: that was a sour eye's-pasture.

er schiet ouch durch jâmer von dem swerte,
he parted also through misery from the sword,

daz ir deweder hôher minn noch tjoste niht engerte.
that of-them either high love nor joust not desired.

Sigûne wart daz kint genant in der toufe, 24
Sigune was the child named in the baptism,

die ir vater Kîôt het vergolten mit dem tiuren koufe:
whom her father Kiot had paid-for with the dear purchase:

wan er wart ir muoter dur si âne.
for he became of-her mother through her without.

die sich der grâl zem êrsten tragen lie, daz was Schoysîâne.
who itself the grail at-the first bear let, that was Schoysiane.

Sigune's Childhood

III

King Tampunteire brings little Sigune to his daughter Kondwiramurs, and the two playmates grow up together. Kastis left Herzeloude Kanvoleiz and Kingrivals, two lands. Tampunteire dies in the fifth year of Sigune's stay, and Herzeloude sends for her. Kondwiramurs weeps to lose her; Sigune asks her father for a box of dolls for the journey, and he blesses her. She grows up beside her aunt, the poet praises both, and as she ripens she grows proud and playful, yet good.

25 Der künec Tampunteire Sigûnen die kleinen
The king Tampunteire Sigune the little

zuo sîner tohter fuorte. [dô] Kîôt si kust, man sach dâ vil geweinen.
to his daughter led. [then] Kiot her kissed, one saw there much weeping.

Kondwîrâmurs lac dannoch an der brüste.
Kondwiramurs lay still at the breast.

die zwuo gespilen wuohsen, daz nie wart
the two playmates grew, that never was

gesaget von ir prîses vlüste.
said of their prize's loss.

26 In den selben zîten was Kastis erstorben.
In the same times was Kastis dead.

der het ouch Herzelöuden ze Muntsalvâtsch, die clâren, erworben.
he had also Herzeloude at Muntsalvatsch, the bright-one, won.

Kanvoleiz gap er der frouwen schône,
Kanvoleiz gave he to-the lady fairly,

und Kingrivâls: zin beiden truoc sîn houbt vor fürsten die krône.
and Kingrivals: to-them both bore his head before princes the crown.

Kastis Herzelöuden nie gewan ze wîbe, 27
Kastis Herzeloude never won as woman,

diu an Gahmurets arme lac mit ir magtuomlîchem lîbe:
who on Gahmuret's arm lay with her maidenly body:

doch wart si dâ frouwe zweiger lande,
yet became she there lady of-two lands,

des süezen Frimutelles kint,
the sweet Frimutel's child,

die man von Muntsalvâtsche dar sande.
whom one from Muntsalvatsche thither sent.

Dô Tampunteire starp und Kardeiz der clâre 28
When Tampunteire died and Kardeiz the bright

in Brûbarz truoc die krône, daz was in dem vünften jâre
in Brubarz bore the crown, that was in the fifth year

daz Sigûne was aldâ behalten.
that Sigune was there kept.

dô muosen si sich scheiden, die jungen zwuo gespilen, niht die alten.
then must they them part, the young two playmates, not the old.

Diu küngîn Herzelöude an Sigûnen dâhte: 29
The queen Herzeloude on Sigune thought:

si warp mit al ir sinnen, daz man die von Brûbarz ir brâhte.
she strove with all her senses, that one her from Brubarz to-her brought.

Kondwîrâmûrs begunde weinen,
Kondwiramurs began to-weep,

daz si gesellekeite und der stæten liebe an ir solte vereinen.
that she of-companionship and of-the constant love on her should be-bereft.

30 Daz kint sprach ‘liebez veterlîn, nu heiz mir gewinnen
The child spoke ‘dear little-father, now bid for-me get

mîn schrîn vollen tocken, swenn ich zuo
my box full-of dolls, whenever I to

mîner muomen var von hinnen:
my aunt fare from hence:

sô bin ich zer verte wol berihtet.
so am I for-the journey well provided.

ez lebet manec rîter, der sich in mînen dienst noch verphlihtet.’
there lives many-a knight, who himself into my service still pledges.’

31 ‘Wol mich sô werdes kindes, daz ist alsô versunnen!
‘Well-for me so worthy child, that is so wise!

got müeze Katelangen als hêrer frouwen an dir lange gunnen.
God may Katelangen so lordly lady in thee long grant.

mîn sorge slâfet, sô dîn sælde wachet.
my care sleeps, as thy fortune wakes.

wær Swarzwalt hie ze lande, er wurd ze
were Black-Forest here in land, it would-be into

scheften gar durch dich gemachet.’
shafts all for thee made.’

32 Kîôtes kint Sigûne alsus wuohs bî ir muomen.
Kiot’s child Sigune thus grew beside her aunt.

er kôs si für des meien blic, swer si sach, bî tounazzen bluomen:
he chose her before the May’s gleam, whoever her saw, by dew-wet flowers:

ûz ir herze blüete sælde und êre.
out-of her heart bloomed fortune and honor.

lât ir lîp in diu lobes jâr volwahsn, ich sol ir lobes sagen mêre.
let her body into the praise’s years grow-full, I shall of-her praise say more.

[Swaz man an reinem wîbe sol ze ganzen tugenden mezzen 33
[Whatever one in pure woman shall to whole virtues measure

an ir vil süezem lîbe was des ninder hâres grôz vergezzen,
in her very sweet body was of-that nowhere hair's breadth forgotten,

si reiniu fruht, gar lûter, valsches eine,
she pure fruit, wholly clear, of-falseness alone,

der werden Schoysîânen kint, gelîcher art, diu kiusche junge reine.
the worthy Schoysiane's child, of-like kind, the chaste young pure-one.

Nu sulen ouch wir gedenken Herzelöude der reinen. 34
Now shall also we remember Herzeloude the pure.

diu kunde ir lop niht krenken. mit wârheit wil ich die lieben meinen.
she could her praise not weaken. with truth will I the dear-one mean.

si ursprinc aller wîplîcher êren,
she spring of-all womanly honors,

si kunde wol verdienen daz man ir lop muos in den landen mêren.]
she could well deserve that one her praise must in the lands increase.]

Diu magtuomlîche witewe, daz kint Frimutelles, 35
The maidenly widow, the child of-Frimutel,

swer bî ir jungen zîte sprach frouwen lop,
whoever in her young time spoke ladies' praise,

dane erhal niht sô helles.
there resounded nothing so clear.

ir lop daz fuor die virre in mangiu rîche,
her praise it fared the distance into many realms,

unze ir minne wart gedient vor Kanvoleiz mit speren hurteclîche.
until her love was served before Kanvoleiz with spears onrushingly.

36 Nu hœret fremdiu wunder von der maget Sigûnen.
Now hear strange wonders of the maiden Sigune.

dô sich ir brüstel dræten unde ir reit val hâr begunde brûnen,
when themselves her little-breasts swelled and her curly fallow hair began to-brown,

dô huop sich in ir herzen hôchgemüete:
then raised itself in her heart high-spirit:

si begunde stolzen [und] lôsen, und tet daz doch mit wîplîcher güete.
she began to-preen [and] to-frolic, and did that yet with womanly grace.

Schionatulander

IV

Passing over Gahmuret's own loves, the poet tells of the child Anphlise lent to Gahmuret, who took him to the baruc Ahkarin and back: Schionatulander, grandson of Gurnemanz and son of Gurzgri and Mahaute. The poet named Sigune first because her mother came from the grail, whose people are the chosen. Gahmuret rears the two children in his chamber, and love seizes the boy before he is strong in mind. The poet laments love's power over children, monks, hermits, and knights.

37 Wie ... Gahmuret schiet von Belacânen,
How (lacuna) Gahmuret parted from Belacane,

und wie werdeclîchen er erwarp die swester Schoysîânen,
and how worthily he won the sister Schoysiane's,

und wie er sich enbrach der Franzoisinne,
and how he himself tore-free of-the Frenchwoman,

des wil ich hie geswîgen, und künden iu von magtuomlîcher minne.
of-that will I here keep-silent, and tell you of maidenly love.

Der Franzoisinne Anphlîsen wart ein kint gelâzen, 38
To-the Frenchwoman Anphlise was a child left,

erboren von fürsten künne und von der art, daz muose sich mâzen
born of princes' kin and of the kind, that must itself refrain

aller dinge dâ von prîs verdirbet.
of-all things there from prize perishes.

swenn alle fürsten werdent erboren,
when all lords are born,

ir keiner baz nâch prîse wirbet.
of-them none more for prize seeks.

Dô Gahmuret den schilt enphienc von Anphlîsen, 39
When Gahmuret the shield received from Anphlise,

diu werde küneginne im lêch diz kint. daz müezen wir noch prîsen:
the worthy queen to-him lent this child. that must we still praise:

daz erwarp sîn wâriu kindes süeze.
that won his true child's sweetness.

[er wirt] dirre âventiure ein hêrre, ich hân reht
[*he becomes*] *of-this tale a lord, I have right*

daz ich kint durh in grüeze.
that I child for him greet.

Och fuor daz selbe kint mit dem Anschevîne 40
Also fared the same child with the Angevin

hin über in die heidenschaft zuo dem bâruc Ahkarîne.
away over into the heathendom to the baruc Ahkarin.

er brâht ez ze Wâleis wider dannen.
he brought it to Waleis back thence.

swâ kint genendekeit erspehent, daz sol helfen,
where youths boldness spy, that shall help,

op se imêr gemannen.
if they ever wax-men.

41 Ein teil ich wil des kindes art iu benennen.
A part I will of-the child's kind to-you name.

sîn ane (der hiez Gurnemanz von Grâharz) kunde îser zetrennen:
his grandsire (he hight Gurnemanz of Graharz) could iron sunder:

des phlag er zer tjost mit manger hurte.
of-that took-care he at-the joust with many-a onset.

sîn vater der hiez Gurzgrî: der lac tôt durch Schoy de la kurte.
his father he was-called Gurzgri: he lay dead through Schoy de la kurte.

42 Mahaute hiez sîn muoter, Ehkunates swester,
Mahaute was-called his mother, Ehkunat's sister,

des rîchen phalenzgrâven, den man nant ûz der starken Berbester.
of-the rich count-palatine, whom one named out-of the strong Berbester.

selbe hiez er Schîonatulander.
himself was-called he Schionatulander.

sô hôhen prîs erwarp bî sîner zît nie einer noch der ander.
so high prize won in his time never one nor the other.

43 Daz ich des werden Gurzgrîen sun niht benande
That I of-the worthy Gurzgri's son not named

vor der maget Sigûnen, daz was des schult daz man ir muoter sande
before the maiden Sigune, that was of-that the-cause that one her mother sent

ûz der phlege von dem reinen grâle:
out-of the care of the pure grail:

ir hôchgeburt si zucket ouch her für, unde ir künn daz lieht gemâle.
her high-birth she draws also hither forth, and her kin the brightly painted.

Al des grâles diet daz sint die erwelten, 44
All the grail's people they are the chosen,

immer sælec hie unt dort an den stæten prîs die gezelten.
ever blessed here and there in the constant prize the counted.

nu was Sigûne ouch von dem selben sâmen,
now was Sigune also of the same seed,

der ûz von Muntsalvâtsche in die werlt wart gesæt,
that out from Muntsalvatsche in the world was sown,

den die heilhaften nâmen.
that the blessed took.

Swâ des selben sâmen hin wart brâht von dem lande, 45
Wherever of-the same seed thither was brought from the land,

daz muose werden berhaft und in vil reht ein schûr ûf die schande;
that must become fruitful and in very right a shower on the shame;

dâ von Kanvoleiz verre ist bekennet:
there from Kanvoleiz far is known:

si wart in manger zungen ie der triwen houbetstat genennet.
she was in many tongues ever of-the faithfulness capital named.

Owol dich, Kanvoleiz, wie man spricht dîn stæte 46
Oh-well for-thee, Kanvoleiz, how one speaks thy constancy

von herzenlîcher liebe, diu ûf dir geschach niht ze spæte!
of heartfelt love, which on thee happened not too late!

minne huop sich fruo dâ an zwein kinden
love raised itself early there in two children

[diu ergie] sô lûterlîche, al diu werlt möht
[it befell] so purely, all the world might

ir truopheit drunder niht bevinden.
its deceit below not find.

47 Der stolze Gahmuret disiu kint mit ein ander
The proud Gahmuret these children with one another

in sîner kemenâten zôch. dô Schîonatulander
in his chamber reared. when Schionatulander

was dannoch niht starc an sînem sinne,
was still not strong in his mind,

er wart iedoch beslozzen in herzen nôt von Sigûnen minne.
he was yet locked in heart's distress by Sigune's love.

48 Owê des, si sint noch ze tump ze solher angest.
Alas of-that, they are still too foolish for such anguish.

wan, swâ diu minne in der jugent begriffen wirt,
for, where the love in the youth seized is,

diu wert aller langest.
it lasts of-all longest.

op daz alter minnen sich geloubet,
if the age of-love itself renounces,

dannoch diu jugent wont in der minne bant,
still the youth dwells in the love bond,

minne ist krefte unberoubet.
love is of-force unrobbed.

49 Owê, minne, waz touc dîn kraft under kinder?
Alas, love, what avails thy strength among children?

wan einer der niht ougen hât, der möht dich spüren, gienger blinder.
for one who no eyes has, he might thee trace, went-he blinder.

minne, du bist alze manger slahte:
love, thou art all-too many kinds:

gar alle schrîbær künden nimêr volschrîben dîn art noch dîn ahte.
wholly all scribes could never fully-write thy kind nor thy nature.

Sît daz man den rehten münch in der minne 50
Since that one the right monk in the love

und och den [wâren] klôsenære wol beswert, sint gehôrsam ir sinne,
and also the [true] hermit well burdens, are obedient their senses,

daz si leistent mangiu dinc doch kûme.
that they perform many things yet barely.

minn twinget rîter under helm: minne ist vil enge an ir rûme.
love forces knights under helm: love is very narrow in her room.

Diu minne hât begriffen daz smal und daz breite. 51
The love has seized the narrow and the broad.

minne hât ûf erde hûs: [und] ze himel ist reine für got ir geleite.
love has on earth house: [and] to heaven is pure before God her escort.

minne ist allenthalben, wan ze helle.
love is everywhere, except in hell.

diu starke minne erlamet an ir krefte,
the strong love lames in her strength,

ist zwîfel mit wanke ir geselle.
(if)-is doubt with wavering her fellow.

The Children Speak of Love

V

Sigune and Schionatulander love without wavering but hide it out of bashfulness. Mindful of his uncle's eloquence, he begs Sigune for help. She calls herself an orphan in exile and asks what love is, whether it is a he or a she, and whether she must keep it with her dolls or lure it like a hawk. He says love shoots at old and young and steals joy from the heart. She grieves whenever he is out of her sight, but says he must first serve her under the shield, and he vows to.

52 Âne wanc und âne zwîfel diu beide
Without wavering and without doubt the both

was diu maget Sigûne und Schîonatulander, mit leide:
was the maiden Sigune and Schionatulander, with sorrow:

grôziu liebe was dar zuo gemenget.
great love was there to mingled.

ich seit iu von ir kintlîcher minn vil wunders,
I would-tell you of their young love full wonder,

wan daz ez sich lenget.
but that it itself grows.

53 Ir schemelîchiu zuht und diu art ir geslehtes
Their bashful courtesy and the kind of-their lineage

(si wârn ûz lûterlîcher minne erborn) diu twanc si ihr rehtes,
(they were out-of pure love born) that forced them of-their right,

daz se ûzen tougenlîche ir minne hâlen
that they outwardly secretly their love hid

an ir clâren lîben, und inne an den herzen verquâlen.
in their bright bodies, and inside in the hearts tormented.

Schîonatulander moht ouch sîn wîse 54
Schionatulander might also be wise

von manger süezen botschaft, die Franzoyse künegîn Anphlîse
from many-a sweet message, which French queen Anphlise

tougenlîche enbôt dem Anschevîne:
secretly announced to-the Angevin:

die erwarber unde wande in vil dicke ir nôt: nu wende ouch die sîne.
that won-he and turned him very often her need: now turn also that his.

Schîonatulander vil dicke wart des innen 55
Schionatulander very often became of-that aware

umb sînen œheim Gahmuret, wie wol er sprechen kunde mit sinnen,
about his uncle Gahmuret, how well he speak could with wits,

und wie er sich von kumber kunde scheiden:
and how he himself from affliction could part:

des jâhen im hie vil der toufbærn diet,
of-that declared him here many of-the baptized folk,

als [tâten] dort die werden heiden.
as [did] there the noble heathens.

Al die minne phlâgen und minne an sich leiten, 56
All who love practiced and love on themselves laid,

nu hœret magtlîch sorge unde manheit mit den arbeiten:
now hear maidenly care and manhood with the toils:

dâ von ich wil âventiure künden
there from I will adventure tell

den rehten, die … durch herzeliebe ie senende nôt erfünden.
to-the right-ones, who (lacuna) through heart's-love ever yearning distress found.

57 Der süeze Schîonatulander genante,
The sweet Schionatulander dared,

als sîn gesellekeit in sorgen manecvalt in kûme gemante:
as his companionship in cares manifold him barely reminded:

dô sprach er 'Sigûne helferîche,
then spoke he 'Sigune helpful,

nu hilf mir, süeziu maget, ûz den sorgen: sô tuostu helflîche.
now help me, sweet maiden, out-of the cares: so dost-thou helpfully.

58 Ducisse ûz Katelangen, lâ mich geniezen:
Duchess out-of Katelangen, let me profit:

ich hœre sagen, du sîst erboren von der art,
I hear say, thou be born of the kind,

die nie kunde verdriezen,
which never could weary,

sine wæren helfec mit ir lône,
unless-they were helpful with their reward,

swer durch si kumberlîche nôt enphienc:
whoever for them sore woe got:

dîner sælden an mir schône.'
of-thy fortune on me spare.'

59 'Bêâs âmîs, nu sprich, schœner vriunt, waz du meinest.
'Fair friend, now speak, fair friend, what thou meanest.

lâ hœrn, ob du mit zühten dich des willen gein mir sô vereinest,
let hear, if thou with courtesy thyself of-the will toward me so unitest,

daz dîn klagendiu bet iht müge vervâhen.
that thy lamenting request anything may avail.

dune wizzest es vil rehte die wârheit,
unless-thou know it very right the truth,

sone soltu dich niht vergâhen.'
so shalt-thou thee not hasten.'

‘Swâ genâde wonet, dâ sol man si suochen. 60
‘Wherever grace dwells, there shall one her seek.

frouwe, ich ger genâden: des solt du durh dîne genâde geruochen.
lady, I desire grace: of-that shalt thou through thy grace deign.

werdiu gesellekeit stêt wol den kinden.
worthy companionship stands well to-the children.

swâ reht genâde nie niht gewan ze tuonne,
wherever right grace never anything won to do,

wer mac si dâ vinden?’
who may her there find?’

Si sprach ‘du solt dîn trûren durch trœsten dâ künden, 61
She spoke ‘thou shalt thy sorrow for comfort there make-known,

dâ man dir baz gehelfen mac danne ich:
where one thee better help may than I:

anders du kanst dich versünden,
else thou canst thyself sin,

ob du gerst daz ich dir kumber wende:
if thou desirest that I for-thee affliction turn:

wan ich bin reht ein weise mîner mâge, lands und liute ellende.’
for I am right an orphan of-my kinsmen, of-land and people exiled.’

‘Ich weiz wol, du bist landes und liute grôziu frouwe. 62
‘I know well, thou art of-land and people great lady.

des enger ich alles niht, wan daz dîn herze dur dîn ouge schouwe
of-that desire I all not, except that thy heart through thy eye look

alsô daz ez den kumber mîn bedenke.
so that it the affliction mine consider.

nu hilf mir schiere, ê daz dîn minn
now help me soon, ere that thy love

mîn herze und die fröude verkrenke.’
my heart and the joy mar.’

63 ‘Swer sô minne hât, daz sîn minne ist gevære
‘Whoever so love has, that his love is hostile

deheime als lieben friunde als du mir bist, daz wort ungebære
to-any as dear friend as thou to-me art, that word unseemly

wirt von mir nimêr benennet minne.
becomes by me never named love.

got weiz wol daz ich nie bekande minnen flust noch ir gewinne.
God knows well that I never knew love's loss nor her gain.

64 Minne, ist daz ein er? maht du minn mir diuten?
Love, is that a he? canst thou love to-me explain?

ist daz ein sie? kumet mir minn, wie sol ich minne getriuten?
is that a she? comes to-me love, how shall I love cherish?

muoz ich si behalten bî den tocken?
must I her keep beside the dolls?

od fliuget minne ungerne ûf hant durh die wilde?
or flies love loath on hand through the wildness?

ich kan minn wol locken.’
I can love well lure.’

65 ‘Frouwe, ich hân vernomen von wîben und von mannen,
‘Lady, I have heard from women and from men,

minne kan den alten, den jungen sô schuzlîchen spannen,
love can the old, the young so shootingly span,

daz si mit gedanken sêre schiuzet:
that she with thoughts sorely shoots:

si triffet âne wenken, daz loufet, kriuchet, fliuget oder fliuzet.
she hits without wavering, what runs, creeps, flies or flows.

Jâ erkande ich, süeziu maget, ê wol minn von mæren. 66
Yes knew I, sweet maiden, before well love from tales.

minne ist an gedanken: daz mag ich nu mit mir selbe bewæren:
love is in thoughts: that may I now with me self prove:

des betwinget si diu stæte liebe.
of-that forces her the constant love.

minne stilt mir fröude ûz dem herzen, ez entöhte eim diebe.'
love steals from-me joy out-of the heart, it would-not-befit a thief.'

'Schîonatulander, mich twingent gedanke, 67
'Schionatulander, me force thoughts,

sô du mir ûz den ougen kumest,
when thou me from the eyes comest,

daz ich muoz sîn an fröuden diu kranke,
that I must be in joys the weak,

unze ich tougenlîche an dich geblicke.
until I secretly at thee glance.

des trûre ich in der wochen niht zeim mâl, ez ergêt alze dicke.'
of-that grieve I in the week not at-one time, it happens all-too often.'

'Sone darft du, süeziu maget, mich niht frâgen von minne: 68
'So-not needest thou, sweet maiden, me not ask about love:

dir wirt wol âne frâge bekant minnen flust und ir gewinne.
to-thee becomes well without asking known love's loss and her gain.

nu sich wie minne ûz fröude in sorge werbe:
now see how love out-of joy into care strives:

tuo der minne ir reht, ê diu minne
do to-the love her due, ere the love

uns beide in [den] herzen verderbe.'
us two in [the] hearts mar.'

69 Si sprach ‘kan diu minne in diu herzen sô slîchen,
She spoke ‘can the love into the hearts so creep,

daz ir man noch wîp noch diu magt mit ir snelheit entwîchen,
that from-her man nor woman nor the maiden with her quickness escape,

weiz abe iemen waz diu minne richet
knows but anyone what the love avenges

an liuten die ir schaden nie gewurben,
on people who her harm never sought,

daz sie den fröude zebrichet?’
that she to-them joy breaks?’

70 ‘Jâ ist si gewaltec der tumben und der grîsen.
‘Yes is she powerful of-the foolish and of-the gray.

niemen als künstec lebet, daz er künne ir wunder volprîsen.
no-one so skillful lives, that he can her wonders fully-praise.

nu sulen wir bêdiu nâch ir helfe kriegen
now shall we both after her help strive

mit unverscharter friuntschaft minn kan mit
with unbroken amity love can with

ir wanke niemen triegen.’
its wavering no-one deceive.’

71 ‘Owê, kund diu minne ander helfe erzeigen,
‘Alas, could the love other help show,

danne daz ich gæbe in dîn gebot mîn frîen lîp für eigen!
than that I should-give into thy command my free body for own!

mich hât dîn jugent noch niht reht erarnet.
me has thy youth still not rightly earned.

du muost mich under schiltlîchem dache ê dienen:
thou must me under shield-like roof first serve:

des wis vor gewarnet.’
of-that be before warned.’

‘Frouwe, als ich mit krefte diu wâpen mac leiten, 72
‘Lady, as I with strength the arms may bear,

hie enzwischen unde ouch dan mîn lîp wirt
here meanwhile and also thence my body becomes

gesehen in [den] süezen sûren arbeiten,
seen in [the] sweet sour toils,

sô daz mîn dienst nâch dîner helfe ringe.
so that my service after thy help wrestles.

ich wart in dîne helfe erboren: nu hilf sô daz mir an dir gelinge.’
I was into thy help born: now help so that to-me in thee succeed.’

Gahmuret Departs

VI

This was the beginning of their talk of love, when Gahmuret secretly set out for Baldac and his death at Ipomidon’s hands. Schionatulander must go with him, and the two children part in grief, Sigune vowing that the waters will burn before her love fails. Gahmuret rides with the queen’s silk shift, and Schionatulander pines on the journey, unable to joust or wrestle, for love, however cunning, must show itself.

Diz was der anevanc ir geselleschefte 73
This was the beginning of-their companionship

mit worten, an den zîten dô Pompeius für Baldac mit krefte
with words, at the times when Pompeius before Baldac with strength

het ouch sîne hervart gesprochen,
had also his campaign proclaimed,

und Ipomidôn der werde: ûz ir her wart vil niwer sper zebrochen.
and Ipomidon the worthy: out-of their host was many new spears broken.

74 Gahmuret … sich huop des endes tougen,
Gahmuret (lacuna) himself raised of-the end secretly,

et mit sîn eines schilde. er het och grôze kraft âne lougen:
just with his alone shield. he had also great strength without lie:

wan er phlac wol drîer lande krône.
for he held well of-three lands crown.

sus jaget in diu minn an den rê: den enphienger von Ipomidône.
thus hunts him the love onto the bier: that received-he from Ipomidon.

75 Schîonatulander was leide zer verte,
Schionatulander was loath to-the journey,

wan im Sigûnen minne hôhen muot und die fröude gar werte.
for to-him Sigune's love high spirit and the joy wholly hindered.

doch schiet er von dan mit sînem mâge.
yet parted he from thence with his kinsman.

daz was Sigûnen herzenôt, und diu sîne:
that was Sigune's heart's-distress, and the his:

in zwein reit diu minn ûf die lâge.
on two rode the love on the ambush.

76 Der junge fürste urloup nam ze der maget tougenlîche.
The young prince leave took of the maiden secretly.

er sprach 'wê wie sol ich geleben daz diu minne an fröuden mich rîche
he spoke 'woe how shall I live-to-see that the love in joys me rich

schiere mache, und von tôde entscheiden?
soon make, and from death separate?

wünsche mir gelückes, süeziu maget: ich muoz von dir zen heiden.'
wish me luck, sweet maiden: I must from thee to-the heathens.'

‘Ich bin dir holt, getriwer friunt: nu sprich, ist daz minne? 77
‘I am to-thee devoted, faithful friend: now speak, is that love?

sus wil ich immer wünschende sîn nâch dem gewinne
thus will I ever wishing be after the gain

der uns beiden hôhe fröude erwerbe.
which to-us both high joy may-win.

ez brinnent elliu wazzer, ê diu liebe mînhalp verderbe.’
there burn all waters, before the love on-my-side perishes.’

Vil liep beleip aldâ, lieb schiet von dannen. 78
Very dear remained there, dear parted from thence.

ir gehôrtet nie gesprechen von mageden, [von] wîben,
you heard never speak of maidens, [of] women,

[von] manlîchen mannen,
[of] manly men,

die sich herzenlîcher kunden minnen.
who themselves more-heartily could love.

des wart sît Parzivâl an Sigûn zer linden wol innen.
of-that became since Parzival in Sigune at-the linden well aware.

Von Kingrivâls der künc Gahmuret sich verholne 79
From Kingrivals the king Gahmuret himself secretly

von mâgen und von mannen schiet,
from kinsmen and from men parted,

daz sîn vart den gar was diu verstolne.
that his journey to-them wholly was the stolen.

wan zweinzec kint von hôher art kurteise
but twenty children of high kind courteous

und ahtzec knappen ze îser ân schilt het er erwelt ûf die reise.
and eighty squires in iron without shield had he chosen onto the journey.

80 Fünf schœniu ors und goldes vil, von Azagouc gesteine
Five fair horses and of-gold much, of Azagouc gems

im volget ûf die vart, sîn schilt ander schilte gar eine.
to-him followed onto the journey, his shield from-other shields wholly alone.

durch daz solte ein schilt gesellen kiesen,
through that should a shield companions choose,

daz im ein ander [schilt] heiles wunschte,
that him an other [shield] luck wished,

ob dirre schilt kunde niesen.
if this shield could sneeze.

81 Sîn herzenlîche liebe unde ir minne iht fremde
His heartfelt love and her love at-all strange

was noch worden nie durch gewonheit.
was still become never through custom.

im gap dar diu künegîn ir hemde,
to-him gave thither the queen her shift,

blanc sîdîn, als ez ir blenke ruorte.
white silken, as it her whiteness touched.

ez ruorte etwaz brûnes an ir huf: den puneiz vor Baldac erz fuorte.
it touched something brown on her hip: the charge before Baldac he-it carried.

82 Ûz Norgâls gein Spâne [unze] hin ze Sibilje er kêrte,
Out-of Norgals toward Spain [until] thither to Seville he turned,

des genendegen Gandînes sun, der vil wazzers ûz ougen gerêrte,
the bold Gandin's son, who much water out-of eyes made-fall,

dô man friesch wie sîn vart nam ein ende.
when one heard how his journey took an end.

sîn hôher prîs wirt nimmer getoufter diet
his high prize is never to-baptized folk

noch [den] heidenen ellende.
nor [the] heathens strange.

Daz rede ich wol mit wârheit, ninder nâch wâne. 83
That speak I well with truth, nowhere after weening.

nu sulen wir ouch gedenken des jungen fürsten ûz Grâswaldâne,
now shall we also remember the young prince out-of Graswaldane,

des Sigûne in twanc, sîn kiusche âmîe:
whom Sigune him forced, his chaste amie:

diu zôch ûz sînem herzen die fröude,
she drew out-of his heart the joy,

als ûz den bluomen [die] süez diu bîe.
as out-of the flowers [the] sweet the bee.

Sîn lieplîchiu siecheit die er truoc von der minne, 84
His lovely sickness which he bore from the love,

diu flust sîns hôhen muotes, ... an sorgen gewinne,
the loss of-his high spirit, (lacuna) in cares gain,

twanc den Grâharzoys vil manger pîne:
forced the Graharzois very many-a pain:

er wære noch sanfter tôt als Gurzgrî von Mabonagrîne.
he were still more-gently dead than Gurzgri by Mabonagrin.

Wirt immer tjost mit hurte von sperbrechens krache 85
(if)-becomes ever joust with onset of spear-breaking's crash

ûz sîner hant durch schilde brâht, sîn lîp ist zuo dem ungemache
out-of his hand through shields brought, his body is to the discomfort

doch ze kranc: diu starke minne in krenket,
yet too weak: the strong love him weakens,

und daz sîn gedanc nâch lieplîcher liebe unvergezzen sô gedenket.
and that his thought after lovely love unforgotten so thinks.

86 Swenne ander junchêrren ûf velden unde in strâzen
Whenever other young-lords on fields and in streets

punierten unde rungen, durch sende nôt sô muose er daz lâzen.
charged and wrestled, through yearning distress so must he that leave.

minne in lêrte an stæten fröuden siechen.
love him taught in constant joys to-sicken.

swâ kint lernt ûf stên an stüeln,
where babes learn up stand at stools,

diu müezen ie zem êrsten dar kriechen.
they must ay at first there crawl.

87 Nu lât in hôhe minnen: sô muoz er ouch denken,
Now let him highly love: so must he also think,

wier sich gein [der] hœhe ûf rihte unde
how-he himself toward [the] height up straighten and

im künne alle valscheit verkrenken
for-him can all falseness weaken

sîn werender prîs in jugent unde in alter.
his lasting prize in youth and in age.

ich weiz den fürsten, solte er daz lern,
I know the prince, should he it learn,

man lêrte ein beren ê den salter.
one would-teach a bear ere the psalter.

Schîonatulander vil nœte truoc verborgen, 88
Schionatulander many distresses bore hidden,

ê daz der werde Gahmuret wurd inne
ere that the noble Gahmuret grew wise

al spehende der helbæren sorgen,
all keen the hidden cares,

daz sîn liebster mâc sus ranc mit kummer.
that his dearest kinsman thus wrestled with affliction.

er qual et al die mânen, swie sich diu zît huop,
he suffered just all the months, however itself the time raised,

[den] winder und den summer.
[the] winter and the summer.

Von angeborner arte sîn wunschlîch geschicke, 89
From inborn kind his wish-like shape,

sîn vel, diu liehten ougen, swaz man dâ kôs, des antlützes blicke,
his skin, the bright eyes, whatever one there saw, of-the countenance gleams,

schiet dur nôt von lûterlîchem glanze.
parted through distress from pure brightness.

des twanc in niht ein dürkelz wenken, ez tet starkiu lieb diu ganze.
of-that forced him not a pierced wavering, it did strong love the whole.

90 Gahmuretes herze ouch ... getwenget
Gahmuret's heart also (lacuna) constrained

was von der minn ir hitze:
was by the love her heat:

[und] ir âsanc im hete under wîln besenget
[and] her scorch him had at times singed

sîn lûter vel, daz ez mit truopheit kunde.
his clear skin, that it with dimness knew.

minne helfe er hete ein teil enphangn,
love's help he had a part received,

er wesse ouch ir twinclîche stunde.
he knew also her forcing hour.

91 Swie listec sî diu minne, si muoz sich enblecken:
However cunning be the love, she must herself bare:

swer treit der minne al spehende künstec ougen,
whoever bears of-the love all keen skillful eyes,

dâ kan sich ir kraft niht verdecken.
there can itself her strength not cover.

sist ouch ein winkelmez, hœr ich si zîhen:
she-is also a set-square, hear I her accuse:

si entwirfet unde stricket vil spæh,
she designs and knots very deftly,

noch baz dan spelten unde drîhen.
still better than splitting and braiding.

Gahmuret Questions Schionatulander

VII

Gahmuret notices the young dauphin's sorrow, takes him aside, asks why his face has lost its brightness, and chides him for hiding a secret from so near a kinsman, since Anphlise lent the boy to him and reared him as her own. Schionatulander names Sigune, recalls the Frenchwoman and the lands he crossed for his sake, and asks for help. Gahmuret warns that much timber must splinter in his jousts before he wins her, yet rejoices, praises Sigune, her mother Schoysiane, and her father Kiot, and promises to win her aunt to his side.

Gahmuret wart innen der helbæren swære, 92
Gahmuret became aware of-the hidden heaviness,

daz der junge talfîn ûz Grâswaldân was fröuden alsô lære.
that the young dauphin out-of Graswaldan was of-joys so empty.

er nam in sunder ûf daz velt von strâze:
he took him apart onto the field from street:

'wie vert sus Anphlîsen knabe? sîn trûren kumt mir niht ze mâze.
'how fares thus Anphlise's boy? his sorrow comes to-me not in measure.

Ich trage die wâren phlihte al gelîch dîner pîne. 93
I bear the true share all alike to-thy pain.

der Rœmesche keiser und der admirât al der Sarrazîne
the Roman emperor and the admiral of-all the Saracens

möhtenz mit ir rîcheit niht erwenden,
might-it with their wealth not turn-away,

swaz dich bræht in siuftebæren pîn,
whatever thee brought into sigh-bearing pain,

daz muoz mich an fröuden ouch phenden.'
that must me of joys also despoil.'

94 Nu sult ir wol gelouben dem werden Anschevîne,
Now shall you well believe the worthy Angevin,

daz er gerne hulfe, ober möht, dem jungen seneden talfîne.
that he gladly would-help, if-he might, the young yearning dauphin.

er sprach 'ôwê durh waz hât sich geloubet
he spoke 'alas through what has itself unleaved

dîn antlütze lûterlîcher blick? diu minn sich selben an dir roubet.
thy countenance of-pure gleam? the love herself self on thee robs.

95 Ich spür an dir die minne: alze grôz ist ir slâge.
I trace on thee the love: all-too great is her track.

du solt mich dîner tougen niht helen, sît wir sîn sô nâhe gemâge
thou shalt me thy secret not hide, since we are so near kin

und bêde ein verch von ordenlîcher sippe,
and both one life from orderly kinship,

nâher dan von der muoter diu dâ wuohs ûz stelehafter rippe.
nearer than from the mother who there grew out-of stolen rib.

96 Du minnen ursprinc, [du] berndez saf minnen blüete!
Thou love's spring, [thou] bearing sap love's bloom!

nu muoz mich erbarmen Anphlîse, diu dich durch ir wîplîch güete
now must me pity Anphlise, who thee through her womanly goodness

mir lêch: si zôch dich als si dich gebære,
to-me lent: she reared thee as-if she thee bore,

und het dich an ir kindes stat, als lieb du ir noch bist und ie wære.
and had thee in her child's stead, as dear thou to-her still art and ever wert.

Hilest du mich dîn tougen, dâ mite ist versêret 97
(if)-hidest thou from-me thy secret, there with is wounded

mîn herze, daz dîn herze ie was, und hât sich dîn triwe geunêret,
my heart, which thy heart ever was, and has itself thy faithfulness dishonored,

ob du mir sô grôze nôt entwildest.
if thou from-me so great distress estrangest.

desn mag ich dîner stæte niht getrûwen,
of-that may I of-thy constancy not trust,

daz du sô wanklîche unbildest.'
that thou so waveringly misbehavest.'

Daz kint sprach mit sorgen 'sô sî mîn gedinge 98
The child spoke with cares 'so be my hope

dîn fride und dîn hulde, und daz mich
thy peace and thy goodwill, and that me

dîn zorn niht fürbaz mêre twinge.
thy anger not further more force.

ich hal dur zuht vor dir al mînen smerzen:
I hid for courtesy from thee all my pain:

nu muoz ich dir Sigûnen nennen, diu hât ane gesiget mîm herzen.
now must I to-thee Sigune name, who has on conquered my heart.

Du maht, wilt du, ringen den last ungefüege. 99
Thou mayest, (if)-wilt thou, lighten the burden monstrous.

nu wis der Franzoysinne gemant: obe ich dîner sorge ie getrüege,
now be of-the Frenchwoman reminded: if I thy care ever bore,

nim von ir ... mich ûz krenken.
take from her (lacuna) me out-of weakening.

ein slâfender leu wart nie als swære sô mîn wachendez gedenken.
a sleeping lion was never so heavy as my waking thought.

100 Ouch wis gemant, waz mers und der lande ich durchstrichen
Also be reminded, what of-sea and of-the lands I crossed

durh dîn liebe hân, niht durch armuot.
for thy love have, not through poverty.

ich bin mâgen unde man entwichen,
I am from-kinsmen and men escaped,

unde Anphlîsen mîner werden frouwen.
and from-Anphlise my worthy lady.

des sol ich alles wider dich geniezen: lâ dîne helfe schouwen.
of-that shall I all toward thee profit: let thy help be-seen.

101 Du maht mich wol enstricken von slôzlîchen banden.
Thou mayest me well unknot from lock-like bonds.

wird i'emer schiltes hêrre under helme und ûf kost in den landen,
(if)-become I-ever shield's lord under helm and on cost in the lands,

sol mîn helfec hant dâ prîs erringen,
(if)-shall my helpful hand there prize win,

die wîle wis mîn voget, daz dîn scherm
the while be my protector, that thy shelter

mich erner vor Sigûnen twingen.'
me save from Sigune's forcing.'

102 'Ey kranker knabe, waz waldes ê muoz verswinden
'Ah weak boy, what of-forest before must vanish

ûz dîner hant mit tjoste, solt du der ducissen minne bevinden!
out-of thy hand with joust, (if)-shalt thou the duchess's love find!

werdiu minne ist teilhaft ordenlîche:
worthy love is shareable orderly:

si hât der sælige ellenthaft erworben ê der zagehafte rîche.
her has the blessed valiant won before the cowardly rich-one.

Doch fröu ich mich der mære, daz dîn herze sô stîget. 103
Yet rejoice I myself of-the tidings, that thy heart so climbs.

wâ wart ie boumes stam an [den] esten sô lobelîche erzwîget?
where became ever tree's trunk at [the] branches so praiseworthily twigged?

si liuhtec bluome ûf heide, in walde, ûf velde!
she shining flower on heath, in forest, on field!

hât dich mîn müemel betwungen, ôwol dich der lieplîchen melde!
(if)-has thee my little-aunt forced, oh-well for-thee of-the lovely betrayal!

Schoysîâne ir muoter dâ für wart beruofen, 104
Schoysiane her mother there for was called,

daz got selbe und des kunst mit willen ir clârheit geschuofen:
that God self and his art with will her brightness created:

Schoysîânen blic der sunnenbære,
Schoysiane's gleam the sun-bearing,

den hât Sigûn Kîôtes kint an ir, jehent ir erkantlîch mære.
that has Sigune Kiot's child in her, declare her knowable tidings.

Kîôt der prîs bejagende in der scharflîchen herte, 105
Kiot the prize hunting in the sharp hardship,

der fürste ûz Katelangen, ê Schoysîânen tôt im fröude werte,
the prince out-of Katelangen, before Schoysiane's death to-him joy hindered,

ir zweiger kint ich sus mit wârheit grüeze,
of-their two child I thus with truth greet,

Sigûn diu sigehaft ûf dem wal,
Sigune the victorious on the field,

dâ man welt magede kiusche unde ir süeze.
where one chooses maidens' chastity and their sweetness.

106 Diu dir hât ane gesiget, du solt sigenunft erstrîten
Who over-thee has on conquered, thou shalt victory win-by-fighting
mit dienstlîcher triwe an ir [minne]. ouch wil ich
with serviceable faithfulness in her [love]. also will I
des [willen] niht langer nu bîten,
of-the [will] not longer now wait,
in dîne helfe ich bringe ir werden muomen.
into thy help I bring her worthy aunt.
Sigûnen glanz sol dîne varwe erblüen nâch den bliclîchen bluomen.'
Sigune's brightness shall thy color bloom-forth after the gleaming flowers.'

107 Schîonatulander begunde alsus sprechen.
Schionatulander began thus to-speak.
'nu wil mir dîn triuwe aller sorgen bant gar zerbrechen,
'now will for-me thy faithfulness of-all cares bond wholly break,
sît daz ich mit dînen hulden minne
since that I with thy goodwill love
Sigûnen, diu mich roubet nu lange ûf fröude und an frœlîchem sinne.'
Sigune, who me robs now long of joy and of joyful mind.'

Sigune's Lament

VIII

Sigune hides her love until her aunt the queen sees her grief and asks what troubles her. Sigune thanks her for a mother's care and confesses that she watches from windows, battlements, and the sea for her absent friend, burning for him as the salamander in the fire. The queen fears Anphlise's anger, then praises Schionatulander's parents and his promise, and gives her leave to love him, and Sigune rejoices that she may love him before the world.

Sich möht, oder wolte, wol helfe vermezzen 108
Himself might, or would, well help vaunt

Schîonatulander. ouch sule wir der grôzen nôt niht vergezzen,
Schionatulander. also shall we the great distress not forget,

die Kîôts kint truoc unde Schoysîânen,
which Kiot's child bore and Schoysiane's,

ê daz si ... trôst enphienc: diu muose fröuden sich ânen.
before that she (lacuna) comfort received: she must of-joys herself rid.

Wie diu fürstinne ûz Katelange betwungen 109
How the princess out-of Katelange forced

was von der strengen minn (alsus het ir
was by the strict love (thus had her

gedanc ze lange unsanfte gerungen,
thought too long ungently wrestled,

daz siz vor ir muomen helen wolte),
that she-it before her aunt hide would),

diu künegîn wart innen mit herzen schricke, waz Sigûne dolte.
the queen became aware with heart's fright, what Sigune suffered.

110 Reht als ein touwec rôse unde al naz von rœte,
Right as a dewy rose and all wet from redness,

sus wurden ir diu ougen: ir munt, al ir antlütze enphant der nœte.
thus became to-her the eyes: her mouth, all her countenance felt the distress.

dô kunde ir kiusche niht verdecken
then could her chastity not cover

die lieplîchen liebe in ir herzen: daz qual sus nâch kintlîchem recken.
the lovely love in her heart: that suffered thus after childlike champion.

111 Dô sprach diu küneginne durch liebe und durch triuwe
Then spoke the queen through love and through faithfulness

'ôwê Schoysîânen fruht, ich truoc ê alze vil ander riuwe,
'alas Schoysiane's fruit, I bore before all-too much other rue,

der ich phlac hin nâch dem Anschevîne:
which I practiced away after the Angevin:

nu wahset in mîn swære ein niwer dorn,
now grows into my heaviness a new thorn,

sît ich kiuse [sus] an dir pîne.
since I perceive [thus] in thee pain.

112 An lande unde an liuten sprich waz dir werre:
In land and in people speak what thee troubles:

oder ist dir mîn trôst und ander mîner mâge sô verre
or is to-thee my comfort and other my kinsmen so far

daz dich niht ir helfe mac erlangen?
that thee not their help may reach?

war kom dîn sunneclîcher blic?
where came thy sunny gleam?

wê wer hât den verstolen dînen wangen?
woe who has it stolen from-thy cheeks?

Ellendiu maget, nu muoz mich dîn ellende erbarmen. 113
Exiled maiden, now must me thy exile move-to-pity.

man sol bî drîer lande krôn mich immer zelen für die armen,
one shall by three lands' crown me ever count among the poor,

ichn gelebe ê daz dîn kumber swinde,
unless-I live before that thy affliction vanish,

und ich diu rehten mære al dîner sorge mit [der] wârheit bevinde.'
and I the right tidings all of-thy care with [the] truth find.'

'Sô muoz ich mit sorge al mîn angest dir künden. 114
'So must I with care all my anguish to-thee make-known.

hâstu mich deste unwerder iht, sô kan dîn
(if)-boldest-thou me the more-unworthy anything, so can thy

zuht sich an mir gar versünden,
courtesy itself on me wholly sin,

sît ich mich dervon niht mac gescheiden.
since I myself therefrom not may part.

lâ mich in dînen hulden, süeziu minne: daz stêt wol uns beiden.
let me in thy goodwill, sweet love: that stands well to-us both.

Got sol dir lônen: swaz ie muotr ir kinde 115
God shall thee reward: whatever ever mother to-her child

mit minneclîchem zarte erbôt, die selben triwe ich hie vinde
with loving tenderness offered, the same faithfulness I here find

vil stæteclîche an dir, ich fröuden kranke.
very constantly in thee, I in-joys weak-one.

du hâst mich ellendes erlâzen [wol]: dîner wîblîchen güete ich danke.
thou hast me of-exile released [well]: thy womanly goodness I thank.

116 Dînes râtes, dînes trôstes, dîner hulde
Of-thy counsel, of-thy comfort, of-thy goodwill

bedarf ich mit ein ander, sît ich al gernd nâch friunde jâmer dulde,
need I with one another, since I all desiring after friend misery suffer,

vil quelehafter nôt: daz ist unwendec:
very tormenting distress: that is unavoidable:

er quelt mîn wilde gedanke an sîn bant, al mîn sin ist im bendec.
he torments my wild thoughts into his bond, all my mind is to-him bound.

117 Ich hân vil âbende al mîn schouwen
I have many evenings all my looking

ûz venstren über heide, ûf strâze unde gein den liehten ouwen,
out-of windows over heath, on street and toward the bright meadows,

gar verloren: er komet mir ze selten.
wholly lost: he comes to-me too seldom.

des müezen mîniu ougen friundes minn mit weinen tiure gelten.
of-that must my eyes friend's love with weeping dearly pay.

118 Sô gên ich von dem venster ... an die zinnen:
So go I from the window (lacuna) to the battlements:

dâ warte ich ôsten westen, obe ich möhte des werden innen,
there watch I east west, if I might of-him become aware,

der mîn herze lange hât betwungen.
who my heart long has forced.

man mac mich vür die alten senden wol zelen, niht für die jungen.
one may me among the old yearning well count, not among the young.

Ich var ûf einem wilden wâge eine wîle: 119
I fare on a wild wave a while:

dâ warte ich verre, mêre danne über drîzec mîle,
there watch I far, more than over thirty miles,

durch daz, ob ich hôrte sölhiu mære,
through that, if I heard such tidings,

daz ich nâch mînem jungen clârem friunde kumbers enbære.
that I after my young bright friend of-affliction should-lack.

War kom mîn spilende fröude? od wie ist sus gescheiden 120
Where came my playing joy? or how is thus parted

ûz mînem herzen hôher muot? ein ôwê muoz nu folgen uns beiden,
out-of my heart high spirit? an alas must now follow us both,

daz ich eine für in wolte lîden.
that I alone for him would suffer.

ich weiz wol daz in wider gein mir jagt sendiu sorge,
I know well that him back toward me hunts yearning care,

der mich doch kan mîden.
who me yet can avoid.

Owê des, mir ist sîn kunft alze tiure, 121
Alas of-that, to-me is his coming all-too dear,

nâch dem ich dicke erkalte, und dar nâch,
after which I often grow-cold, and there after,

als ich lige in gneistendem viure,
as-if I lie in sparking fire,

sus erglüet mich Schîonatulander:
thus inflames me Schionatulander:

mir gît sîn minne hitze, als Agremuntîn dem wurme salamander.'
to-me gives his love heat, as Agremuntin to-the worm salamander.'

122 ‘Owê,’ sprach diu künegîn, ‘du redest nâch den wîsen.
‘Alas,’ spoke the queen, ‘thou speakest after the wise.

wer hât dich mir verrâten? nu fürht ich die Franzoysinne Anphlîsen,
who has thee to-me betrayed? now fear I the Frenchwoman Anphlise,

daz sich habe ir zorn an mir gerochen:
that itself have her anger on me avenged:

al dîniu wîslîchen wort sint ûz ir munde gesprochen.
all thy wise words are out-of her mouth spoken.

123 Schîonatulander ist hôch rîcher fürste:
Schionatulander is high rich prince:

sîn edelkeit, sîn kiusche törst doch nimêr genendn an die getürste,
his nobility, his chastity dared yet never venture on the daring,

daz sîn jugent nâch dîner minne spræche,
that his youth after thy love should-speak,

op sich de Franze Anphlîsen haz an mir mit hazze niene ræche.
if itself the French Anphlise’s hatred on me with hatred never should-avenge.

124 Si zôch daz selbe kint, sît ez der brüste wart enphüeret.
She reared the same child, since it from-the breasts was taken.

gap si niht durch triegen den rât der dich hât als unsanfte gerüeret,
gave she not through deceiving the counsel which thee has so ungently touched,

du maht im, er dir vil fröude erwerben.
thou mayest for-him, he for-thee much joy win.

sîstu im holt, sô lâ dînen wunschlîchen lîp niht verderben.
be-thou to-him devoted, so let thy wish-like body not perish.

Biut im daz zêren, lâ wider clâren 125
Offer him that to-honor, let again brighten

dîn ougen, [diu] wange, [dîn] kinne. wie stêt alsô junclîchen jâren,
thy eyes, [the] cheeks, [thy] chin. how stands so young years,

op sô liehtez vel dâ bî verlischet?
if so bright skin there with goes-out?

du hâst in die kurzlîchen fröud vil sorge alze sêre gemischet.
thou hast into the short joy much care all-too sorely mingled.

Hât dich der junge talfîn an freuden verderbet, 126
(If)-has thee the young dauphin in joys ruined,

der mac dich wol an fröuden gerîchen:
he may thee well in joys enrich:

vil sælde unde minne ûf in gerbet
much fortune and love on him inherited

hât sîn vater und diu talfînette
has his father and the dauphiness

Mahaude, diu sîn muoter was, und de künegîn sîn muome Schôette.
Mahaude, who his mother was, and the queen his aunt Schoette.

Ich klage et daz du bist alze fruo sîn âmîe. 127
I lament just that thou art all-too early his amie.

du wilt den kumber erben,
thou wilt the care inherit,

des Mahaude phlac bî dem talfîn Gurzgrîe.
that Mahaude had by the dauphin Gurzgri.

dicke ir ougen habent an im erfunden,
often her eyes have in him found,

daz er den prîs in mangen landen hielt under helme ûf gebunden.
that he the prize in many lands held under helm up bound.

128 Schîonatulander an prîse ûf muoz stîgen.
Schionatulander in prize up must climb.

erst von den liuten erboren, die niht lânt ir prîs nider sîgen:
he-is of the people born, who not let their prize down sink:

er wuohs in breit gestrecket an die lenge.
he grew in broad stretched to the length.

nu halt dâ zim die trœstlîchen fröud,
now hold there to-him the comforting joy,

unde er [der] sorge über dich niht verhenge.
and he [of-the] care over thee not allow.

129 Swie vil dîn herze under brust des erlache,
However much thy heart under breast of-that laugh,

daz hân ich niht vür wunder.
that have I not for wonder.

wie kan er sich schicken under schiltlîchem dache!
how can he himself shape under shield-like roof!

ûf in vil zähere wirt gerêret
on him many tears become shed

[der funken], die ûz helmen und eken springent
[of-the sparks], which out-of helms and edges spring

dâ fiurîn regen sich gemêret.
where fiery rain itself increases.

130 Er ist ze tjost entworfen: wer kunde in sô gemezzen?
He is for joust designed: who could him so measure?

an mannes antlütze gein wîplîcher güet nie minner vergezzen
in man's countenance toward womanly goodness never less forgotten

wart an muoter fruht, als ichz erkenne.
was in mother's fruit, as I-it know.

sîn blic sol dîniu ougen gesüezen: ûf gelt dîne minne i'm nenne.'
his gleam shall thy eyes sweeten: on payment thy love I-to-him name.'

Aldâ was minne erloubet mit minne beslozzen. 131
There was love permitted with love locked.

âne wanc gein minne ir beider herze was minne unverdrozzen.
without wavering toward love their both heart was of-love untiring.

'ôwol mich, muome,' sprach diu herzoginne,
'oh-well for-me, aunt,' spoke the duchess,

'daz ich den Grâharzoys vor al der werlde nu mit urloube sô minne!'
'that I the Graharzois before all the world now with leave so love!'

The Hound Gardeviaz

IX

As the lovers lie in the forest, a hound comes baying on a wounded beast's track. Schionatulander, known from childhood among the swift runners, though Trefrezent outran them all, hides in a thicket and catches the hound, which had escaped its master; the poet foretells the sorrow it begins. Its collar and twelve-fathom leash are set with gems and writing. He carries it to Sigune, who reads on the collar that it is Gardeviaz, Guard the Track, and that whoever guards his track well wins favor here and reward hereafter.

Sus lâgen si unlange: do gehôrten sie schiere, 132
Thus lay they not-long: then heard they soon,

in heller süezer stimme ûf rôtvarwer vert nâch wundem tiere
in clear sweet voice on red-colored track after wounded beast

ein bracke kom hôchlûtes zuo zin jagende.
a hound came loud-voiced to them hunting.

der wart ein wîle gehalden ûf:
it was a while held up:

des bin ich durh friunde noch die klagende.
of-that am I for friend still the lamenting-one.

133 Dô si den walt alsus mit krache hôrten erhellen,
When they the forest thus with crash heard resound,

Schîonatulander ûz kintlîchem leben für die snellen
Schionatulander out-of childlike life among the quick

was bekant; wan Trefrezent der reine
was known; but Trefrezent the pure

der lief und spranc allen den vor, die des phlâgn ûf rîters gebeine.
he ran and sprang all those before, who of-that practiced on knight's legs.

134 Nu dâhter 'obe den hunt iemen mac erloufen,
Now thought-he 'if the hound anyone may outrun,

rîterlîchiu bein die trage.' er wil … fröude verkoufen
knightly legs who bear.' he will (lacuna) joy sell

unde ein stætez trûren dran enphâhen.
and a constant sorrow thereon receive.

ûf spranc er gein der stimme, als er wolte den bracken ergâhen.
up sprang he toward the voice, as-if he would the hound overtake.

135 Sît in den wîten walt niht mohte gekêren
Since into the wide forest not might turn

daz flühtege wilt, wan her für den talfîn, daz wil sîn arbeit gemêren:
the fleeing game, except hither before the dauphin, that will his toil increase:

künftec trûren brâhtez im ze teile.
future sorrow brought-it to-him as share.

nu dacter sich in einer dicken strut: sus kom jagende an dem seile
now covered-he himself in a thick thicket: thus came hunting on the leash

des fürsten bracke, dem er enphuor ûz der hende 136
the prince's hound, from-whom it escaped out-of the hand

nider ûf diu strâlsnitec mâl. daz si nimmer hunt mêre gesende,
down onto the arrow-cut marks. that she never hound more may-send,

diu in dâ dem grôz gemuoten sande,
who him there to-the great minded sent,

von dem er jagte unze ûf den [stolzen Grahardeiz],
from whom he hunted until on the [proud Grahardeiz],

daz dem vil hôher fröuden sît erwande.
that to-him much high joy since ended.

Dô er dur die dicke alsus brach ûf der verte, 137
When he through the thicket thus broke on the track,

sîn halse was arâbensch ein borte geslagen mit der drîhen [vil] herte,
his collar was Arabian a braid struck with the twisting [very] hard,

dar ûfe kôs man tiure und lieht gesteine:
there on saw one precious and bright stones:

die glesten [durh den walt] sam diu sunne.
they gleamed [through the forest] as the sun.

aldâ vienc er den bracken niht eine.
there caught he the hound not alone.

Waz er mit dem bracken begreif, lât ez iu nennen. 138
What he with the hound seized, let it to-you name.

gefurrierten kumber mit arbeit er muose unverzagetlîche erkennen,
furred affliction with toil he must undauntedly know,

und immer mêr grôz kriegen et nâch strîte.
and ever more great warring just after battle.

daz bracken seil was rehte im ein urhap fröuden flustbærer zîte.
the hound's leash was rightly to-him a beginning of-joys loss-bearing time.

139 Er truoc den hunt ame arme Sigûnen der clâren.
He bore the hound on-the arm to-Sigune the bright.

daz seil was wol zwelf klâfter lanc,
the leash was well twelve fathoms long,

die von vier varwe bortesîden wâren,
that of four hues braids were,

gel, grüene, rôt, brûn diu vierde,
yellow, green, red, brown the fourth,

immer swâ diu spanne erwant an ein ander geworht mit gezierde.
ever wherever the span turned on one another wrought with adornment.

140 Dar über lâgen ringe mit berlen verblenket;
There over lay rings with pearls dazzled;

immer zwischenn ringen wol spanne lanc, niht mit stein verkrenket,
ever between-the rings well span long, not with stone weakened,

vier blat, viervar wol vingers breit die mâze.
four leaves, four-colored well finger's breadth the measure.

gevâhe ich immer hunt an sölch seil, ez blîbt bî mir, swenn ih in lâze.
catch I ever hound on such leash, it stays with me, whenever I it let.

141 Sô manz von ein ander vielt, zwischenn ringen
When one-it from one another folded, between rings

ûze und innen kôs man dran schrift wol mit kosteclîchen dingen.
outside and inside saw one thereon writing well with costly things.

âventiure hœrt, obe ir gebietet.
adventure hear, if you command.

mit guldîn nagelen wâren die steine vaste an die strange genietet.
with golden nails were the stones firmly onto the strand riveted.

Smârâde wârn die buochstabe, mit rubîn verbundet: 142
Emeralds were the letters, with rubies bound:

adamant, krisolte, grânât dâ stuonden. nie seil baz gehundet
adamant, chrysolite, garnet there stood. never leash better hounded

wart, ouch was der hunt vil wol geseilet:
was, also was the hound very well leashed:

ir muget wol râten, welhez ich dâ næme,
you may well guess, which I there would-take,

op wære der hunt dergegene geteilet.
if were the hound there-against divided.

Ûf einem samît grüene als in meigeschem walde 143
Upon a samite green as in May-like forest

was diu halse ein borte genæt, vil stein von arde manecvalde
was the collar a braid sewn, many stones of kind manifold

drûf geslagen: die schrift ein frouwe lêrte.
thereon struck: the writing a lady taught.

Gardevîaz hiez der hunt: daz kiut tiuschen Hüete der verte.
Gardeviaz was-called the hound: that says in-German Guard-of the track.

Diu herzogîn Sigûne las anvanc der mære. 144
The duchess Sigune read beginning of-the tale.

'swie ditze sî ein bracken name, daz wort ist den werden gebære.
'however this be a hound's name, the word is to-the worthy fitting.

man und wîp, die hüeten verte schône,
man and woman, who guard tracks fairly,

die varent hie in der werlde gunst, und wirt in dort sælde ze lône.'
they fare here in the world's favor, and becomes to-them there fortune as reward.'

145 Si las mêr an der halsen, noch niht an dem seile.
She read more on the collar, still not on the leash.

'swer wol verte hüeten kan, des prîs wirt getragen nimmer veile:
'whoever well tracks guard can, his prize becomes borne never for-sale:

der wonet in lûterem herzen sô gestarket,
he dwells in clear heart so strengthened,

daz in nimmer ouge ersiht ûf dem unstæten wenkenden market.'
that him never eye sees on the unsteady wavering market.'

The Hound Escapes

X

The leash tells that Clauditte, queen of Kanadic, sent the hound to the duke Ehcunaver, whom she had chosen as her lord. While Schionatulander fishes barefoot in a brook, Sigune unties the leash to read further, and the hound tears it through her hands, breaks out of the tent, and runs off after the game; Schionatulander hears it baying in the forest.

146 Der bracke unde daz seil einem fürsten durch minne
The hound and the leash to-a prince for love

wart gesant: daz was von art under krône ein jungiu küneginne.
was sent: that was by kind under crown a young queen.

Sigûn las an des seiles underscheide,
Sigune read on the leash's divisions,

wer was diu küneginne unde ouch der fürste:
who was the queen and also the prince:

diu stuonden bekantlîch dâ beide.
they stood knowably there both.

Si was von Kanadic erboren, ir swester, Flôrîen, 147
She was of Kanadic born, her sister, Florie,

diu Ilinôte dem Britûn ir herze, [ir] gedanc und [ir] lîp gap ze âmîen,
who to-Ilinot the Briton her heart, [her] thought and [her] body gave as amie,

gar swaz si hete, wan bî ligende minne:
wholly whatever she had, except beside lying love:

si zôch in [von kinde] unze an schiltlîch vart
she reared him [from child] until to shield-like journey

und kôs in für alle gewinne.
and chose him before all gains.

Der holt ouch nâch ir minne under helm sîn ende. 148
He fetched also after her love under helm his end.

obe ich niht bræche mîne zuht, ich solte noch fluochen der hende
if I not broke my courtesy, I should still curse the hand

diu die tjost ûf sînen tôt dar brâhte.
which the joust on his death thither brought.

Flôrî starp ouch der selben tjost, doch ir lîp nie speres orte genâhte.
Florie died also of-the same joust, yet her body never spear's point neared.

Diu liez eine swester, diu erbet ir krône. 149
She left a sister, who inherits her crown.

Clauditte hiez diu selbe maget: der gap kiusche
Clauditte hight the same maiden: to-her gave chastity

unde ir güet ze lône
and her goodness as reward

des vrömden lop und ouch der si bekande.
the stranger's praise and also of-those-who her knew.

des wart ir prîs beruofen in mangiu lant,
by-that was her prize proclaimed into many lands,

daz den dâ niemen wande.
that it there no-one prevented.

150 Diu herzoginne las von der magt an dem seile.
The duchess read of the maiden on the leash.

die fürsten ûz ir rîche eins hêrren an si gerten mit urteile.
the princes out-of her realm a lord on her desired with judgment.

sie sprach in einen hof ze Beuframunde.
she proclaimed for-them a court at Beuframunde.

dar kômen rîche und arme [ungezalt]:
thither came rich and poor [uncounted]:

man erteilte ir wale an der stunde.
one granted her choice in the hour.

151 Duc Ehkunahten de Salvâsch flôrîen,
Duke Ehkunaht de Salvasch flowery,

den truoc si in ir herzen dâ vor, ouch kôs si in benamen ze âmîen.
him bore she in her heart there before, also chose she him indeed as amie.

des stuont sîn herze hôher danne ir krône:
for-that stood his heart higher than her crown:

Ehkunaht gerte [aller] fürsten zil:
Ehkunaht desired [all] princes' goal:

wan er phlac sîner verte vil schône.
for he practiced his track very fairly.

152 Si twanc sîn jugent unde ouch daz reht von ir rîche:
Her forced his youth and also the right from her realm:

sît daz ir wart erteilt diu wal, nu welt ouch diu maget werdeclîche.
since that to-her was granted the choice, now chooses also the maiden worthily.

welt ir tiutsch ir friundes namen erkennen?
will you in-German her friend's name know?

der herzoge Ehcunaver von Bluome diu wilde,
the duke Ehcunaver of Flower the wild,

alsus hôrt ich in nennen.
thus heard I him name.

Sît er von der wilde hiez, gegen der wilde 153
Since he of the wild was-called, toward the wild

si sante in disen wiltlîchen brief, den bracken, der walt und gevilde
she sent him this wild letter, the hound, which forest and field

phlac der verte als er von arte solte.
practiced the track as he by kind should.

ouch jach des seiles schrift daz sie selb wîplîcher verte hüeten wolte.
also declared the leash's writing that she herself of-womanly track guard would.

Schîonatulander mit einem vederangel 154
Schionatulander with a feather-book

vienc äschen unde vörhen, die wîl si las, und der fröude den mangel,
caught graylings and trout, the while she read, and of-the joy the lack,

daz er sît wart vil selten der geile.
that he since became very seldom the merry.

die herzogîn lôst ûf den stric, durch die schrift
the duchess loosed up the cord, for the writing

ûz ze lesenne an dem seile.
out to read on the leash.

Der was an die zeltstange vaste gebunden. 155
It was to the tent-pole firmly bound.

mich müet ir ûf lœsen daz si tet: hei wan wær sis erwunden!
me grieves her up loosing that she did: hei if-only were she-of-it desisted!

Gardevîaz stracte sich mit strebenne,
Gardeviaz stretched himself with striving,

ê diu herzoginne spræche nâch sîner spîse:
before the duchess spoke after his food:

ir wille im was ze ezzen ze gebenne.
her will to-him was to eat to give.

156 Zwuo juncfrouwen sprungen her ûz für die snüere.
Two young-ladies sprang hither out before the cords.

ich klage der herzoginne blanc hende: op daz seil die zerfüere,
I lament the duchess's white hands: if the leash them tore,

waz mag ich des? ez was von steinen herte.
what may I of-that? it was of stones hard.

Gardevîaz zucte und spranc durch gâhen nâch huntwildes verte.
Gardeviaz jerked and sprang through hasting after hound-game's track.

157 Er was ouch Ehcunahte des tages alsô entrunnen.
He was also to-Ehcunaht of-the day so escaped.

si rief die juncfrouwen ane: die heten des bracken spîse gewunnen,
she called the young-ladies at: they had the hound's food got,

si gâhten wider in daz gezelt vil balde.
they hastened back into the tent very quickly.

nu was er ûz gesloffen durh die winden;
now was he out slipped through the flaps;

man hôrt in dô schiere im walde.
one heard him then soon in-the forest.

158 Er brach halt der winden ein teil ûz der phæle.
He broke even of-the flaps a part out-of the stakes.

do er wider kom ûf die niuwe rôten vart, des nam in niht hæle,
when he back came on the new red track, of-that took him no hiding,

vil offenlîche er jagte und niht verholne.
very openly he hunted and not secretly.

dâ von geschach des werden Gurzgrîen sun vil nœte sît ze dolne.
there from happened to-the worthy Gurzgri's son many distresses since to suffer.

Schîonatulander die grôzen und die kleinen 159
Schionatulander the great and the small

vische mit dem angel vienc, dâ er stuont ûf blôzen blanken beinen
fish with the hook caught, where he stood on bare white legs

durh die küele in lûtersnellem bache.
for the coolness in clear-swift brook.

nu erhôrt er Gardevîazes stimme: diu erhal im ze ungemache.
now heard he Gardeviaz's voice: it resounded to-him to discomfort.

Sigune's Condition

XI

Schionatulander drops his hook and runs after the hound through brambles, but loses its track and comes back with his bare legs and feet wounded; Sigune's hands are torn where the leash ran through them. When he tells her to think no more of the writing, she says she must read it to the end, and he must win the leash back before he may have her love. He vows to win it by battle or perish, she promises him her grace, and the poet foretells the sorrow this beginning brings.

Er warf den angel ûz der hant, mit snelheit er gâhte 160
He threw the hook out-of the hand, with quickness he hastened

über ronen und ouch durch brâmen;
over logs and also through brambles;

dâ mit er doch dem bracken niene genâhte:
there with he yet to-the hound never neared:

den het im ungeverte alsô gevirret,
it had to-him trackless-land so removed,

daz er ninder spürte wilt noch hunt,
that he nowhere traced game nor hound,

und wart ouch von dem winde der hôre verirret.
and became also by the wind the hearing confused.

161 Im wurden diu blôzen bein zerkratzet von den brâmen:
To-him became the bare legs scratched by the brambles:

die sînen blanken füeze an dem loufe ouch
the his white feet at the running also

von stiften ein teil wunden nâmen.
from stubs a part wounds took.

man kôs in baz, dann ê daz [erschozen] tier, wunde:
one saw him better, than before the [shot] beast, wounded:

er hiez si twahen, ê er kom underz zelt. sus vant er Sigûn dort unde,
he bade them wash, ere he came under-the tent. thus found he Sigune there and,

162 innerhalp ir hende als si wærn berîfet
inside her hands as-if they were hoar-frosted

grâ, als eins tjostiures hant,
gray, as a jouster's hand,

dem der schaft von der gegenhurte slîfet,
from-whom the shaft from the counter-charge slides,

der ziuschet über blôzez vel gerüeret.
which tears over bare skin touched.

rehte alsô was daz seil durch der herzoginne hant gefüeret.
right so was the leash through the duchess's hand drawn.

163 Si kôs im vil wunden an beinen unde an füezen:
She saw on-him many wounds on legs and on feet:

si klagt in, er klaget ouch sie. nu wil sich diz mære geunsüezen,
she lamented him, he lamented also her. now will itself this tale unsweeten,

dô diu herzogîn begunde sprechen
when the duchess began to-speak

hinze im nâch der schrifte am seil:
toward him after the writing on-the leash:

diu flust muoz nu vil sper zerbrechen.
the loss must now many spears break.

Er sprach ‘ich vriesch ie wênec der seile überschribene. 164
He spoke ‘I heard ever little of-the leashes over-written.

brievebuoch en franzoys ich weiz wol:
letter-books in French I know well:

solch kunst ist mir niht diu blibene:
such art is to-me not the left-behind:

dâ læse ich an swaz dâ geschriben wære.
there would-read I on whatever there written were.

Sigûne, süeziu maget, lâ dir [sîn] die schrift
Sigune, sweet maiden, let to-thee [be] the writing

an dem seile gar unmære.’
on the leash all naught.’

Si sprach ‘dâ stuont âventiur geschriben an der strangen: 165
She spoke ‘there stood adventure written on the strand:

sol ich die niht zende ûz lesen,
(if)-shall I it not end out read,

mir ist unmær mîn lant ze Katelangen.
me is vain my land at Katelangen.

swaz mir iemen rîcheit möhte gebieten,
whatever to-me anyone of-wealth might offer,

und obe ich wirdec wær ze nemen,
and if I worthy were to take,

dâ für wolt ich mich der schrifte nieten.
there for would I myself of-the writing take-joy.

166 Daz spriche ich, werder friunt, dir noch niemen ze vâre.
That speak I, worthy friend, to-thee nor to-anyone for peril.
ob wir beidiu junc solten leben zuo der zît unser künftigen jâre,
if we both young should live to the time of-our future years,
sô daz dîn dienst doch gerte mîner minne,
so that thy service yet desired my love,
du muost mir daz seil ê erwerben,
thou must for-me the leash first win,
dâ Gardevîaz ane gebunden stuont hinne.'
where Gardeviaz on bound stood in-here.'

167 Er sprach 'sô wil ich gerne umb daz seil alsô werben.
He spoke 'so will I gladly for the leash so strive.
sol man daz mit strîte erholen,
(if)-shall one it with war win,
dâ muoz ich an lîbe an prîse verderben,
so must I in body in prize perish,
oder ich bringe ez wider dir ze handen.
or I bring it back to-thee to hands.
wis genædec, süeziu maget, [unde] halt niht mîn
be gracious, sweet maiden, [and] hold not my
herze sô lange in dînen banden.'
heart so long in thy bonds.'

‘Genâde und al daz immer maget sol verenden 168
‘Grace and all that ever maiden shall complete

gein [ir] werdem clâren friunde, daz leist ich,
toward [her] worthy bright friend, that perform I,

und mac mich des nie man erwenden,
and may me of-that never man turn-away,

op dîn wille krieget nâch der strangen,
if thy will strives after the strand,

die der bracke zôch ûf der verte, den du mir bræhte gevangen.’
which the hound drew on the track, which thou to-me broughtest captured.’

‘Dar nâch sol mîn dienst imêr stæteclîchen ringen. 169
‘There after shall my service ever constantly wrestle.

du biutest rîchen solt: wie lebe ich die zît,
thou offerest rich pay: how live I the time,

daz ez mîn hant müeze bringen
that it my hand must bring

dar zuo daz ich die hulde dîn behalte?
there to that I the goodwill thine keep?

daz wirt versuochet nâhen und verre:
that becomes tried near and far:

[gelücke und] dîn minne mîn walte.’
[luck and] thy love me may-rule.’

Sus heten si mit worten ein ander ergetzet,
Thus had they with words one another gladdened,

und ouch mit guotem willen. anevanc vil kumbers,
and also with good will. beginning of-much affliction,

wie wart der geletzet!
how was it ended!

daz freischet wol der tumbe und ouch der grîse,
that hears well the foolish and also the gray,

von dem unverzageten sicherboten, obe der swebe
of the undaunted surety-messenger, whether he hover

od sinke an dem prîse.
or sink in the prize.

WOLFRAM VON ESCHENBACH

Lieder

The Songs

Den morgenblic

I

A lady sees the dawn by the watchman's song as she lies in her lover's arms, and laments the day that drives him away. Locks cannot keep the daylight out; she holds him close and tells him they have two hearts and one body. He takes his leave, and the day finds them weeping, kissing, and entwined.

Den morgenblic bî wahters sange erkôs 3,1
The morning-gleam by watchman's song saw

ein froue, dâ si tougen
a lady, where she secretly

an ir werden friundes arme lac;
on her worthy friend's arm lay;

dâ von si … freuden vil verlôs.
there from she (lacuna) of-joys much lost.

des muosen liehtiu ougen
of-that must bright eyes

aver nazzen. si sprach 'ôwê tac,
again be-wet. she spoke 'alas day,

wilde und zam daz frewet sich dîn
wild and tame that rejoices itself of-thee

und siht dich gerne,
and sees thee gladly,

wan ich ein. wie sol iz mir ergên!
except I alone. how shall it to-me go!

nu enmac niht langer hie bî mir bestên
now may not longer here beside me stay

mîn vriunt: den jaget von mir dîn schîn.'
my friend: him hunts from me thy shine.'

3,12 Der tac mit kraft al durh diu venster dranc.
The day with strength all through the windows pressed.

vil slôze si besluzzen:
many locks they locked:

daz half niht: des wart in sorge kunt.
that helped not: of-that became to-them care known.

diu friundîn den vriunt vast an sich dwanc:
the lady-friend the friend firmly to herself pressed:

ir ougen diu beguzzen
her eyes they poured-over

ir beider wangel. sus sprach zim ir munt.
their both cheeks. thus spoke to-him her mouth.

'zwei herze und einen lîp hân wir
'two hearts and one body have we

gar ungescheiden:
wholly unparted:

unser triwe mit ein ander vert.
our faithfulness with one another fares.

der grôzen liebe der bin ich vil gar verhert,
of-the great joy of-it am I very wholly robbed,

wan sô du kumest und ich zuo dir.'
except when thou comest and I to thee.'

3,23 Der trûric man nam urloup balde alsus.
The sorrowful man took leave quickly thus.

ir liehten vel diu slehten
their bright skins the smooth

kômen nâher. sus der tac erschein
came nearer. thus the day shone-on

weindiu ougen, süezer frouen kus.
weeping eyes, sweet lady's kiss.

sus kunden si dô vlehten
thus could they then braid

ir munde, ir brüste, ir arm, ir blankiu bein:
their mouths, their breasts, their arms, their white legs:

swelh schiltær entwurfe daz
whatever shield-painter should-portray that

geselleclîche
companionably

als si lâgn, des wære ouch dem genuoc.
as they lay, of-that were also to-him enough.

ir beider liebe doch vil sorgen truoc.
their both love yet many cares bore.

si phlâgen minne ân allen haz.
they practiced love without any hatred.

Sîne klâwen

II

The watchman sings that the day's claws have struck through the clouds and he must bring the worthy man away. The lady begs him to keep silent, and the watchman answers that her lover must go now and love her secretly hereafter, to keep his honor and life. She says his song has often taken her lover from her white arms, though never from her heart. Frightened by the daylight through the glass, she presses him close, and their parting gives them love's reward.

'Sîne klâwen 4,8
'Its claws

durh die wolken sint geslagen,
through the clouds are struck,

er stîget ûf mit grôzer kraft,
it climbs up with great strength,

ich sih in grâwen
I see it gray

tägelîch als er wil tagen,
day-like as it will dawn,

den tac, der im geselleschaft
the day, which to-him companionship

erwenden wil, dem werden man,
turn-away will, to-the worthy man,

den ich mit sorgen în verliez.
whom I with cares in let.

ich bringé in hinnen, ob ich kan.
I bring him hence, if I can.

sîn vil manegiu tugent michz leisten hiez.'
his very many virtues me-it perform bade.'

4,18 'Wahtær, du singest
'Watchman, thou singest

daz mir manege freude nimt
what from-me many joys takes

unde mêret mîne klage.
and increases my lament.

mær du bringest,
tidings thou bringest,

der mich leider niht gezimt,
which me alas not befit,

immer morgens gegen dem tage.
ever in-the-mornings toward the day.

diu solt du mir verswîgen gar.
them shalt thou for-me keep-silent wholly.

daz biut ich den triwen dîn:
that command I to-the faithfulness thine:

des lôn ich dir als ich getar.
for-that reward I thee as I dare.

sô belîbet hie der selle mîn.'
so remains here the companion mine.'

'Er muoz et hinnen 4,28
'He must just hence

balde und âne sûmen sich:
quickly and without delay himself:

nu gib im urloup, süezez wîp.
now give him leave, sweet woman.

lâze in minnen
let him love

her nâch sô verholne dich,
here after so secretly thee,

daz er behalte êr und den lîp.
that he keep honor and the life.

er gab sich mîner triwe alsô,
he gave himself to-my faithfulness so,

daz ih in bræhte ouch wider dan.
that I him should-bring also back away.

ez ist nu tac: naht was ez dô
it is now day: night was it then

mit druck an brust dîn kus mirn an gewan.'
with pressing on breast thy kiss me-him from won.'

'Swaz dir gevalle, 4,38
'Whatever thee please,

wahtær, sinc, und lâ den hie,
watchman, sing, and let him here,

der minne brâht und minne enphienc.
who love brought and love received.

von dînem schalle
from thy sound

ist er und ich erschrocken ie:
is he and I frightened ever:

sô ninder morgenstern ûf gienc
when nowhere morning-star up went

ûf in, der her nâch minne ist komen,
on him, who hither after love is come,

noch ninder lûhte tages lieht,
nor anywhere shone day's light,

du hâst in dicke mir benomen
thou hast him often from-me taken

von blanken armen, und ûz herzen nieht.'
from white arms, and out-of heart not.'

5,6 Von den blicken,
From the gleams,

die der tac tet durh diu glas,
which the day made through the glass,

und dô der wahtær warnen sanc,
and when the watchman warning sang,

si muose erschricken
she must take-fright

durch den der dâ bî ir was.
because-of him who there beside her was.

ir brüstelîn an brust si dwanc.
her little-breast on breast she pressed.

der rîter ellens niht vergaz
the knight of-valor not forgot

(des wold in wenden wahters dôn):
(from-that would him turn watchman's tune):

urloup nâh und nâher baz
leave near and nearer better

mit kusse und anders gab in minne lôn.
with kiss and otherwise gave them love's reward.

Ein wîp mac wol erlouben mir

III

The poet asks a lady's leave to look at her, hopes her greeting may yet make him rich in joy, and says he will bear women's anger with courtesy.

Ein wîp mac wol erlouben mir 5,16
A woman may well permit me

daz ich ir neme mit triuwen war.
that I of-her take with faithfulness heed.

ich ger (mir wart ouch nie diu gir
I desire (to-me was also never the desire

verhabet) mîn ougen swingen dar.
held-back) my eyes swing thither.

wie bin ich sus iuwelnslaht?
how am I thus of-owl's-kind?

si siht mîn herze in vinster naht.
she sees my heart in dark night.

Si treit den helfelîchen gruoz, 5,22
She bears the helpful greeting,

der mich an vröiden rîchen mac,
which me in joys enrich may,

dar ûf ich iemer dienen muoz.
there on I ever serve must.

vil lîhte erschînet noch der tac
very perhaps appears still the day

daz man mir muoz vröiden jehen.
that one to-me must joys declare.

noch grœzer wunder ist geschehen.
still greater wonder is happened.

5,28 Seht waz ein storch den sæten schade:
See what a stork to-the seeds harms:

noch minre schaden hânt mîn diu wîp.
still less harm have of-me the women.

ir haz ich ungern ûf mich lade.
their hatred I unwillingly on me load.

diu nu den schuldehaften lîp
who now the guilty body

gegen mir treit, daz lâze ich sîn:
toward me bears, that let I be:

ich wil nu pflegen der zühte mîn.
I will now practice the courtesy mine.

Der helden minne

IV

The poet tells the watchman to stop singing his dawn songs. A man who lies openly with his own wedded wife need not leave at dawn, since such love fears no spies.

Der helden minne ir klage 5,34
The secret love's their lament

du sunge ie gegen dem tage,
thou sangest ever toward the day,

daz sûre nâch dem süezen.
the sour after the sweet.

swer minne und wîplich grüezen
whoever love and womanly greeting

alsô enpfienc
so received

daz si sich muosen scheiden,
that they themselves must part,

swaz du dô riete in beiden,
whatever thou then counseledst to-them both,

dô ûf gienc
when up went

der morgensterne, wahtær, swîc, dâ von niht gerne sienc.
the morning-star, watchman, be-silent, there from not gladly sing.

Swer pfliget odr ie gepflac 6,1
Whoever practices or ever practiced

daz er bî liebe lac
that he beside dear-one lay

den merkern unverborgen,
to-the spies unbidden,

der darf niht durch den morgen
he needs not because-of the morning

dannen streben,
thence strive,

er mac des tages erbeiten:
he may the day await:

man darf in niht ûz leiten
one needs him not out lead

ûf sîn leben.
on his life.

ein offen süeze wirtes wîp kan sölhe minne geben.
an open sweet husband's wife can such love give.

Von der zinnen

V

The watchman says he will leave the battlements and give up his dawn song, yet offers secret lovers his counsel and warns the knight to wake, for a dawning gleam is breaking through the clouds. The knight must go, though her lament grieves him, and before he leaves he wins from her an embrace whose prize was high.

6,10 'Von der zinnen
'From the battlements

wil ich gên, in tagewîse
will I go, in dawn-manner

sanc verbern.
song forgo.

die sich minnen
those-who themselves love

tougenlîche, und obe si prîse
secretly, and if they for-praise

ir minne wern,
their love defend,

so gedenken sêre
so think sorely

an sîne lêre,
on his teaching,

dem lîp und êre
to-whom body and honor

ergeben sîn.
given are.

der mich des bæte,
whoever me of-that should-bid,

dêswâr ich tæte
truly I would-do

im guote ræte
to-him good counsels

und helfe schîn.
and help show.

ritter, wache, hüete dîn.
knight, wake, guard thee.

Niht verkrenken 6,25
Not weaken

wil ich aller wahtær triuwe
will I all watchmen's faithfulness

an werden man.
on worthy man.

niht gedenken
not think

solt du, vrowe, an scheidens riuwe
shalt thou, lady, on parting's rue

ûf künfte wân.
on coming's hope.

ez wære unwæge,
it were unequal,

swer minne pflæge,
whoever love practiced,

daz ûf im læge
that on him lay

meldes last.
of-betrayal burden.

ein sumer bringet
a summer brings

daz mîn munt singet:
what my mouth sings:

durch wolken dringet
through clouds presses

ein tagender glast.
a dawning gleam.

hüet dîn, wache, süezer gast.'
guard thee, wake, sweet guest.'

6,40 Er muos et dannen,
He must just thence,

der si klagen ungerne hôrte.
who her lament unwillingly heard.

dô sprach sîn munt
then spoke his mouth

'allen mannen
'to-all men

trûren nie sô gar zerstôrte
sorrow never so wholly destroyed

ir vröiden funt.'
their joy's find.'

swie balde ez tagte,
however quickly it dawned,

der unverzagte
the undaunted-one

an ir bejagte
on her hunted-down

daz sorge in flôch:
that care from-him fled:

unvrömedez rucken,
unstrange moving-close,

gar heinlîch smucken,
wholly intimate nestling,

ir brüstel drucken
her little-breasts pressing

und mêr dannoch
and more still

urloup gap, des prîs was hôch.
leave gave, whose prize was high.

Ursprinc bluomen

VI

The poet sings of flowers, birds, and the May, and of singing even in frost, still without his lady's reward. He begs her for grace and comfort, says her kindness moves him to sing to her, short or long, and asks for one helpful word, since her sweetness and her anger have kept joy from him.

Ursprinc bluomen, loup ûz dringen, 7,11
Outbreak flowers, leaves out pressing,

und der luft des meigen urbort vogel ir alten dôn:
and the air of-the May raises birds their old tune:

etswenn ich kan niuwez singen,
sometimes I can new-thing sing,

sô der rîfe ligt, guot wîp, noch allez ân dîn lôn.
when the hoarfrost lies, good woman, still all without thy reward.

die waltsinger und ir sanc
the forest-singers and their song

nâch halben sumers teile in niemens ôre enklanc.
after half summer's part in no-one's ear rang.

7,17 Der bliclîchen bluomen glesten
The gleaming flowers' gleaming

sol des touwes anehanc erliutern, swâ si sint:
shall the dew's clinging brighten, wherever they are:

vogel die hellen und die besten,
birds the clear and the best,

al des meigen zît si wegent mit gesange ir kint.
all the May's time they rock with song their children.

dô slief niht diu nahtegal:
then slept not the nightingale:

nu wache abr ich und singe ûf berge und in dem tal.
now wake but I and sing on mountain and in the valley.

7,23 Mîn sanc wil genâde suochen
My song will grace seek

an dich, güetlich wîp: nu hilf, sît helfe ist worden nôt.
at thee, kindly woman: now help, since help is become need.

dîn lôn dienstes sol geruochen,
thy reward of-service shall deign,

daz ich iemer biute und biute unz an mînen tôt.
which I ever offer and offer until to my death.

lâz mich von dir nemen den trôst
let me from thee take the comfort

daz ich ûz mînen langen klagen werde erlôst.
that I out-of my long laments become released.

Guot wîp, mac mîn dienst ervinden, 7,29
Good woman, may my service find-out,

ob dîn helfelîch gebot mich fröiden welle wern,
whether thy helpful command me joys will grant,

daz mîn trûren müeze swinden
that my sorrow may vanish

und ein liebez ende an dir bejagen mîn langez gern?
and a dear end in thee hunt-down my long desire?

dîn güetlîch gelâz mich twanc
thy kindly bearing me forced

daz ich dir beide singe al kurz od wiltu lanc.
that I to-thee both sing all short or wilt-thou long.

Werdez wîp, dîn süeziu güete 7,35
Worthy woman, thy sweet goodness

und dîn minneclîcher zorn hât mir vil fröide erwert.
and thy lovely anger has from-me much joy kept-off.

maht du trœsten mîn gemüete?
mayest thou comfort my spirit?

wan ein helfelîchez wort von dir mich sanfte ernert.
for a helpful word from thee me gently saves.

mache wendic mir mîn klagen,
make turned-away for-me my lament,

sô daz ich werde grôz gemuot bî mînen tagen.
so that I become great minded in my days.

Ez ist nu tac

VII

A voice declares that the day has come. The lady laments that her friend must leave, and he, waking in her arms, laments the short night. They hold each other so close that three suns could not shine between them. He asks her womanly goodness to be his shield as he rides, and she says her joy goes with him and begs him to return soon.

7,41 ‘Ez ist nu tac, daz ich wol mac mit wârheit jehen,
‘It is now day, that I well may with truth declare,

ich wil niht langer sîn.
I will not longer be.

diu vinster naht hât uns nu brâht ze leide mir
the dark night has us now brought to sorrow to-me

den morgenlîchen schîn.’
the morning shine.’

‘sol er von mir scheiden nuo,
‘shall he from me part now,

mîn friunt, diu sorge ist mir ze vruo:
my friend, the care is to-me too early:

ich weiz vil wol, daz ist ouch ime,
I know very well, that is also to-him,

den ich in mînen ougen gerne burge,
whom I in my eyes gladly would-hide,

möhte ich in alsô behalten.
might I him so keep.

mîn kumber wil sich breiten.
my affliction will itself broaden.

ôwê des, wie kumt ers hin?
alas of-that, how comes he-it away?

der hôhste fride müez in noch wider an mînen arm geleiten.’
the highest peace may him still back to my arm escort.’

Daz guote wîp ir vriundes lîp vast umbevienc: 8,9
The good woman her friend's body firmly embraced:

der was entslâfen dô.
he was fallen-asleep then.

dô daz geschach daz er ersach den grâwen tac,
when that happened that he saw the gray day,

dô muose er sîn unfrô.
then must he be unglad.

an sîne brüste dructe er sie,
to his breast pressed he her,

und sprach 'jâne erkande ich nie
and spoke 'indeed knew I never

kein trûric scheiden alsô snel.
any sorrowful parting so quick.

uns ist diu naht von hinnen alze balde:
to-us is the night from hence all-too quickly:

wer hât si sô kurz gemezzen?
who has it so short measured?

der tac wil niht erwinden.
the day will not turn-back.

hât diu minne an sælden teil,
(if)-has the love in fortune share,

diu helfe mir daz ich dich noch mit vröiden müeze vinden.'
she help me that I thee still with joys may find.'

Sie beide luste daz er kuste sie genuoc: 8,21
Them both pleased that he kissed her enough:

gevluochet wart dem tage.
cursed was to-the day.

urlop er nam, daz dô wol zam; nu merket wie:
leave he took, that then well befitted; now mark how:

da ergienc ein schimpf bî klage.
there came-about a jest beside lament.

sie heten beide sich bewegen,
they had both themselves resolved,

ezn wart sô nâhe nie gelegen,
it was so near never lain,

des noch diu minne hât den prîs:
of-which still the love has the prize:

obe der sunnen drî mit blicke wæren,
if of-the suns three with gleam were,

sin möhten zwischen si geliuhten.
they-not might between them shine.

er sprach 'nu wil ich rîten.
he spoke 'now will I ride.

dîn wîplich güete neme mîn war,
thy womanly goodness take of-me heed,

und sî mîn schilt hiut hin und her, und her nâch zallen zîten.'
and be my shield today thither and hither, and here after at-all times.'

8,33 Ir ougen naz dô wurden baz: och twanc in klage:
Their eyes wet then became better: also forced him lament:

er muose dan von ir.
he must away from her.

si sprach hin zime 'urlop ich nime zen vröiden mîn:
she spoke thither to-him 'leave I take to-the joys mine:

diu wil nu gar von mir,
they will now wholly from me,

sît daz ich vermîden muoz
since that I avoid must

dînen munt, der mangen gruoz
thy mouth, which many-a greeting

mir bôt und och dîn süezen kus,
to-me offered and also thy sweet kiss,

als in dîn ûz erweltiu güete lêrte,
as it thy out chosen goodness taught,

und diu geselle dîn, diu triuwe.
and the companion thine, the faithfulness.

weme wilt du mich lâzen?
to-whom wilt thou me leave?

nu kum schier wider ûf rehten trôst.
now come soon back on right comfort.

ôwê dur daz enmac ich strenge sorge niht gemâzen.'
alas through that may I strict care not measure.'

Guot wîp, ich bite dich minne

VIII

Lachmann prints this song in brackets as doubtful. The poet asks a good woman's love, praises her rosy cheeks and ruby mouth, and says Venus would pale beside her. He thanks his eyes for finding her.

[Guot wîp, ich bite dich minne, 9,4
[*Good woman, I ask thee love,*

ein teil dur daz,
a part for that,

sît ich dir niht gebieten mac.
since I thee not command may.

du gib mir die gewinne,
thou give me the gains,

daz ich baz
that I better

an dir gelebe noch lieben tac.
in thee live-to-see still dear day.

snel für mich, wilder danne ein tier,
swift past me, wilder than a beast,

mac mir dîn helfe entwenken.
may from-me thy help swerve.

wilt an triuwe gedenken,
(if)-wilt-thou on faithfulness think,

sælic wîp,
blessed woman,

sô gîst ein liebez ende mier.
so givest-thou a dear end to-me.

9,15 Du treist sô vestez herze
Thou bearest so firm heart

ûf mîne vlust:
on my loss:

wie sol der site an dir zergên?
how shall the custom in thee perish?

ein mûzervalke, ein terze,
a molted-falcon, a tercel,

dem mac brust
to-him may breast

niht baz dan dir diu dîne stên.
not better than to-thee the thine stand.

dîn munt ist ûf den kus gestalt,
thy mouth is on the kiss shaped,

dîn lachelîchez grüezen
thy smiling greeting

mac mir wol gesüezen
may for-me well sweeten

sûre nôt:
sour distress:

sus hât dîn minne mîn gewalt.
thus has thy love of-me power.

Möht ich die sælde reichen, 9,26
Might I the fortune reach,

diu sô hôch
which so high

ob mîner fröide stêt gezilt!
above my joy stands aimed!

got müez ir herze erweichen,
God may her heart soften,

sît ez noch
since it still

der mîner swære niht bevilt.
of-the my heaviness not wearies.

man siht mich alze selten geil.
one sees me all-too seldom merry.

ein vlins von donrestrâlen
a flint from thunderbolts

möht ich zallen mâlen
might I at-all times

hân erbeten,
have entreated,

daz im der herte entwiche ein teil.
that from-it of-the hardness should-yield a part.

Ir wengel wol gestellet 9,37
Her little-cheeks well shaped

sint gevar
are colored

alsam ein towic rôse rôt.
like a dewy rose red.

diu schœn mir wol gevellet,
the fair-one me well pleases,

sist valsches bar.
she-is of-falseness bare.

ir ougen bringent mich in nôt.
her eyes bring me into distress.

si dringent in mîns herzen grunt:
they press into my heart's ground:

so enzündet mich ir minne,
so kindles me her love,

daz ich von ir brinne:
that I from her burn:

an der stat
in the place

bin ich von der süezenwunt.
am I from the sweet-one-wounded.

10,1 Ir schœne fröide machet.
Her beauty joy makes.

durliuhtic rôt
translucent red

ist ir munt als ein rubbîn.
is her mouth as a ruby.

swem si von herzen lachet,
at-whomever she from heart laughs,

des sorge ist tôt.
his care is dead.

sist mîn spilnder ougen schîn.
she-is my playing eyes' shine.

ir frömde krenketz herze mîn:
her estrangement weakens-the heart mine:

ich stirb, mir werde ir minne.
I die, unless-to-me become her love.

Vênus diu gotinne,
Venus the goddess,

lebt si noch,
(if)-lived she still,

si müest bî ir verblichen sîn.
she must beside her paled be.

Ich wil des mînen ougen 10,12
I will for-that my eyes

sagen danc,
say thanks,

daz si si vunden alsô guot.
that they her found so good.

die ich dâ minne tougen
whom I there love secretly

sunder wanc,
without wavering,

diu hât gehœhet mir den muot.
she has heightened for-me the spirit.

daz schaffet mir ir rôter munt:
that creates for-me her red mouth:

ir minneclîchez lachen
her lovely laughing

kan mir wol gemachen
can for-me well make

hôhen muot.
high spirit.

dâ von mir wirt ein fröide kunt.]
there from to-me becomes a joy known.]
